

# Modicon M340

## BMX NOC 0401

### Ethernet Communication Module

### User Manual

Original instructions

10/2019



---

The information provided in this documentation contains general descriptions and/or technical characteristics of the performance of the products contained herein. This documentation is not intended as a substitute for and is not to be used for determining suitability or reliability of these products for specific user applications. It is the duty of any such user or integrator to perform the appropriate and complete risk analysis, evaluation and testing of the products with respect to the relevant specific application or use thereof. Neither Schneider Electric nor any of its affiliates or subsidiaries shall be responsible or liable for misuse of the information contained herein. If you have any suggestions for improvements or amendments or have found errors in this publication, please notify us.

You agree not to reproduce, other than for your own personal, noncommercial use, all or part of this document on any medium whatsoever without permission of Schneider Electric, given in writing. You also agree not to establish any hypertext links to this document or its content. Schneider Electric does not grant any right or license for the personal and noncommercial use of the document or its content, except for a non-exclusive license to consult it on an "as is" basis, at your own risk. All other rights are reserved.

All pertinent state, regional, and local safety regulations must be observed when installing and using this product. For reasons of safety and to help ensure compliance with documented system data, only the manufacturer should perform repairs to components.

When devices are used for applications with technical safety requirements, the relevant instructions must be followed.

Failure to use Schneider Electric software or approved software with our hardware products may result in injury, harm, or improper operating results.

Failure to observe this information can result in injury or equipment damage.

© 2019 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

---

# Table of Contents

---



	<b>Safety Information</b> .....	9
	<b>About the Book</b> .....	13
<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>Installation</b> .....	15
	Physical Description of the BMX NOC 0401 Module .....	16
	Standards and Certifications .....	19
	Communication Module Specifications .....	20
	Communication Specifications .....	22
	Mounting the BMX NOC 0401 Module .....	24
	Installing Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool Software .....	26
	Uninstalling the Ethernet Configuration Tool .....	28
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>Configuring the Ethernet Communication Module</b> .....	29
2.1	Ethernet Network Configuration Example .....	30
	The Ethernet Network Example .....	30
2.2	Creating a Project in Control Expert .....	32
	Creating a Project in Control Expert .....	33
	Configuring the Size and Location of Inputs and Outputs .....	38
2.3	The Control Expert FDT/DTM Interface .....	41
	DTM Browser .....	42
	DTM Browser Menu Commands .....	45
	Field Bus Discovery Service .....	51
	Device Editor .....	55
	Configuring Properties in the Device Editor .....	57
	Uploading and Downloading DTM-Based Applications .....	59
2.4	Channel Properties .....	62
	Channel Properties Page .....	63
	Channel Properties - Switch Settings .....	65
	Channel Properties - QoS Queue .....	67
	Channel Properties — TCP/IP Page .....	70
	Channel Properties - EtherNet/IP Page .....	75
2.5	Ethernet Services .....	77
	Enabling Ethernet Services .....	78
	Configuring the DHCP and FDR Servers .....	80
	Configuring the SNMP Agent .....	86
	Configuring Access Control .....	89
	Configuring QoS Ethernet Packet Tagging .....	92

	Configuring the Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol .....	96
	Configuring the Email Service .....	100
	Sending Email via the SEND_EMAIL Block .....	103
	Configuring the Network Time Service .....	105
2.6	Security .....	108
	Security Features .....	108
2.7	Configuring the Ethernet Communication Module as an EtherNet/IP Adapter .....	110
	Introducing the Local Slave .....	111
	Configuring a Local Slave .....	113
	Local Slave Inputs and Outputs .....	118
<b>Chapter 3</b>	<b>Adding Devices to an Ethernet Network. ....</b>	<b>125</b>
3.1	Hardware Catalog .....	126
	Adding a DTM to the Control Expert Hardware Catalog .....	127
	Add an EDS File to the Control Expert Hardware Catalog .....	128
	Updating the Control Expert Hardware Catalog .....	131
	Remove an EDS File from the Control Expert Hardware Catalog .....	133
3.2	Adding an EtherNet/IP Device to the Network .....	135
	Setting Up Your Network .....	136
	Adding an STB NIC 2212 Remote Device .....	138
	Configuring STB NIC 2212 Properties .....	140
	Configuring EtherNet/IP Connections .....	146
	Connecting to the Advantys STB Island .....	152
	Configuring I/O Items .....	156
3.3	Adding a Modbus TCP Device to the Network .....	170
	Setting Up Your Network .....	171
	Adding an STB NIP 2212 Remote Device .....	173
	Configuring STB NIP 2212 Properties .....	175
	Connecting to the Advantys STB Island .....	183
	Configuring I/O Items .....	187
<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Working With Derived Data Types .....</b>	<b>197</b>
	Creating and Updating Derived Data Types .....	198
	Working with Derived Data Type Variables .....	200
	Effect of Activating and De-activating Devices on I/O %MW Memory Addresses .....	209

<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Optimizing Performance</b> .....	<b>213</b>
5.1	Selecting a Switch .....	214
	Role of a Switch in an Ethernet Network .....	215
	Transmission Speed, Duplex and Auto-Negotiation .....	216
	Quality of Service (QoS) .....	217
	IGMP Snooping .....	218
	Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) .....	219
	Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) .....	220
	Port Mirroring .....	222
	Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Agent .....	223
5.2	Control Application Design .....	224
	Message Types .....	225
	Message Connection Types .....	227
	TCP and CIP Connections .....	229
	Message Priority .....	230
	Messaging Performance .....	231
	Message Frequency .....	232
	Allocating Network Bandwidth .....	234
	Estimating Message Traverse and Response Times .....	236
5.3	Projecting Ethernet Network Performance .....	238
	Network Load and Bandwidth Calculation Example .....	238
<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>CIP Objects</b> .....	<b>243</b>
	Identity Object .....	245
	Assembly Object .....	247
	Connection Manager Object .....	249
	Modbus Object .....	251
	Quality Of Service (QoS) Object .....	253
	TCP/IP Interface Object .....	255
	Ethernet Link Object .....	257
	EtherNet/IP Interface Diagnostics Object .....	262
	EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics Object .....	265
	IO Connection Diagnostics Object .....	267
	EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics Object .....	271
	EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics List Object .....	273

<b>Chapter 7 Online Action</b> .....	<b>277</b>
Accessing CIP Objects .....	<b>278</b>
Editing Port Configuration Properties for Remote EtherNet/IP Devices .....	<b>280</b>
Pinging a Network Device .....	<b>282</b>
Viewing and Editing Online Settings for a Remote Device .....	<b>284</b>
<b>Chapter 8 Explicit Messaging</b> .....	<b>287</b>
8.1 Explicit Messaging Using the DATA_EXCH Block .....	<b>288</b>
Configuring Explicit Messaging Using DATA_EXCH .....	<b>289</b>
Configuring the DATA_EXCH Management Parameter .....	<b>291</b>
8.2 EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging Using DATA_EXCH .....	<b>293</b>
Explicit Messaging Services .....	<b>294</b>
Configuring EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging Using DATA_EXCH .....	<b>296</b>
EtherNet/IP Explicit Message Example: Get_Attribute_Single .....	<b>298</b>
EtherNet/IP Explicit Message Example: Read Modbus Object .....	<b>302</b>
EtherNet/IP Explicit Message Example: Write Modbus Object .....	<b>306</b>
8.3 Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Using DATA_EXCH .....	<b>310</b>
Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Function Codes .....	<b>311</b>
Configuring Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Using DATA_EXCH .....	<b>312</b>
Modbus TCP Explicit Message Example: Read Register Request .....	<b>314</b>
8.4 Explicit Messaging via the Control Expert GUI .....	<b>319</b>
Sending Explicit Messages to EtherNet/IP Devices .....	<b>320</b>
Sending Explicit Messages to Modbus TCP Devices .....	<b>323</b>
<b>Chapter 9 Diagnostics</b> .....	<b>325</b>
9.1 Module Hardware Diagnostics .....	<b>326</b>
LED Indicators for the BMX NOC 0401 .....	<b>326</b>
9.2 Control Expert Software Diagnostics .....	<b>328</b>
Using the Diagnostic Window .....	<b>329</b>
Ethernet Port Diagnostics .....	<b>332</b>
Bandwidth Diagnostics .....	<b>336</b>
Email Diagnostics .....	<b>339</b>
Network Time Service Diagnostics .....	<b>341</b>
Communication Module RSTP Diagnostics .....	<b>344</b>
Local Slave / Connection Diagnostics .....	<b>347</b>
Local Slave or Connection I/O Value Diagnostics .....	<b>351</b>
Logging .....	<b>353</b>

9.3	CPU I/O Block Diagnostics .....	355
	Accessing the Control Expert Diagnostic Tools .....	356
	Communication Channel Diagnostics in Control Expert .....	358
	Communication Module Diagnostics in Control Expert .....	360
<b>Chapter 10</b>	<b>Replacing the Ethernet Communication Module .....</b>	<b>367</b>
	Replacing the Ethernet Communication Module .....	367
<b>Chapter 11</b>	<b>Embedded Web Pages .....</b>	<b>369</b>
11.1	Accessing the Embedded Web Server .....	370
	Introducing the Embedded Web Pages .....	371
	Accessing the Home Page .....	372
	Using and Editing a Username and Passwords .....	373
	Configuring Port Mirroring .....	376
11.2	Monitoring the Control Expert Application .....	378
	Using the Monitoring Page .....	379
	Data Editor (Standard) .....	380
	Working With Data Templates .....	385
	Data Editor (Lite) .....	389
11.3	Diagnostics .....	391
	Using the Diagnostics Page .....	392
	Status Summary .....	393
	Rack Viewer .....	396
	Processor Load .....	398
	Scanner Status .....	401
	Messaging .....	403
	QoS Configuration .....	405
	Port Statistics .....	407
	Redundancy .....	410
	Email Diagnostics .....	411
	Network Time Service Diagnostics .....	414
	Properties .....	416
	.....	417
<b>Appendices</b>	.....	<b>417</b>
<b>Appendix A</b>	<b>Detected Error Codes .....</b>	<b>419</b>
	EtherNet/IP Implicit or Explicit Messaging Detected Error Codes .....	420
	Explicit Messaging: Communication and Operation Reports .....	423
<b>Appendix B</b>	<b>CIP General Status Codes .....</b>	<b>427</b>
	CIP General Status Codes .....	427
<b>Appendix C</b>	<b>Modbus Exception Response Codes .....</b>	<b>431</b>
	MODBUS Exception Response Codes .....	431



---

<b>Appendix D</b>	<b>Email Detected Error Response Codes</b> .....	<b>433</b>
	Electronic Mail Notification Service Detected Error Response Codes .	<b>433</b>
<b>Glossary</b>	.....	<b>435</b>
<b>Index</b>	.....	<b>437</b>



# Safety Information



## Important Information

### NOTICE

Read these instructions carefully, and look at the equipment to become familiar with the device before trying to install, operate, service, or maintain it. The following special messages may appear throughout this documentation or on the equipment to warn of potential hazards or to call attention to information that clarifies or simplifies a procedure.



The addition of this symbol to a “Danger” or “Warning” safety label indicates that an electrical hazard exists which will result in personal injury if the instructions are not followed.



This is the safety alert symbol. It is used to alert you to potential personal injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death.

## **DANGER**

**DANGER** indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **will result in death** or serious injury.

## **WARNING**

**WARNING** indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **could result in death** or serious injury.

## **CAUTION**

**CAUTION** indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **could result** in minor or moderate injury.

## **NOTICE**

**NOTICE** is used to address practices not related to physical injury.

---

## PLEASE NOTE

Electrical equipment should be installed, operated, serviced, and maintained only by qualified personnel. No responsibility is assumed by Schneider Electric for any consequences arising out of the use of this material.

A qualified person is one who has skills and knowledge related to the construction and operation of electrical equipment and its installation, and has received safety training to recognize and avoid the hazards involved.

## BEFORE YOU BEGIN

Do not use this product on machinery lacking effective point-of-operation guarding. Lack of effective point-of-operation guarding on a machine can result in serious injury to the operator of that machine.

### WARNING

#### UNGUARDED EQUIPMENT

- Do not use this software and related automation equipment on equipment which does not have point-of-operation protection.
- Do not reach into machinery during operation.

**Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.**

This automation equipment and related software is used to control a variety of industrial processes. The type or model of automation equipment suitable for each application will vary depending on factors such as the control function required, degree of protection required, production methods, unusual conditions, government regulations, etc. In some applications, more than one processor may be required, as when backup redundancy is needed.

Only you, the user, machine builder or system integrator can be aware of all the conditions and factors present during setup, operation, and maintenance of the machine and, therefore, can determine the automation equipment and the related safeties and interlocks which can be properly used. When selecting automation and control equipment and related software for a particular application, you should refer to the applicable local and national standards and regulations. The National Safety Council's Accident Prevention Manual (nationally recognized in the United States of America) also provides much useful information.

In some applications, such as packaging machinery, additional operator protection such as point-of-operation guarding must be provided. This is necessary if the operator's hands and other parts of the body are free to enter the pinch points or other hazardous areas and serious injury can occur. Software products alone cannot protect an operator from injury. For this reason the software cannot be substituted for or take the place of point-of-operation protection.

---

Ensure that appropriate safeties and mechanical/electrical interlocks related to point-of-operation protection have been installed and are operational before placing the equipment into service. All interlocks and safeties related to point-of-operation protection must be coordinated with the related automation equipment and software programming.

**NOTE:** Coordination of safeties and mechanical/electrical interlocks for point-of-operation protection is outside the scope of the Function Block Library, System User Guide, or other implementation referenced in this documentation.

## START-UP AND TEST

Before using electrical control and automation equipment for regular operation after installation, the system should be given a start-up test by qualified personnel to verify correct operation of the equipment. It is important that arrangements for such a check be made and that enough time is allowed to perform complete and satisfactory testing.

### WARNING

#### EQUIPMENT OPERATION HAZARD

- Verify that all installation and set up procedures have been completed.
- Before operational tests are performed, remove all blocks or other temporary holding means used for shipment from all component devices.
- Remove tools, meters, and debris from equipment.

**Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.**

Follow all start-up tests recommended in the equipment documentation. Store all equipment documentation for future references.

**Software testing must be done in both simulated and real environments.**

Verify that the completed system is free from all short circuits and temporary grounds that are not installed according to local regulations (according to the National Electrical Code in the U.S.A, for instance). If high-potential voltage testing is necessary, follow recommendations in equipment documentation to prevent accidental equipment damage.

Before energizing equipment:

- Remove tools, meters, and debris from equipment.
- Close the equipment enclosure door.
- Remove all temporary grounds from incoming power lines.
- Perform all start-up tests recommended by the manufacturer.

---

## OPERATION AND ADJUSTMENTS

The following precautions are from the NEMA Standards Publication ICS 7.1-1995 (English version prevails):

- Regardless of the care exercised in the design and manufacture of equipment or in the selection and ratings of components, there are hazards that can be encountered if such equipment is improperly operated.
- It is sometimes possible to misadjust the equipment and thus produce unsatisfactory or unsafe operation. Always use the manufacturer's instructions as a guide for functional adjustments. Personnel who have access to these adjustments should be familiar with the equipment manufacturer's instructions and the machinery used with the electrical equipment.
- Only those operational adjustments actually required by the operator should be accessible to the operator. Access to other controls should be restricted to prevent unauthorized changes in operating characteristics.

---

# About the Book

---



## At a Glance

### Document Scope

This manual describes the use of the Modicon M340 BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module. This manual describes the creation of a complete configuration. The features and functions of the module are described in the course of constructing this configuration.

The specific configuration settings contained in this manual are intended to be used for instructional purposes only. The settings required for your specific configuration differ from the examples presented in this manual.

### Validity Note

This documentation is valid for EcoStruxure™ Control Expert 14.1 or later.

### Related Documents

For additional information, refer to the online help files for the Control Expert software, and to the following technical publications:

Title of Documentation	Reference Number
Modicon M580, M340, and X80 I/O Platforms, Standards and Certifications	EIO0000002726 (English), EIO0000002727 (French), EIO0000002728 (German), EIO0000002730 (Italian), EIO0000002729 (Spanish), EIO0000002731 (Chinese)
Advantys STB EtherNet/IP Network Interface Applications Guide	31008204 (English), 31008205 (French), 31008206 (German), 31008207 (Spanish), 31008208 (Italian)

You can download these technical publications and other technical information from our website at <https://www.schneider-electric.com/en/download>

---

# Chapter 1

## Installation

---

### Overview

The Ethernet communication module serves as the interface between a M340 PLC and other Ethernet network devices by means of either the EtherNet/IP or the Modbus TCP communication protocol. This chapter shows you how to install the module by:

- inserting it into a PLC backplane
- connecting it to an Ethernet network
- installing the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool software

### What Is in This Chapter?

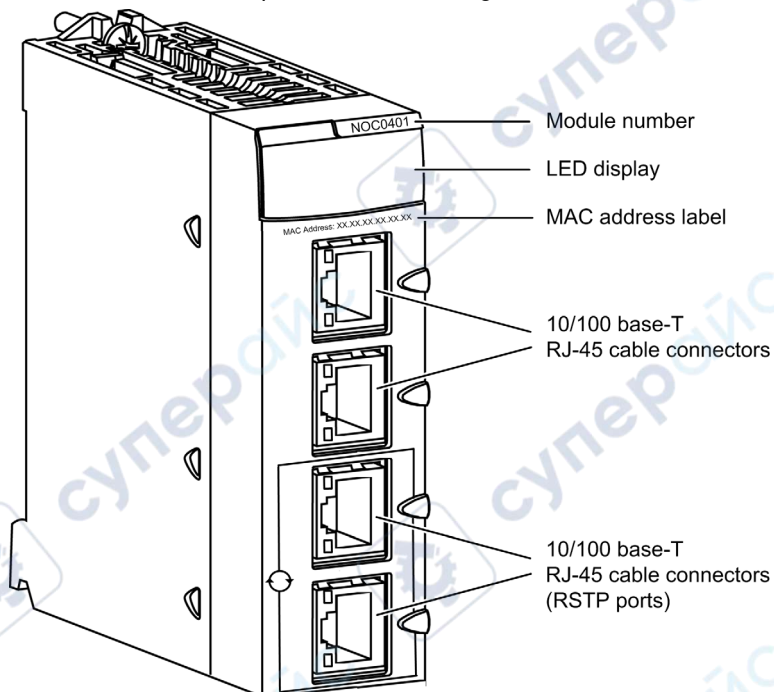
This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Physical Description of the BMX NOC 0401 Module	16
Standards and Certifications	19
Communication Module Specifications	20
Communication Specifications	22
Mounting the BMX NOC 0401 Module	24
Installing Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool Software	26
Uninstalling the Ethernet Configuration Tool	28

## Physical Description of the BMX NOC 0401 Module

### Front

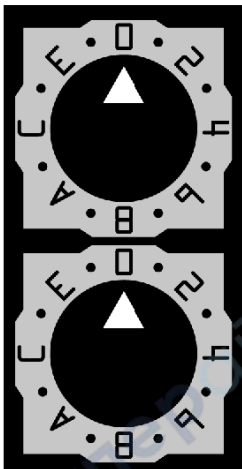
The front of the module presents the following features:





## Rotary Switches

The back of the BMX NOC 0401 presents two rotary switches, which you can use to specify how the module will obtain its IP address.

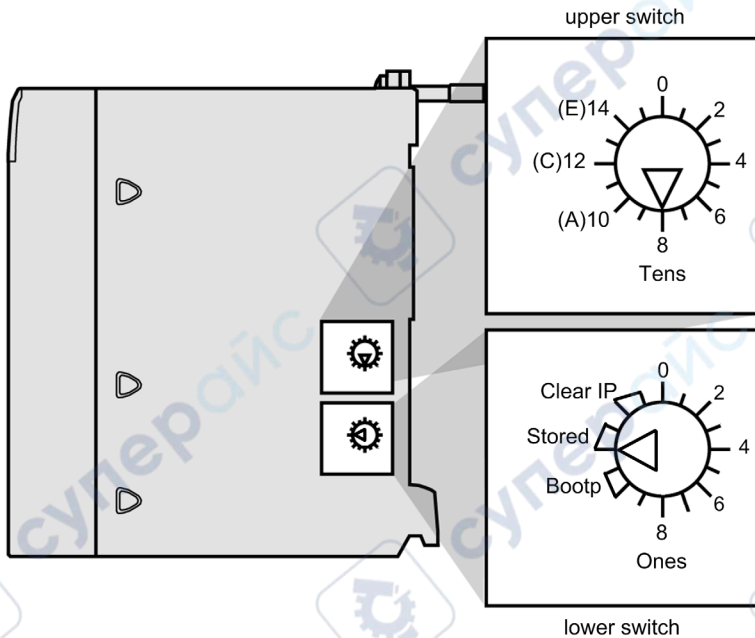


The settings of these two rotary switches work together to specify the source of the module's IP address, as follows:

Setting	Description
Upper switch:	
0...9	Tens value (0, 10, 20...90) for the device name setting. It is added to the ones value on the lower switch to identify the module to a DHCP server.
A...F	Tens value (100, 200, 300... 150) for the device name setting. It is added to the ones value on the lower switch to identify the module to a DHCP server.
Lower switch:	
0...9	Ones value (0, 1, 2...9) for the device name setting. It is added to the tens value on the upper switch to identify the module to a DHCP server.
A + B	BootP <sup>1</sup> : The module obtains its IP address from a BootP server.
C + D	Stored <sup>1</sup> : The module uses the IP address configured in the application.
E + F	Clear IP <sup>1</sup> : The module applies its default IP address.
1. The lower switch alone determines module behavior. The upper switch is ignored.	

## Switch Labels

The right side of the module displays two labels explaining the choice of rotary switch settings, as depicted below.



## LEDs

The BMX NOC 0401 communication module presents the following LED indicators:

- RUN (running)
- ERR (detected error)
- MS (module status)
- NS (network status)
- ETH STS (Ethernet status)

In addition, each Ethernet port presents the following two LED indicators:

- LNK (link)
- ACT (activity)

For a description of these LEDs, and how to use them to diagnose the communication module, refer to the topic LED Indicators for the Ethernet Communication Module ([see page 326](#)).

## Standards and Certifications

### Download

Click the link that corresponds to your preferred language to download standards and certifications (PDF format) that apply to the modules in this product line:

Title	Languages
Modicon M580, M340, and X80 I/O Platforms, Standards and Certifications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● English: <a href="#">EIO0000002726</a></li><li>● French: <a href="#">EIO0000002727</a></li><li>● German: <a href="#">EIO0000002728</a></li><li>● Italian: <a href="#">EIO0000002730</a></li><li>● Spanish: <a href="#">EIO0000002729</a></li><li>● Chinese: <a href="#">EIO0000002731</a></li></ul>

## Communication Module Specifications

### Altitude Operating Conditions

The characteristics apply to the module BMX NOC 0401 for use at altitude up to 2000 m (6560 ft). When the module operate above 2000 m (6560 ft), apply additional derating.

For detailed information, refer to chapter *Operating and Storage Conditions* (see *Modicon M580, M340, and X80 I/O Platforms, Standards and Certifications*).

### Specifications

BMX NOC 0401 specifications include:

<b>Environmental</b>	
Operating Temperature	0...+60 °C (+32...+140 °F)
<b>Ports</b>	
Communication Ports	Four auto-sensing 10/100Base-T shielded twisted pair (RJ-45 connector) ports.
<b>Electrical</b>	
Bus Current Required	@3.3V: 550 mA
Power Dissipation	1.9 W
Fuse	None

### Software Compatibility

The Ethernet communication module is compatible with Unity Pro programming software version 5.0 and later.

**NOTE:** Unity Pro is the former name of Control Expert for version 13.1 or earlier.

### Communication Modules per Station

The maximum number of communication modules — including but not limited to BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication modules — you can install in a single station is determined by the CPU serving that station

CPU	Maximum Number of Communication Modules per Station
BMX P34 1000	2
BMX P34 2000	3
BMX P34 2010	3
BMX P34 20102	3
BMX P34 2020	3
BMX P34 2030	3
BMX P34 20302	3

**NOTE:** If you use the embedded Ethernet port with the BMX P34 2\*\*\* copro, the maximum number of communication modules per station is two.

## Communication Specifications

### Introduction

The following specifications describe both the I/O communication and the explicit messaging capacities of the BMX NOC 0401.

### I/O Communication Specifications

The Ethernet communication module presents the following I/O communication features:

Communication type	Feature	Capacity
EtherNet/IP (CIP Implicit Messaging)	Scanner	
	Maximum number of devices	128 devices (125 devices as scanner + 3 devices as adapter) shared with Modbus TCP
	Maximum message size	512 bytes
	Adapter	
	Maximum number of instances	3 adapter instances
	Maximum number of connections	2 connections per instance
	Maximum message size	511 bytes including header
	Inputs	505 bytes excluding header
Outputs	509 bytes excluding header	
Modbus TCP (Modbus Scanner)	Maximum number of registers	
	Read	125 registers
	Write	120 registers
	Maximum number of devices	128 devices shared with EtherNet/IP
	Maximum message size	
	Read	250 bytes (125 words) excluding header
	Write	240 bytes (120 words) excluding header

## Explicit Messaging Specifications

The Ethernet communication module presents the following explicit messaging features:

Communication type	Feature	Capacity
EtherNet/IP (CIP Explicit Messaging)	Client	
	Maximum number of simultaneous connections	16 connections
	Maximum number of concurrent requests	16 requests, shared with Modbus TCP
	Server	
	Maximum number of simultaneous connections	32 connections
	Maximum messaging size	1023 bytes
Modbus TCP (Modbus Scanner)	Client	
	Maximum number of simultaneous connections	16 connections
	Maximum number of concurrent requests	16 requests, shared with EtherNet/IP
	Server	
	Maximum number of simultaneous requests	128 requests
	Maximum number of simultaneous connections	32 connections
	Maximum message size	
	Read	250 bytes (125 words) excluding header
	Write	240 bytes (120 words) excluding header



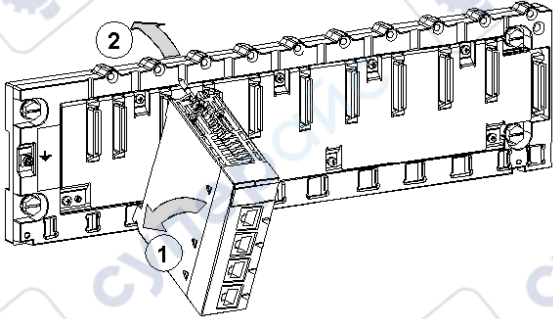
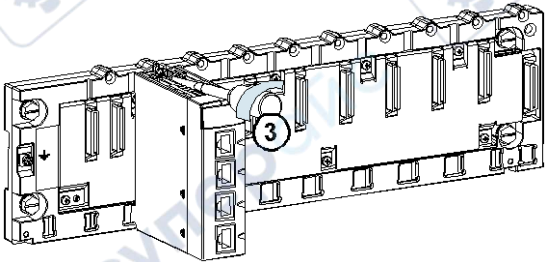
## Mounting the BMX NOC 0401 Module

### Tools Required

One medium sized (size 2) Phillips-head screw driver.

### Mounting the Module

The module can be mounted in any of the racks of the Modicon M340 system. It can be installed in any available slot (except in the offset X Bus racks). To mount the communication module:

Step	Action	Illustration
1	Position the locating pins (situated at the bottom part of the rear of the module) in the corresponding slots.	
2	Swivel the module upwards toward the top of the rack, so that the back of the module sits flush with the rack. <b>NOTE:</b> Before positioning the pins, remove the pins protective cover.	
3	Tighten the screw to hold the module in place on the rack. <b>NOTE:</b> The tightening torque is 0.4...1.5 N·m (0.30...1.10 lbf·ft).	

## Wiring

### WARNING

#### HAZARD OF ELECTRICAL SHOCK OR BURN

Connect the ground wire to the protective ground (PE) terminal before you establish any further connections. When you remove connections, disconnect the ground wire last. The Ethernet cable shield must be connected to PE ground at the Ethernet switch.

**Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.**

The Ethernet communication module communicates over an industrial Ethernet network through any one of four RJ45 connectors located on the front of the module.

- Use the top two ports (ports 1 and 2) to connect to end devices.
- Use the bottom two ports (ports 3 and 4)—which support the RSTP redundancy protocol—to connect to the local area networks, for example, a ring.

## Installing Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool Software

### Overview

Accessing Control Expert Configuration Tool Software depends on the software version you are using:

- Unity Pro version 6.0 and higher: The module configuration software is already included in the software installation.
- Unity Pro version 5.0: You need to install the Ethernet Configuration Tool software, which you can obtain from the following website:  
<http://www.global-download.schneider-electric.com/8525773E00058BDC/all/DA00A87B8BB30386852577940058D66C>

**NOTE:** Unity Pro is the former name of Control Expert for version 13.1 or earlier.

### Installing Ethernet Configuration Tool Software for Unity Pro Version 5.0

To install this software, navigate to navigate to the root of the installation files and run the file **Setup.exe**.

The setup process displays the following setup screens:

Step	Screen	Description
1	Welcome	Click <b>Next</b> to continue.
2	ReadMe and Release Notes Display	Indicate whether to display the ReadMe file. Click <b>Next</b> to continue.
3	ReadMe	(Optional) Displays the ReadMe file, if selected above. Click <b>Next</b> to continue.
4	License Agreement	Displays the software license. Select <b>I accept...</b> , then click <b>Next</b> to continue.
5	Customer Information	Enter the following data: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• your first and last names</li> <li>• company name</li> <li>• identify for whom the software is installed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="radio"/> anyone who uses this computer</li> <li><input type="radio"/> only for yourself</li> </ul> </li> </ul> Click <b>Next</b> to continue.
6	Destination Folder	Identify where the application will be installed. Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Accept the default path</li> <li>• Click <b>Change...</b> and specify a new path</li> </ul> Click <b>Next</b> to continue.
7	Ready to Install	Click <b>Next</b> to continue.
8	Status	Progress bar indicates the status of the installation. When complete, click <b>Next</b> to continue.
9	Install Complete	Click <b>Finish</b> .

The installation process described above copies the following objects to your PC:

- the Ethernet Configuration Tool
- a Generic EtherNet/IP DTM
- a Generic Modbus TCP DTM

**NOTE:** A DTM is a small software driver that defines and enables a device.

### Updating Hardware Catalog

For installations of Unity Pro version 5.0 and higher, the next step is to update the **Hardware Catalog**. Updating the **Hardware Catalog** adds your new Ethernet communication module to the list of available modules and devices that you can add to your application.

Refer to the topic Updating the Control Expert Hardware Catalog ([see page 131](#)) for step-by-step instructions.

## Uninstalling the Ethernet Configuration Tool

### Introduction

Use the **Add or Remove Programs** utility provided by the Windows™ operating system to uninstall the Ethernet Configuration Tool.

To completely uninstall the Ethernet Configuration Tool, remove each of the following three DTMs, one at a time:



Generic EtherNet/IP DTM



Generic Modbus TCP DTM



Unity Pro Ethernet Configuration Tool

### Uninstalling the Ethernet Configuration Tool DTMs

To remove the three Ethernet Configuration Tool DTMs:

Step	Action
1	Open the Windows Control Panel: <b>Start → Settings → Control Panel</b> .
2	In the <b>Control Panel</b> , double click on <b>Add or Remove Programs</b> .
3	In the <b>Add or Remove Programs</b> window, select the <b>Change or Remove Programs</b> page.
4	Select the first of the three DTMs to remove (for example, the <b>Generic EtherNet/IP DTM</b> ), then click <b>Remove</b> .
5	Repeat step 4 for each of the remaining 2 DTMs: <b>Generic Modbus DTM</b> and <b>Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool</b> .

---

## Chapter 2

### Configuring the Ethernet Communication Module

---

#### Overview

This chapter shows you how to use Control Expert programming software to select and configure the Ethernet communication module.

**NOTE:** The instructions presented in this chapter include specific choices made for a sample project. Your project may include different choices that are appropriate for your specific configuration.

#### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Topic	Page
2.1	Ethernet Network Configuration Example	30
2.2	Creating a Project in Control Expert	32
2.3	The Control Expert FDT/DTM Interface	41
2.4	Channel Properties	62
2.5	Ethernet Services	77
2.6	Security	108
2.7	Configuring the Ethernet Communication Module as an EtherNet/IP Adapter	110

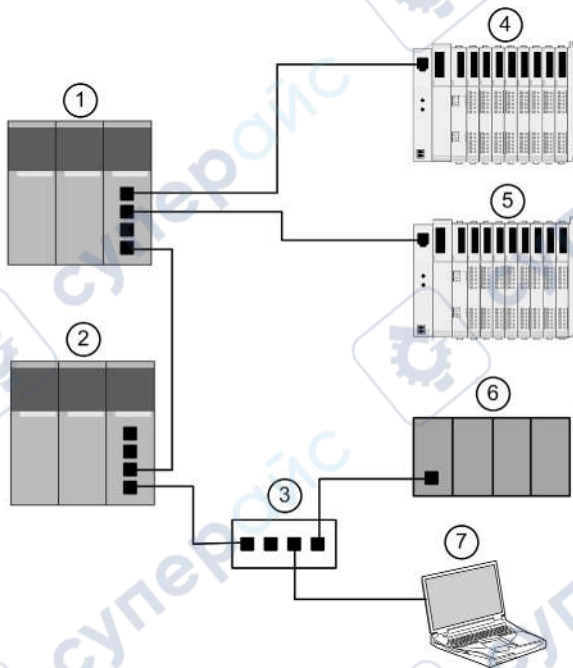
## Section 2.1

### Ethernet Network Configuration Example

#### The Ethernet Network Example

##### The Ethernet Network

This manual describes the creation of a complete Ethernet network configuration for the following topology:



- 1 Primary PLC incorporating the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module
- 2 A secondary PLC that "listens" to the scan of the primary PLC local slave by the third-party scanner
- 3 Ethernet managed switch
- 4 Advantys STB island, with an STB NIC 2212 EtherNet/IP network interface module plus 8 I/O modules
- 5 Advantys STB island, with an STB NIP 2212 Modbus TCP network interface module plus 8 I/O modules
- 6 Third-party PLC that scans a local slave in the primary PLC (1)
- 7 PC equipped with both Control Expert configuration software (upgraded with the Ethernet Configuration Tool that ships with the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module) and Advantys configuration software, used to configure communication settings for Ethernet communication module in the primary PLC (1) and the remote network interface modules on the STB I/O islands (4 and 5)



### Multiple Roles of the PLC and Ethernet Communication Module

The PLC, and in particular the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module, can be configured to simultaneously perform multiple roles with respect to other network devices. In this sample network, you will learn how to configure the communication module to operate as:

- a scanner of devices that use the EtherNet/IP (4) and the Modbus TCP (5) protocols
- an adapter—also known as a local slave—that produces output data that both the remote third-party PLC (6) and secondary PLC (2) can read as input data
- a DHCP server that provides IP address settings to other devices on the Ethernet network
- an FDR server that provides operational settings to devices on the Ethernet network that also receive their IP address from the DHCP server, above

## Section 2.2

### Creating a Project in Control Expert

#### Overview

This section shows you how to add modules—including the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module—to your project, using Control Expert.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Creating a Project in Control Expert	33
Configuring the Size and Location of Inputs and Outputs	38

## Creating a Project in Control Expert

### Introduction

This topic shows you how to create a new Control Expert project, and add to the new project the following components:

- a CPU
- a power supply
- a BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module

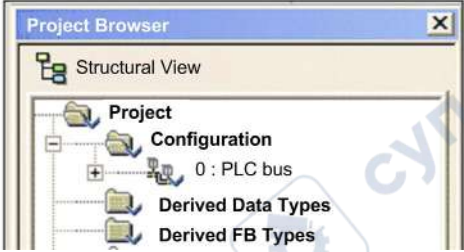
**NOTE:** The following example uses Unity Pro version 7.0, or higher.

**NOTE:** Unity Pro is the former name of Control Expert for version 13.1 or earlier.

### Creating and Saving a New Project

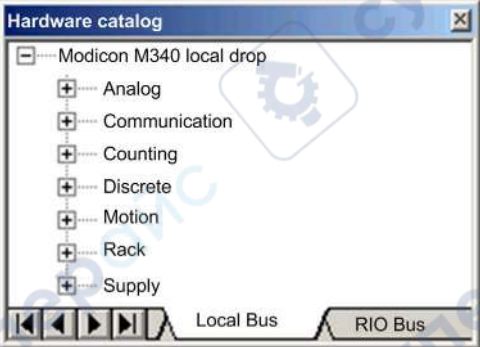
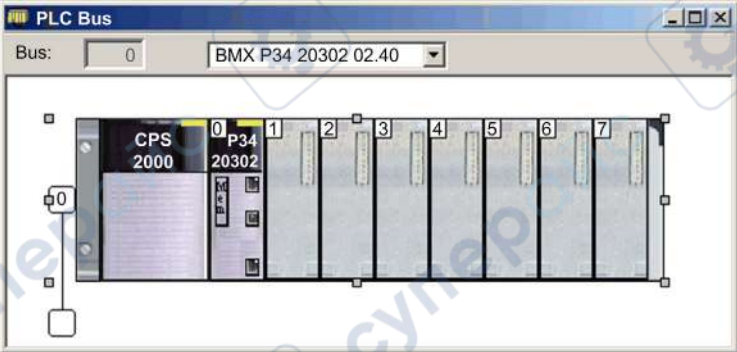
Use Control Expert to create a new project. The following steps describe the creation of a project for the sample network:

Step	Action																																										
1	Open Control Expert.																																										
2	In the main menu, select <b>File</b> → <b>New...</b> The <b>New Project</b> window opens displaying a list of Schneider-Electric controller types.																																										
3	In the <b>New Project</b> window, expand the Modicon M340 node to select a CPU. <div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>PLC</th> <th>Min OS Ver</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Modicon M340</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>  BMX CRA 31200</td> <td>01.00</td> <td>Ethernet Remote I/O head for M340 platform...</td> </tr> <tr> <td>  BMX CRA 31210</td> <td>01.00</td> <td>Ethernet Remote I/O head for M340 platform...</td> </tr> <tr> <td>  BMX P34 1000</td> <td>02.40</td> <td>CPU 340-10 Modbus</td> </tr> <tr> <td>  BMX P34 2000</td> <td>02.40</td> <td>CPU 340-20 Modbus</td> </tr> <tr> <td>  BMX P34 2010</td> <td>02.00</td> <td>CPU 340-20 Modbus CANopen</td> </tr> <tr> <td>  BMX P34 20102</td> <td>02.40</td> <td>CPU 340-20 Modbus CANopen2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>  BMX P34 2020</td> <td>02.40</td> <td>CPU 340-20 Modbus Ethernet</td> </tr> <tr> <td>  BMX P34 2030</td> <td>02.00</td> <td>CPU 340-20 Ethernet CANopen</td> </tr> <tr> <td>  BMX P34 20302</td> <td>02.40</td> <td>CPU 340-20 Ethernet CANopen2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>  BMX PRA 0100</td> <td>02.30</td> <td>Peripheral Remote I/O Adapter</td> </tr> <tr> <td>  Premium</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>  Quantum</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>In this example, select the BMX P34 20302 Ethernet CANopen2 controller.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> By selecting the BMX P34 20302 Ethernet CANopen2 controller, you can later select the BMX NOC 0401.2 Ethernet communication module.</p>	PLC	Min OS Ver	Description	Modicon M340			BMX CRA 31200	01.00	Ethernet Remote I/O head for M340 platform...	BMX CRA 31210	01.00	Ethernet Remote I/O head for M340 platform...	BMX P34 1000	02.40	CPU 340-10 Modbus	BMX P34 2000	02.40	CPU 340-20 Modbus	BMX P34 2010	02.00	CPU 340-20 Modbus CANopen	BMX P34 20102	02.40	CPU 340-20 Modbus CANopen2	BMX P34 2020	02.40	CPU 340-20 Modbus Ethernet	BMX P34 2030	02.00	CPU 340-20 Ethernet CANopen	BMX P34 20302	02.40	CPU 340-20 Ethernet CANopen2	BMX PRA 0100	02.30	Peripheral Remote I/O Adapter	Premium			Quantum		
PLC	Min OS Ver	Description																																									
Modicon M340																																											
BMX CRA 31200	01.00	Ethernet Remote I/O head for M340 platform...																																									
BMX CRA 31210	01.00	Ethernet Remote I/O head for M340 platform...																																									
BMX P34 1000	02.40	CPU 340-10 Modbus																																									
BMX P34 2000	02.40	CPU 340-20 Modbus																																									
BMX P34 2010	02.00	CPU 340-20 Modbus CANopen																																									
BMX P34 20102	02.40	CPU 340-20 Modbus CANopen2																																									
BMX P34 2020	02.40	CPU 340-20 Modbus Ethernet																																									
BMX P34 2030	02.00	CPU 340-20 Ethernet CANopen																																									
BMX P34 20302	02.40	CPU 340-20 Ethernet CANopen2																																									
BMX PRA 0100	02.30	Peripheral Remote I/O Adapter																																									
Premium																																											
Quantum																																											

Step	Action
4	<p>Click <b>OK</b>. The <b>Project Browser</b>, below, opens.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a window titled 'Project Browser' with a close button (X). Inside, there is a 'Structural View' section. Below it, a tree structure shows a 'Project' folder containing a 'Configuration' folder, which in turn contains '0 : PLC bus', 'Derived Data Types', and 'Derived FB Types'.</p>
5	<p>To save the project, select <b>File → Save</b>. The <b>Save As</b> dialog opens.</p>
6	<p>In the <b>Save As</b> dialog, type in a <b>File name</b>—which will be the name of your project—then click <b>Save</b>. Control Expert saves your project to the specified path location.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> You can change the default location Control Expert uses to store project files. Before saving your project:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Select <b>Tools → Options</b>. The <b>Options Management</b> window opens.</li> <li>2 In the left pane, navigate to <b>Options → General → Paths</b>.</li> <li>3 In the right pane, type in a new path location for the <b>Project path</b>. You can also edit the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Import/Export file path</li> <li>○ XVM path</li> <li>○ Project settings templates path</li> </ul> </li> <li>4 Click <b>OK</b> close the window and save your path edits.</li> </ol>

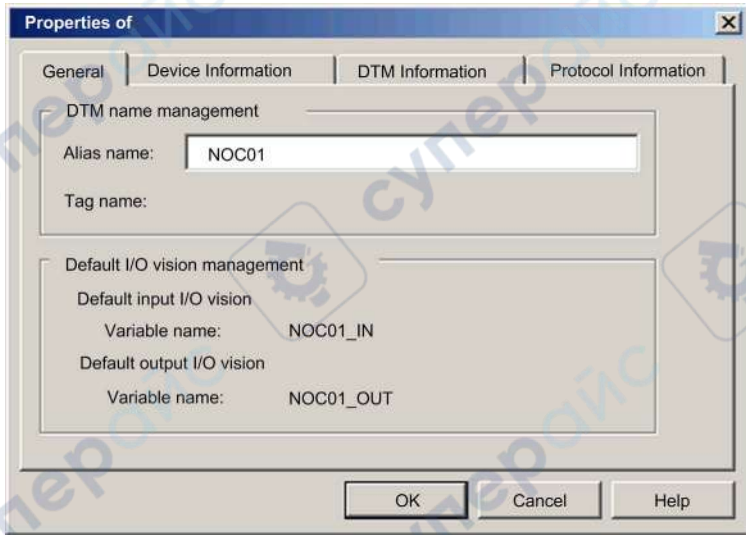
### Adding a Power Supply to the New Project

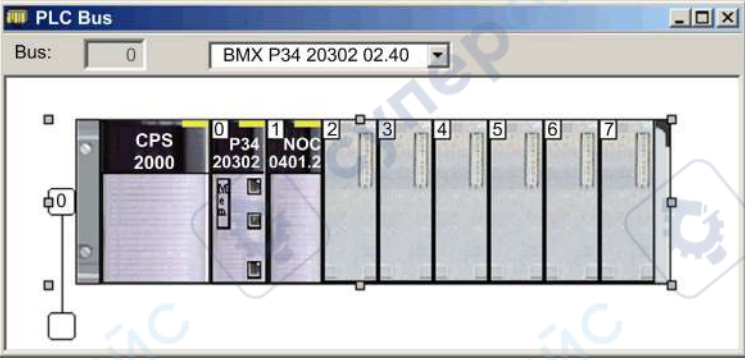
When you added the CPU to the project, above, Control Expert may also have added a power supply to the project. If not, the next step is to manually add a power supply to your project:

Step	Action
7	<p>In the <b>Project Browser</b>, double click <b>0 : PLC bus</b> to display both the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Local Bus</b> window with the selected CPU in the second position, and</li> <li>• <b>Hardware catalog</b> displaying the <b>Local Bus</b> tab, below:</li> </ul> 
8	<p>In the <b>Hardware catalog</b>, under the <b>Supply</b> node, use your mouse to select then drag a <b>BMX CPS 2000</b> power supply to the first position in the rack.</p> 
9	<p>In the <b>File</b> menu, select <b>Save</b>, to save your edits.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Schneider-Electric recommends that you periodically save your changes as you make edits.</p>

### Adding an Ethernet Communication Module to the New Project

Next, add an Ethernet communication module to your project:

Step	Action
10	<p>Returning to the <b>Hardware catalog</b>, under the <b>Communication</b> node, use your mouse to select then drag a <b>BMX NOC 0401.2</b> Ethernet communication module to an open slot in the rack—in this example, slot 2.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> You can select the <b>BMX NOC 0401.2</b> only after:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• selecting the <b>BMX P34 20302</b> CPU for the project, and</li> <li>• upgrading the <b>BMX NOC 0401</b> module firmware to version 2.0 or higher</li> </ul> <p>When you drop the communication module into the rack, Control Expert opens the communication module <b>Properties</b> window.</p>
11	<p>In the <b>General</b> page of the module properties window, type in an alias name for the communication module: <b>NOC01</b>:</p>  <p>When you change the alias name, Control Expert changes the base input and output type and variable names to match the edited alias name.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Schneider Electric recommends that you assign a unique alias name to each communication module. This practice helps you distinguish between modules of the same type.</p>
12	<p>In the <b>File</b> menu, select <b>Save</b>, to save your edits.</p>

Step	Action
13	<p>Click <b>OK</b> to close the <b>Properties</b> window. The Local Bus now displays the three modules you have added:</p> 
14	<p>The next step is to configure the located memory space in the CPU for the communication module's inputs and outputs (<a href="#">see page 38</a>).</p>



## Configuring the Size and Location of Inputs and Outputs

### Overview

Use the **Configuration** page of the Ethernet communication module's **Properties** window to configure:

- the size and starting position of inputs
- the size and starting position of outputs

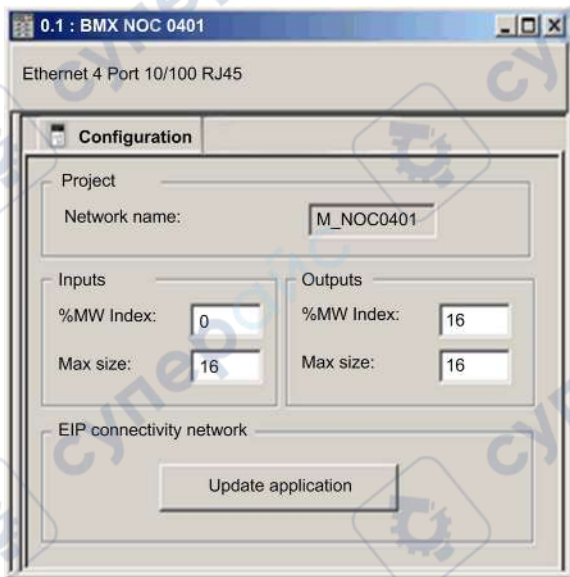
The following steps present one example of how to configure the size and location of inputs and outputs. Your own project configuration may differ.

### Setting Input and Output Memory Addresses and Naming the Module

The **Properties** window opens when you double-click the left mouse button on the image of the BMX NOC 0401 communication module in either the **Local Bus** window, or the **Project Browser**.

When you select the **Configuration** page, it displays the network, or Alias, name. This is the name assigned to the network channel when the communication module was added to the project.

Use the **Configuration** page to edit the communication module inputs and outputs, as follows:



To input the above settings, take the following steps:

Step	Action
1	In the module's <b>Properties</b> window, select the <b>Configuration</b> page.
2	<p>Type in the size and starting position of the inputs and outputs, as follows:</p> <p>In the <b>Inputs</b> area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● In the <b>%MW index</b> field, type in a starting address for inputs, in this example: <b>0</b>.</li> <li>● In the <b>Max size</b> field, type in the maximum number of 16-bit words dedicated to inputs, in this example: <b>16</b>.</li> </ul> <p>In the <b>Outputs</b> area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● In the <b>%MW index</b> field, type in a starting address for outputs, in this example: <b>16</b>.</li> <li>● In the <b>Max size</b> field, type in the maximum number of 16-bit words dedicated to outputs—in this example: <b>16</b>.</li> </ul> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Locate the inputs and outputs at the beginning of a 4-byte (or 2 word) range. Because address numbering in the M340 platform is zero-based, verify that <b>%MW index</b> input and output settings are configured to start at an even number.</li> <li>● Allocate separate non-overlapping space to inputs and outputs.</li> <li>● Control Expert automatically reserves space for two arrays of 32 bytes, as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ for connection health bits (<i>see page 203</i>), located at the beginning of the space configured for inputs</li> <li>○ for connection control bits (<i>see page 207</i>), located at the beginning of the space configured for outputs</li> </ul> </li> <li>● Confirm that the %MW space assigned for both inputs and outputs is available in the CPU. For more information, refer to the Control Expert help file topic <i>Processor Configuration Screen</i>.</li> </ul>
3	<p>In Control Expert select <b>Edit → Validate</b> (or click the <b>Validate</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> button) to save the address and size settings for inputs and outputs.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> After you validate module settings for the first time, the module name cannot be edited. If you subsequently decide to change the module name, delete the existing module from the configuration, then add and rename a replacement module.</p>

### Completing the Ethernet Network Configuration

After configuring settings for inputs and outputs, the next step is to configure the communication module settings beginning with its **Channel Properties** and then configure remote Ethernet network devices (*see page 125*).

**NOTE:** After you input configuration settings for the communication module and remote devices, return to the **Configuration** page of the Ethernet communication module's **Properties** window and click the **Update application** button. This creates derived data type (DDT) variables (*see page 198*) that display the following information and commands for your project:

- connection health bits, that display the status of each connection
- connection control bits, you can use to toggle each connection on and off
- the value of input and output items
- module and device configuration settings
- free memory space that has been reserved, but not yet allocated

---

## Section 2.3

### The Control Expert FDT/DTM Interface

---

#### Overview

The section describes the use of DTM's within Control Expert.

#### What Is in This Section?

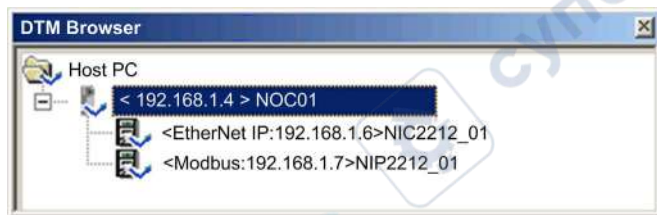
This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
DTM Browser	42
DTM Browser Menu Commands	45
Field Bus Discovery Service	51
Device Editor	55
Configuring Properties in the Device Editor	57
Uploading and Downloading DTM-Based Applications	59

## DTM Browser

### Overview

The **DTM Browser** displays a hierarchical list of DTMs—in the form of nodes on a connectivity tree—that have been added to your Control Expert project. Each DTM node represents an actual module or device in your Ethernet network.



### Node Types

There are 3 types of DTM nodes:

- Communication DTMs:
  - Any COM DTM can be plugged directly under the root node (Host PC) at the 1st level
  - A COM DTM can support Gateway DTMs or Device DTMs as children if their protocols are compatible
- Gateway DTMs:
  - A Gateway DTM can support other Gateway DTMs or Device DTMs as children if their protocols are compatible.
- Device DTMs:
  - A Device DTM does not support any child DTMs

## Node Names

Each DTM has a default name when inserted into the browser. The default name consists of the following elements:



<Channel: Address> Device Name

Where:

Element	Description
channel	This is the name of the channel communication media, to which the device is plugged in. This name is read from the DTM and is set by the device vendor. Example: EtherNet/IP, Modbus
address	The bus address of the device, which can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The connection point on its parent gateway network</li> <li>• The slot number in the modular device parent internal bus</li> </ul> Example: the device IP address
device name	The default name is determined by the vendor in the device DTM, but can be edited by the user.

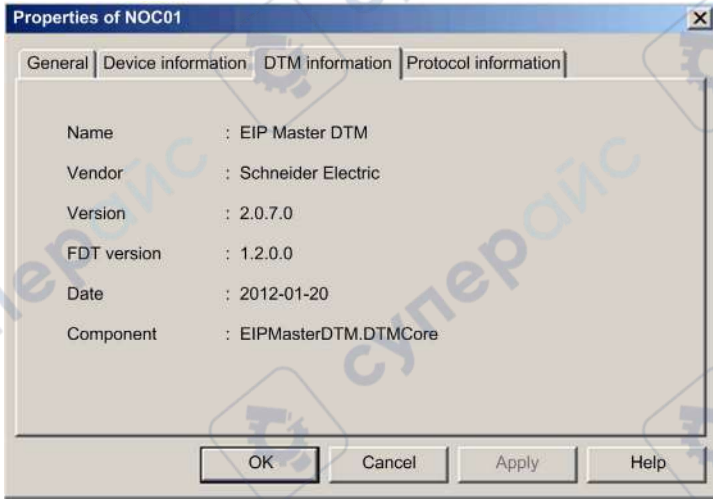
## Node Status

The **DTM Browser** displays the status of each DTM node in the connectivity tree, as follows:

Status	Description
Built / Not-built	A blue check mark  superimposed on a device icon indicates that node, or one of its sub-nodes, is not built. This means that some property of the node has changed, and the information stored in the physical device is no longer consistent with the local project.
Connected / Disconnected	A connected DTM is denoted in <b>bold</b> text. An unconnected DTM appears in plain text. <b>NOTE:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connecting a DTM to its physical device automatically connects higher level parent nodes up to the root node.</li> <li>• Disconnecting a DTM from its physical device automatically disconnects its lower level child nodes.</li> </ul> <b>NOTE:</b> Connecting or disconnecting a DTM to or from its device does not also connect or disconnect Control Expert to or from the PLC. DTMs can be connected/disconnected while Control Expert is either offline or online.
Installed / Not-installed	A red  superimposed on a device icon indicates the DTM for that device is not installed on the PC.

### Handling Invalid Nodes

As indicated above, a red **X** superimposed on a node indicates the DTM for that node is not installed on the PC. To resolve this situation, click the right mouse button on the node to open a pop-up menu with the following two commands:

Command	Description
Delete	Removes the selected node (and its sub-nodes) from the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
Properties	<p>Opens the following dialog, which you can use to identify the name of the missing DTM:</p> 

## DTM Browser Menu Commands

### Overview

The **DTM Browser** includes a pop-up, contextual (right-click) menu that displays commands for the currently selected DTM. The list of available commands consists of:

- universal commands, as determined by the selected node level:
  - host PC node (level 1)
  - communication module node (level 2)
  - remote device node (level 3)
- device-specific commands, as determined by the device DTM

### Host PC Node Commands

The **Host PC** node contextual menu includes the following commands:

Name	Description
Add <sup>1</sup>	Opens the <b>Add</b> dialog — containing a subset of the <b>Hardware Catalog</b> , allowing the selection of a communication module DTM.
Check DTM devices <sup>1</sup>	Checks the current project for invalid DTMs or DTMs that are not installed in the PC. If the results of the check include invalid or not-installed DTMs, they are displayed in the <b>User errors</b> tab in the information window and a red <b>X</b> is superimposed over their icons in the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
DTM services	Displays the communication DTMs selection, as well as the device topology, their respective IP addresses, and connection state. In this dialog, for each device you can connect, disconnect, load from devices, or store to devices. You can also choose to stop communication or continue activity when detected errors occur.
DTM hardware catalog	Displays the <b>DTM catalog</b> tab of the <b>Hardware Catalog</b> dialog.
Expand all <sup>2</sup>	Displays every DTM in the project.
Collapse all <sup>2</sup>	Displays only the communication DTMs in the project.
1. This command also appears in the Control Expert <b>Edit</b> menu. 2. This command also appears in the Control Expert <b>View</b> menu.	



## Communication Module and Remote Device Node Commands

The **DTM Browser**'s contextual menu has the following items:

Name	Description
Open <sup>1</sup>	This opens the <b>Device Editor</b> for the selected communication module. <b>NOTE:</b> Double-clicking the left mouse button on the DTM in the <b>DTM Browser</b> also opens this window.
Add <sup>1</sup>	This opens the <b>Add</b> dialog, displaying a subset of the <b>Hardware Catalog</b> , allowing the selection of a DTM. <b>NOTE:</b> Control Expert filters the content of the <b>Add</b> dialog, so that it displays only DTMs that are compatible with the selected DTM selected.
Delete <sup>1</sup>	If the selected DTM allows this function, this deletes the selected DTM and its sub-node DTMs from the DTM connectivity tree. Deletion from the DTM connectivity tree does not affect the DTM's link to the I/O scanning table.
Field Bus Discovery	This scans the connected physical devices to create the corresponding field bus topology. Refer to the Field Bus Discovery Service topic.
Connect <sup>1</sup>	This connects the DTM ( <i>see page 49</i> ) to its physical device on the network. This connection does not depend on the PLC online/offline status of the Control Expert project application. <b>NOTE:</b> Connecting a gateway or device DTM implicitly connects its parent DTM.
Disconnect <sup>1</sup>	This disconnects the DTM ( <i>see page 49</i> ) from its physical device. This disconnection depends on the PLC online/offline status of the Control Expert project application. <b>NOTE:</b> Disconnecting a gateway or device DTM implicitly disconnects its parent DTM.
Load data from device <sup>1</sup>	This loads data from the physical device on the network to the DTM.
Store data to device <sup>1</sup>	This loads data from the DTM to the physical device on the network.
Copy	This command is disabled.
Paste	This command is disabled.
Device menu	This command opens a sub-menu that contains device-specific commands, as determined by the device vendor. For details, refer to the Communication Module Commands topic ( <i>see page 47</i> ).
Device menu 2	This command opens a sub-menu that contains device-specific commands, as determined by the device vendor. For details, refer to the Communication Module Commands topic ( <i>see page 47</i> ).
Properties <sup>1</sup>	Opens the Ethernet communication module <b>Properties</b> window.
1. This command also appears in the Control Expert <b>Edit</b> menu. 2. This command also appears in the Control Expert <b>View</b> menu.	

Name	Description
Print device <sup>1</sup>	If this optional function is supported by a DTM, this function displays the device documentation — including configuration settings — in the PC's default Internet browser, which can then be printed.  <b>NOTE:</b> Device information can be printed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• for only one device DTM at a time, when that DTM is not open for editing in the <b>Device Editor</b>.</li> <li>• only when the DTM is disconnected from the physical device.</li> </ul>
Zoom out <sup>2</sup>	This returns to the display of the entire DTM connectivity tree.
Expand all <sup>2</sup>	This displays DTMs below the selected DTM.
Collapse all <sup>2</sup>	This displays only the selected DTM.
1. This command also appears in the Control Expert <b>Edit</b> menu.	
2. This command also appears in the Control Expert <b>View</b> menu.	

### Communication Module Commands

When you select **Device menu** in the main contextual menu for the communication module, a sub-menu with the following commands is displayed:

Name	Description
Offline Parameter	This command is disabled.
Online Parameter	This command is disabled.
Compare	This compares 2 devices, either online or offline.
Configuration	This opens the <b>Device Editor</b> for the selected communication module, when the module and its DTM are disconnected.
Observe	This command is disabled.
Diagnosis	This opens the <b>Diagnosis Window</b> for the selected communication module, when the module and its DTM are connected.

Name	Description	
Additional functions	Add EDS to library	Opens the <b>EDS File Wizard</b> , which you can use to add a device EDS file to the Control Expert EDS device library. Control Expert displays the contents of EDS files as DTMs for use in the <b>DTM Browser</b> and <b>Device Editor</b> .
	Remove EDS from library	Opens the <b>EDS Deletion from Device Library</b> window, which you can use to delete an EDS file from the device library.
	Online Action	Opens the <b>Online Action</b> window. Depending upon the protocol(s) a remote device supports, you can use the <b>Online Action</b> window to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Ping a remote EtherNet/IP or Modbus TCP device</li> <li>● view and write to EtherNet/IP properties in a remote EtherNet/IP device</li> <li>● view and write to port configuration properties in a remote EtherNet/IP device</li> </ul>
	EtherNet/IP Explicit Message	Opens the EtherNet/IP Explicit Message ( <i>see page 320</i> ) window, which you can use to send explicit messages to EtherNet/IP remote devices.
	Modbus TCP Explicit Message	Opens the Modbus TCP Explicit Message ( <i>see page 323</i> ) window, which you can use to send explicit messages to Modbus TCP remote devices.
	About	
	Advanced Mode	Displays or hides expert-level properties that help define Ethernet connections. See the Enabling Advanced Mode topic ( <i>see page 50</i> ) for instruction on how to use this feature.

When you select **Device menu 2** in the main contextual menu for the communication module, a sub-menu with the following commands is displayed:

Name	Description
Configuration	This opens the <b>Device Editor</b> for the selected communication module, when the module and its DTM are disconnected.
Diagnosis	This opens the <b>Diagnosis Window</b> for the selected communication module, when the module and its DTM are connected.
Add EDS to library	Opens the <b>EDS File Wizard</b> , which you can use to add a device EDS file to the Control Expert EDS device library. Control Expert displays the contents of EDS files as DTMs for use in the <b>DTM Browser</b> and <b>Device Editor</b> .
Remove EDS from library	Opens the <b>EDS Deletion from Device Library</b> window, which you can use to delete an EDS file from the device library.
Online Action	Opens the <b>Online Action</b> window. Depending upon the protocol(s) a remote device supports, you can use the <b>Online Action</b> window to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Ping a remote EtherNet/IP or Modbus TCP device</li> <li>● view and write to EtherNet/IP properties in a remote EtherNet/IP device</li> <li>● view and write to port configuration properties in a remote EtherNet/IP device</li> </ul>
EtherNet/IP Explicit Message	Opens the EtherNet/IP Explicit Message ( <i>see page 320</i> ) window, which you can use to send explicit messages to EtherNet/IP remote devices.

Name	Description
Modbus TCP Explicit Message	Opens the Modbus TCP Explicit Message ( <i>see page 323</i> ) window, which you can use to send explicit messages to Modbus TCP remote devices.
Advanced Mode	Displays or hides expert-level properties that help define Ethernet connections. See the Enabling Advanced Mode topic ( <i>see page 50</i> ) for instruction on how to use this feature.

### Connecting and Disconnecting a Device or Module DTM

A device or module DTM can be either connected to, or disconnected from, the physical device or module.

When a device and its DTM are...	You can use the Ethernet configuration tool to...
Connected	Monitor and diagnose the real-time operation of the device or module
Disconnected	Configure a communication module or remote device by editing its properties

**NOTE:** Distinguish between:


- connecting and disconnecting a DTM and the associated physical device using commands in the **DTM Browser** — and —
- placing Control Expert in online or offline operating mode using commands in the Control Expert **PLC** menu

You can connect a DTM to, or disconnect a DTM from a device or module using the contextual pop-up menu in the **DTM Browser**. The **DTM Browser** indicates the relationship between the DTM and the remote module or device: a connected DTM is displayed in **bold** text; a disconnected DTM is displayed in normal text.

To connect a DTM to, or disconnect a DTM from its respective module or device, follow these steps:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> select the DTM that you want to connect to, or disconnect from, the physical communication module or remote device. <b>NOTE:</b> If the module or device name appears in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>bold</b> text, it is connected and only the <b>Disconnect</b> command is enabled.</li> <li>• normal text, it is disconnected and only the <b>Connect</b> command is enabled.</li> </ul>
2	Click the right-mouse button. <b>Result:</b> A pop-up menu opens.
3	Select one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Connect</b></li> <li>• <b>Disconnect</b></li> </ul> <b>NOTE:</b> The <b>Connect</b> and <b>Disconnect</b> commands are also available in the Control Expert <b>Edit</b> menu.

## Enabling Advanced Mode

Use the contextual menu in the **DTM Browser** to toggle Control Expert in or out of **Advanced Mode**, thereby displaying or hiding expert-level properties that help define Ethernet connections. These properties are identified by the  icon.

**NOTE:** To maintain system performance, confirm that **Advanced Mode** properties are configured only by persons with a solid understanding of communication protocols.

To toggle **Advanced Mode** on and off:

Step	Action
1	Close both the <b>Diagnosis Window</b> and every instance of the <b>Device Editor</b> before attempting to toggle <b>Advanced Mode</b> on or off. <b>NOTE:</b> If the <b>Device Editor</b> or the <b>Diagnosis Window</b> is open, the <b>Advanced Mode</b> status — on or off — cannot be changed.
2	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , right-click the communication module. <b>Result:</b> A pop-up menu opens.
3	To toggle ON advanced mode, select <b>Device Menu → Advanced Mode</b> .
4	To toggle OFF advanced mode, repeat steps 1 through 3, above.

## Field Bus Discovery Service

### Introduction

Use the field bus discovery service to detect and add to your Control Expert application, network devices that are situated on a local network. The field bus discovery service is available only when the Ethernet communication module DTM is connected to its physical device.

Only the first level devices below the communication DTM are detected.

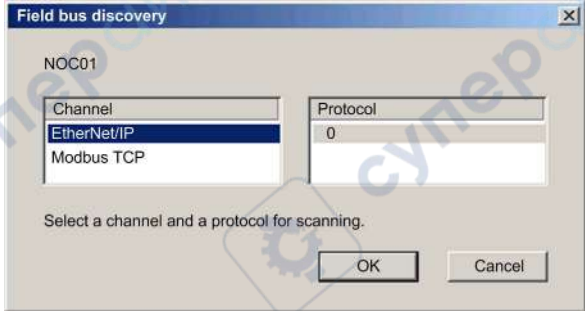
### Performing Field Bus Discovery

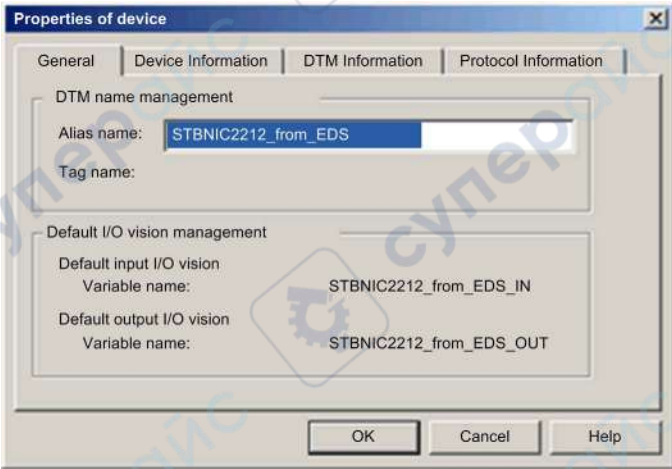
The results of the scanning process is compared to the registered DTMs in the DTM catalog of the computer. If a match is found in the DTM catalog for a scanned device, the results are accompanied with a matching type that gives the accuracy of the match.

These are the available matching types:

- *Exact match*: Every identification attribute matches. The correct device type was found.
- *Generic match*: At least the **Vendor** and device **Type ID** attributes match. The support level of the DTM is “Generic Support.”
- *Uncertain match*: At least the **Vendor** and device **Type ID** attributes match. The support level of the DTM is *not* “Generic Support.”

Use the field bus discovery service:

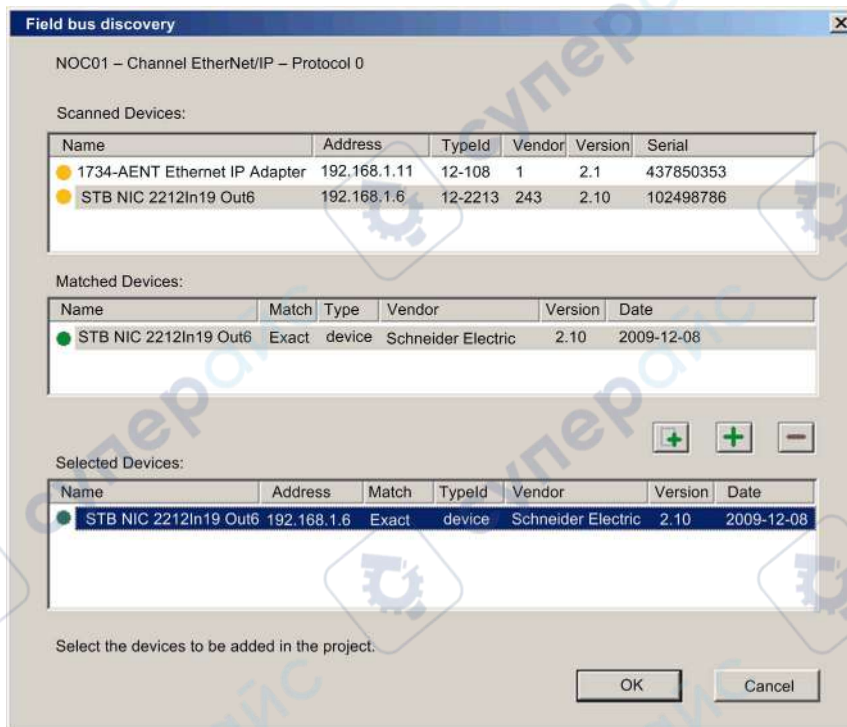
Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select an appropriate DTM. <b>NOTE:</b> The field bus discovery service limits its search to the range of IP addresses that is pre-configured for the selected channel in the <b>Channel Properties</b> page ( <i>see page 63</i> ).
2	Right-click the DTM and scroll to <b>Field bus discovery</b> to open the dialog box: 
3	Under these conditions, select a channel and a protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The DTM has more than one channel.</li> <li>• The channel supports more than one protocol.</li> </ul>
4	Click on <b>OK</b> . The service starts to detect devices on the selected channel.

Step	Action
5	If at least one matched device has been found, the <b>Field Bus Discovery</b> dialog displays a list of <b>Scanned Devices</b> .
6	Use the controls of the <b>Field Bus Discovery</b> dialog to select the devices to add to your Control Expert application.
7	After you have selected the devices you want to add in the <b>Field Bus Discovery</b> dialog, click <b>OK</b> .
8	If the field bus discovery process finds at least one device with an IP address that is already used in the project, you are asked if you want to continue and replace the existing project device(s): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Yes</b>: Proceed to the next step.</li> <li>● <b>No</b>: Cancel automatic field bus discovery.</li> </ul>
9	<p>The device properties dialog (below) opens, displaying the default name for the first discovered device to be added:</p>  <p>In the <b>General</b> page of the device properties dialog, type in the <b>Alias name</b> for the device to be added, then click <b>OK</b>. The dialog closes, then re-opens if there is another device to be added to the application.</p>
10	Repeat the above step for each additional discovered device.
11	<p>After you finish adding devices to the application, configure each device for operation as part of the application:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Disconnect the Ethernet communication module from its DTM. In the <b>DTM Browser</b>, select the Ethernet communication module, then select <b>Edit → Disconnect</b>.</li> <li>● Configure the new device properties in the DTMs for both the Ethernet communication module, and the newly added remote device.</li> </ul>



## Field Bus Discovery Dialog

If at least one matched device has been found, the Field Bus Discovery dialog box is displayed listing the scanned and matched devices. Select the matched devices to be created in the Control Expert project (which then shows up in the **Selected Devices** list):



This dialog presents these lists:




List	Description
Scanned Devices	The devices (matched and unmatched) found during the scan.
Matched Devices	The matched DTMs found in the workstation DTM catalog for the device that you selected in the <b>Scanned Devices</b> list. Each time a scanned device is selected in the <b>Scanned Devices</b> list, the contents of the <b>Matched Devices</b> list is updated to display the matched device DTMs found for the selected scanned device. The matching process can yield one or more matched devices for a given scanned device. In this case, only one DTM was discovered for the selected scanned device.
Selected Devices	This list displays the device DTMs that have been selected in the <b>Matched Devices</b> list, which will be added to the Control Expert project.



The lists use the following colored icons:

Color	Meaning
Green	The device has been selected.
Yellow	The device has been matched.
Red	The device has <b>not</b> been matched.
Black	Information about the address of the scanned device: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● In the <b>Scanned Devices</b> list, the device has an address identical to one of the DTMs in the Control Expert project</li> <li>● In the <b>Matched Devices</b> list, the device will be assigned an address identical to one of the DTMs in the Control Expert project</li> </ul>
<p><b>NOTE:</b> An icon can consist of two colors. For example, a search can discover a device that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● has a matching DTM, and</li> <li>● has an IP address identical to a device already added to the Control Expert application</li> </ul> <p>In this case, the icon next to the discovered device would be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● half yellow and half black before it is selected, and</li> <li>● half green and half black after it is selected</li> </ul>	

This dialog has five buttons:

Button	Use this button to...
	Automatically add the most closely matched (according to the matching types listed above) device DTM for each found device in the <b>Matched Devices</b> list to the <b>Selected Devices</b> list.
	Add the matched device DTM selected in the <b>Matched Devices</b> list.
	Remove one or more devices from the <b>Selected Devices</b> list.
OK	Insert the device DTMs in the <b>Selected Devices</b> list into the Control Expert project. If there are one or more devices in the <b>Selected Devices</b> list that have the same address in the Control Expert project, a message box opens asking if you want to continue. If you click <b>OK</b> , devices in the Control Expert project that have identical addresses as the selected devices are <b>deleted</b> and <b>replaced</b> by the DTMs selected in the <b>Selected Devices</b> list.
Cancel	Cancel the field bus discovery scan and do nothing. Information in the three lists is discarded.

## Device Editor

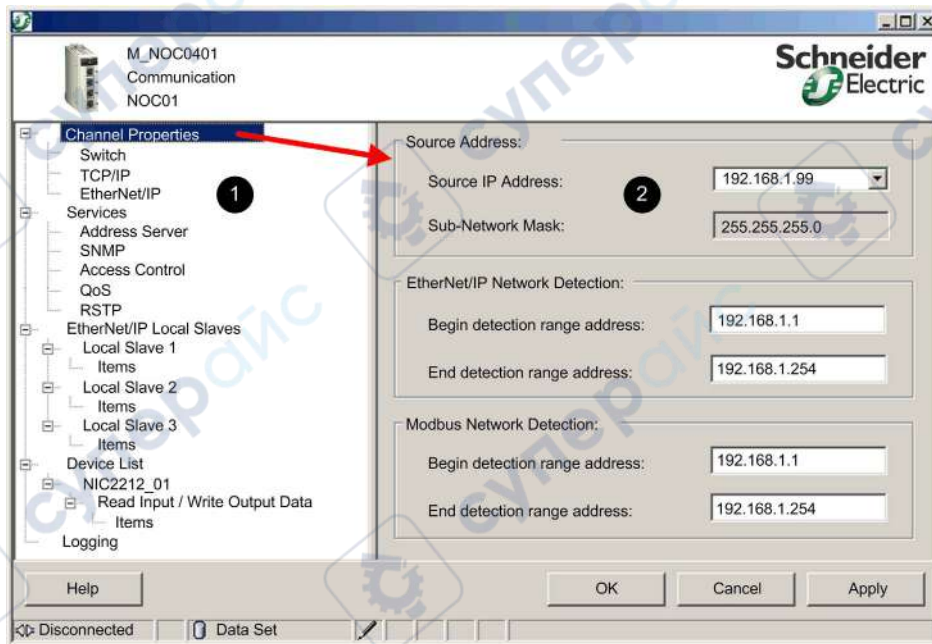
### Description

Use the **Device Editor** to view and configure Ethernet communication modules and remote devices. The collection of properties you can view or configure depends on:

- the node type selected in the **DTM Browser**:
  - communication module
  - remote device
- whether Control Expert is operating in **Advanced Mode**




### Displaying Properties of the Ethernet Communication Module

After you open the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module in the **DTM Browser**, the left pane (1, below) of the **Device Editor** displays a tree control containing configurable property groups for the communication module. Click on a node in the tree control to display one or more pages of module properties for the selected group in the right pane (2, below).



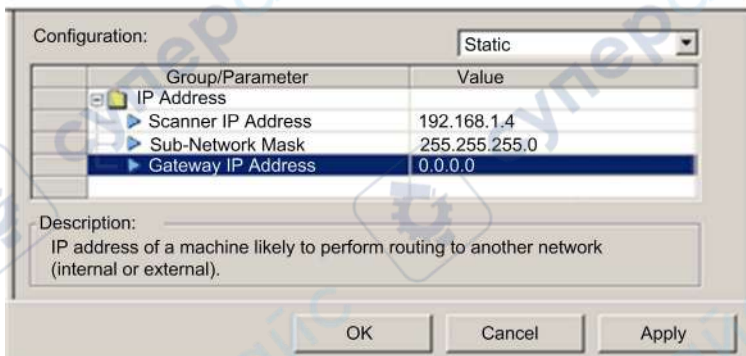
## Property Types

The **Device Editor** displays an icon next to many device properties. The following three icons are displayed:

This icon...	Indicates the property is...
	Read-only. The property value cannot be edited in this page.
	Read-write. The property value can be edited in this page.
	An expert-level communication protocol property that is displayed only when <b>Advanced Mode</b> is enabled.

## Displaying Property Definitions

Many property configuration pages provide an on-screen definition of the property you are editing. To display a property definition in the **Description** section of the page, select that property in the property list. The following screen displays a description of the **Gateway IP Address** property.



**NOTE:** The page displayed above can be accessed by opening an Ethernet communication module in the **Device Editor**, and then selecting **Channel Properties** → **TCP/IP** in the navigation tree.

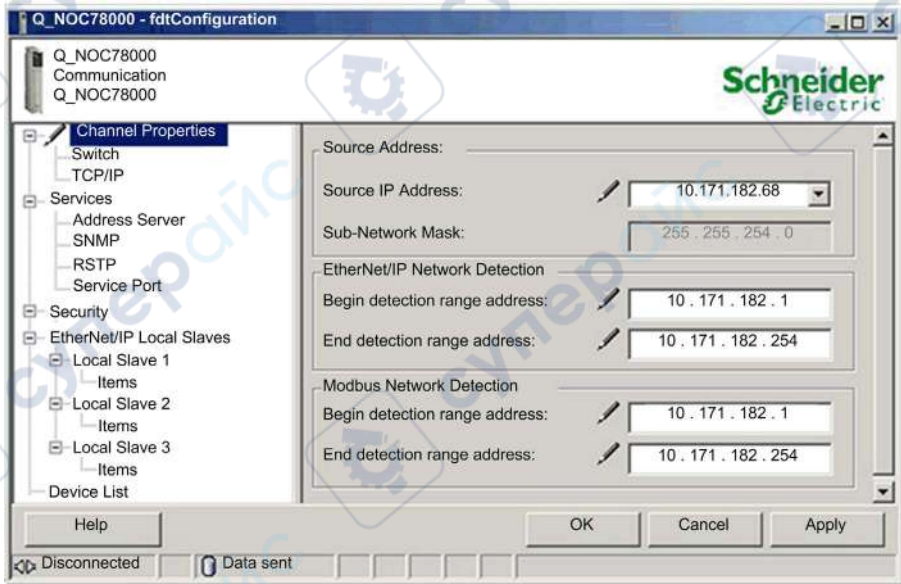
## Configuring Properties in the Device Editor



### Configuring Properties

The **Device Editor** can be opened from the **DTM Browser**.

To open the **DTM Browser** select **Tools** → **DTM Browser** in the Control Expert main menu.

To use the **Device Editor**:

Step	Description
1	Confirm that the DTM you want to use is not connected to the actual communication module or device. If necessary, disconnect the DTM from the module or device ( <i>see page 49</i> ).
2	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the Ethernet network node you want to configure, which can be either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>an Ethernet communication module</li> <li>— or —</li> <li>a remote device</li> </ul>
3	<p>With a node selected in the <b>DTM Browser</b>, do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the Control Expert main menu, select <b>Edit</b> → <b>Open</b>.</li> <li>— or —</li> <li>In the <b>DTM Browser</b> click the right mouse button and, in the pop-up menu, select <b>Open</b>.</li> </ul> <p>The <b>Device Editor</b> appears. It displays the configurable properties for the selected module or device:</p> 
4	Expand the navigation tree and select a node in the left window pane to display its properties in the right pane. The list of configurable properties varies, depending on the node type — communication module or remote device — selected in the <b>DTM Browser</b> .

Step	Description	
5	While you edit a parameter, Control Expert displays an icon — next to the field you are editing and in the navigation tree — indicating the parameter value is being edited. Control Expert displays one of the following icons:	
	This icon...	Indicates the importance of the parameter being edited is...
		High: Editing this parameter may limit or deny access to the module or device.
		Low: Editing this parameter will not limit or deny access to the module or device.
6	<p>After you finish editing a page, click:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <b>Apply</b> to save your edits and keep the page open. — or —</li><li>● <b>OK</b> to save your edits and close the page.</li></ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Your edits will not take effect until they are successfully downloaded from your PC to the CPU and from the CPU to the communication modules and network devices.</p>	

## Uploading and Downloading DTM-Based Applications

### Introduction

You can use Control Expert to download an application file from your PC to the PLC, and to upload an application file from the PLC to your PC.

To perform a successful upload, confirm that the application file includes specific upload-related information as part of the application.

### Downloading DTM-Based Applications

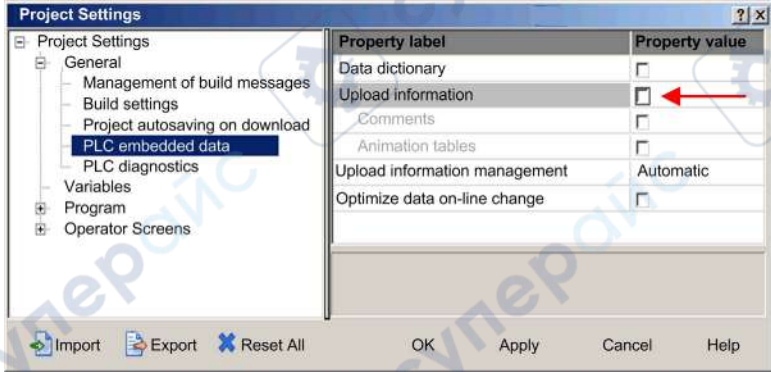
Control Expert applications that include DTM files require more memory than traditional Control Expert applications. The following products employ DTMs for network configuration:

- 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet Communication Module for Quantum
- TSX ETC 101 Ethernet Communication Module for Premium
- BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet Communication Module for M340

In some cases, the configurations created for these modules—and the data associated with them—will require more memory than is available in the CPU.

If the amount of memory required by an application exceeds the amount of memory that is available in the CPU, Control Expert displays a message during the build process, before the application is downloaded to the PLC.

When this situation occurs, exclude the additional upload-related information from the application to complete the build and enable the application download. To do this, make the following configuration change in Control Expert:

Step	Action
1	In the main menu, select <b>Tools</b> → <b>Project Settings...</b> The Project Settings window opens.
2	In the left pane of the Project Settings window, select <b>General</b> → <b>PLC embedded data</b> .
3	In the right pane, de-select <b>Upload information</b> : 
4	Click <b>OK</b> to save your changes and close the Project Settings window.

After the **Upload information** setting is disabled, you can build the application and download it to the PLC.

**NOTE:** An application in which the **Upload information** setting has been disabled cannot later be uploaded from the PLC to the PC.



## Uploading DTM-Based Applications

DTM-based applications that were successfully downloaded to Control Expert—with the project's **Upload information** setting enabled—can later be uploaded from the PLC to the PC if the target PC has the following files installed on it:

- a version of Control Expert that is equal to or higher than the version used to create the application
- the master DTMs for the modules included in the configuration  
**NOTE:** The Ethernet Configuration Tool installation CD contains the Master DTMs for the Ethernet communication modules, referenced above.
- the device DTMs for the DTM-based devices attached to the network (confirm that the DTMs are of the same or higher revision as each device DTM used in the configuration)
- the device EDS files for any EtherNet/IP device used in the configuration (confirm that the EDS files are of the same or higher revision as each device EDS file used in the configuration)

After the above components have been installed on the target PC, you can upload a DTM-based Control Expert application from a PLC.

**NOTE:** Confirm that each of the above DTM components is installed on the target PC *before* attempting the upload.



## Section 2.4

### Channel Properties

#### Overview

This section describes how to configure channel properties for the Ethernet network.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Channel Properties Page	63
Channel Properties - Switch Settings	65
Channel Properties - QoS Queue	67
Channel Properties — TCP/IP Page	70
Channel Properties - EtherNet/IP Page	75

## Channel Properties Page

### Description

Use the **Channel Properties** page to:

- select the IP address to use for:
  - connecting module or device DTMs to physical devices
  - sending explicit messages to Modbus TCP and EtherNet/IP devices
- view your PC's IP address settings

The **Channel Properties** page looks like this:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Channel Properties". It is divided into three main sections:

- Source Address:** Contains a dropdown menu for "Source IP Address" with the value "192.168.1.99" and a text field for "Sub-Network Mask" with the value "255.255.255.0".
- EtherNet/IP Network Detection:** Contains two text fields: "Begin detection range address" (192.168.1.1) and "End detection range address" (192.168.1.254).
- Modbus Network Detection:** Contains two text fields: "Begin detection range address" (192.168.1.1) and "End detection range address" (192.168.1.254).

At the bottom of the dialog box are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

To display this page, select the **Channel Properties** node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the **Device Editor**.

**NOTE:** Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* ([see page 57](#)) for instructions on how to edit properties.

## Properties

This page presents the following properties:

Name	Description
Source Address area:	
Source IP Address (PC):	A list of IP addresses assigned to network interface cards installed on your PC.
Sub-Network Mask:	The subnet mask associated with the selected Source IP Address.
EtherNet/IP Network Detection area:	
Begin detection range address	The starting IP address of the address range for automatic field bus discovery of EtherNet/IP devices.
End detection range address	The ending IP address of the address range for automatic field bus discovery of EtherNet/IP devices.
Modbus TCP Network Detection area:	
Begin detection range address	The starting IP address of the address range for automatic field bus discovery of Modbus TCP devices.
End detection range address	The ending IP address of the address range for automatic field bus discovery of Modbus TCP devices.

## Managing Source IP Address for Multiple PCs

When you connect a PC to a DTM-based Control Expert application, Control Expert requires that you define the IP address of the PC connected to the PLC, which is referred to as the *source IP address (PC)*. Rather than having to perform a **Build** in Control Expert each time you connect a PC to the PLC, the source IP address (PC) is selected automatically when you import the Control Expert application. During application import, the DTM retrieves all available configured NIC addresses of a connected PC and matches the subnet mask of the master with the available NIC list.

- If a match between the subnet mask of the master and the NIC list exists, Control Expert automatically selects the matched IP address as the *source IP address (PC)* in the **Channel Properties** page.
- If multiple matches exist, Control Expert automatically selects the IP address nearest to the subnet mask.
- If no match exists, Control Expert automatically selects the IP address to the nearest available subnet mask.

## Channel Properties - Switch Settings

### Description

Use the **Switch** tab of the **Switch** page to:

- enable or disable each of the four Ethernet ports on the BMX NOC 0401 communication module
- view and edit the **Baud Rate** for each port, which includes both the:
  - transmission speed, and
  - duplex mode

**NOTE:** The Ethernet communication module supports only the **Ethernet II** frame type.

The **Switch** page looks like this:

Port	Enabled	Baud Rate
1	Yes	Auto 10/100Mbps/s
2	Yes	Auto 10/100Mbps/s
3	Yes	Auto 10/100Mbps/s
4	Yes	Auto 10/100Mbps/s

To display this page, select the **Channel Properties** → **Switch** node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the **Device Editor**, then click on the **Switch** tab.

**NOTE:** Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* ([see page 57](#)) for instructions on how to edit properties.

## Properties

This page presents the following properties:

Name	Description
Port	(read-only) The Ethernet port number: 1...4.
Enabled	The active status of the port: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Yes = enabled</li><li>● No = disabled</li></ul>
Baud Rate	The transmission speed and duplex mode for the network. Values include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Auto 10/100 Mb (default)</li><li>● 100 Mb Half</li><li>● 100 Mb Full</li><li>● 10 Mb Half</li><li>● 10 Mb Full</li></ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Schneider Electric recommends the default setting—Auto 10/100 Mb. This setting causes the connected devices to perform auto-negotiation and thereby determine the fastest common transmission rate and duplex mode.</p>

## Channel Properties - QoS Queue

### Description

The BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module can be configured to sort packets it receives by placing them into one of 4 separate queues—based upon their priority (very high, high, low, very low)—and handle each packet in the order of its priority.

The module also can be configured to add a *differentiated service code point* (DSCP) value to each packet it originates, indicating the relative priority of the packet.

The process of packet queuing and DSCP tagging together enable the module to perform Ethernet packet traffic management.

Use the **QoS Queue** tab of the **Channel Properties** → **Switch** page to assign *differentiated service code point* (DSCP) values and queuing priorities to Ethernet packets based on their message type.

#### NOTE:

- The settings input in this page are synchronized with the values input in the **Services** → **QoS** page (*see page 92*). Edits to a common property in either page will change that value in the other page.
- The **Explicit Message** group settings are editable only when Control Expert is operating in **Advanced Mode**.
- Confirm that every switch in your network adopts the same DSCP tagging scheme, thereby providing consistent packet traffic management throughout your network.

The **QoS Queue** page, displaying the default settings, looks like this:

The screenshot shows the 'QoS Queue' configuration page with the following sections and data:

**Precision Time Control**

Type of Traffic	DSCP Value	Queue Mapping
PTP Event	59	Very High
PTP General	47	High

**EtherNet IP Control**

Type of Traffic	DSCP Value	Queue Mapping
Urgent	55	High
Scheduled	47	High
High	43	High
Low	31	Low
Explicit	27	Low

**Modbus TCP Control**

Type of Traffic	DSCP Value	Queue Mapping
Modbus I/O	47	High
Modbus Explicit	27	Low

**Network Time Protocol**

Type of Traffic	DSCP Value	Queue Mapping
NTP Control	59	Very High

At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

To display this page, select the **Channel Properties** → **Switch** node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the **Device Editor**, then click on the **QoS Queue** tab.

**NOTE:** Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* ([see page 57](#)) for instructions on how to edit properties.

## QoS Queue Mapping Settings

DSCP settings have a range of 0...63. The range of **Queue Mapping** settings are set forth below:

Group	Traffic Type	Available Group Queue Settings
Precision Time Control	Point-to-point event	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Very High</li> <li>● High</li> </ul>
	Point-to-point general	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● High</li> <li>● Low</li> <li>● Very Low</li> </ul>
IEtherNet IP Control <sup>1</sup>	Urgent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● High</li> </ul>
	Scheduled	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Low</li> </ul>
	High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Very Low</li> </ul>
	Low	
	Explicit <sup>2</sup>	
Modbus TCP Control <sup>1</sup>	Modbus I/O	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● High</li> </ul>
	Modbus Explicit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Low</li> <li>● Very Low</li> </ul>
Network Time Protocol	NTP Control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Very High</li> <li>● High</li> <li>● Low</li> <li>● Very Low</li> </ul>
1. Edits to these properties are synchronized with the <b>Services</b> → <b>QoS</b> page ( <a href="#">see page 92</a> ). 2. Editable only in <b>Advanced Mode</b> .		



## Channel Properties — TCP/IP Page

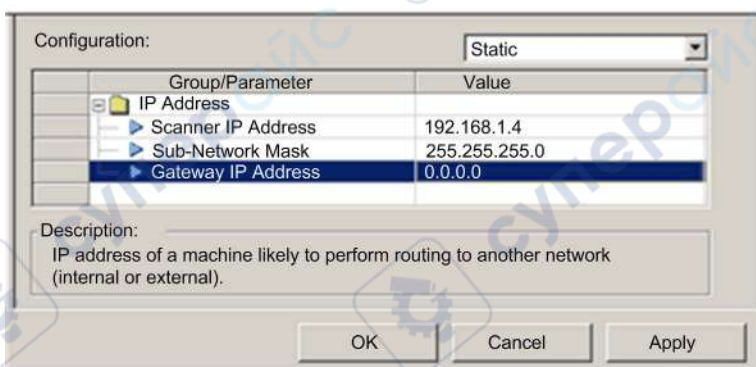
### Description

Use the **TCP/IP** page to:

- select a **Configuration** mode, which specifies how the communication module obtains its IP addressing settings, and
- edit the IP addressing settings that will be used if the **Configuration** mode is set to **Static**

**NOTE:** The settings made in this page can either match or conflict with the manual settings made using the 2 rotary switches on the back of the module. See the Resolving Conflicting Hardware and Software IP Address Settings topic for an explanation of when IP addressing conflicts exist and how the module resolves them.

The **TCP/IP** page looks like this:



Group/Parameter	Value
IP Address	
▶ Scanner IP Address	192.168.1.4
▶ Sub-Network Mask	255.255.255.0
▶ Gateway IP Address	0.0.0.0

Description:  
IP address of a machine likely to perform routing to another network (internal or external).

OK Cancel Apply

To display this page, select the **Channel Properties** → **TCP/IP** node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the **Device Editor**.

**NOTE:** Refer to the topic Configuring Properties in the Device Editor (*see page 57*) for instructions on how to edit properties.

## Properties

The IP addressing properties you can configure in this page depends upon the selected configuration mode:

Property	Description	Configuration Mode Options
Scanner IP Address	The 32-bit identifier — consisting of both a network address and a host address — assigned to a device connected to a TCP/IP Internet network using the Internet Protocol (IP).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Static</li> <li>• Flash memory</li> <li>• BOOTP</li> <li>• DHCP</li> </ul>
Sub-Network Mask	The 32-bit value used to hide (or mask) the network portion of the IP address and thereby reveal the host address of a device on a network using the IP protocol.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Static</li> </ul>
Gateway Address	The address of a device, if any, that serves as a gateway to the communication module.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Static</li> </ul>
Name	<p>The device name.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The default device name, based on the rotary switch settings is BMX_0401_xxy. where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• xx is the value of the upper switch setting (tens)</li> <li>• y is the value of the lower switch setting (ones)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DHCP</li> </ul>

## Selecting a Configuration Mode

Use the **Configuration** list to specify a configuration mode. The configuration mode setting determines how the communication module obtains its IP address at startup. Choices are:

Configuration Mode	Description
Static	The module uses the scanner IP address, gateway IP address, and sub-network mask configured in this page.
Flash Memory	The module uses the IP address configured via the TCP/IP object and stored flash memory. An IP address configured by this process survives both a warm and a cold re-start.
BOOTP	The module uses an IP address assigned by a BOOTP server.
DHCP <sup>1</sup>	The module uses an IP address assigned by a DHCP server.

### Default Address Configurations

The communication module uses a default address configuration when it is not configured or when a duplicate IP address is detected. The default address is based on the MAC address of the module and makes it possible for several Schneider Electric devices to use their default network configuration on the same network.

The module uses the following default address configurations:

- Default IP Address  
This default address starts with 10.10 and uses the last two bytes of the MAC address. As an example, a device with the MAC address of 00:00:54:10:8A:05 has a default IP address of 10.10.138.5 (0x8A=138, 0x05=5).
- Default Sub-Network Mask  
The default address is 255.0.0.0 (a class A mask).
- Default Gateway Address  
The default gateway address is identical to the default IP address.

### Duplicate Address Checking

Before going online, the module sends out at least 4 ARP (address resolution protocol) messages with a proposed IP address:

- if an answer is returned:
  - another network device is already using the proposed IP address
  - the module will not use the proposed IP address, but will instead use the default IP address
- if an answer is not returned:
  - the module is assigned the proposed IP address (along with the associated network parameters.)

**NOTE:** When powering up an entire network, some switches may be slow to complete the power up process. This can cause some ARP messages to be dropped. To help avoid this situation, Schneider Electric recommends that, when powering up an entire network, confirm that every network switch completes its power up cycle before powering up the PLCs.

## Resolving Conflicting Hardware and Software IP Address Settings

The following table summarizes the status of the Ethernet channel depending on the **Configuration Mode** set in the application, and the positions of the 2 rotary switches on the back of the module:

Application: Configuration Mode	Rotary Switch Position			
	DHCP <sup>1</sup>	BOOTP	STORED	CLEAR IP
<no configuration>	<b>No Conflict:</b> Get IP address from DHCP server using device name from rotary switches. Start basic services only.	<b>No Conflict:</b> Get IP address from BOOTP server. Start basic services only.	<b>No Conflict:</b> Get IP address from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● flash memory</li> <li>— or —</li> <li>● BOOTP server</li> <li>— or —</li> <li>● use default IP address</li> </ul> Start basic services only.	<b>No Conflict:</b> Use default IP address. Start basic services only.
Static or Flash memory	<b>Conflict:</b> Get IP address from DHCP server using device name from rotary switches. Start basic services only.	<b>Conflict:</b> Get IP address from BOOTP server. Start basic services only.	<b>No Conflict:</b> Get IP address from the application. Start services configured in the application.	
DHCP or BOOTP with no configured device name	<b>No Conflict:</b> Get IP address from DHCP server using device name from rotary switches. Start services configured in the application.	<b>No Conflict:</b> Get IP address from BOOTP server. Start services configured in the application.	<b>No Conflict:</b> Get IP address from BOOTP server. Start services configured in the application.	
DHCP with a configured device name	<b>Conflict</b> (if device name on switches differs from name in application) or <b>No Conflict:</b> if names are equal. Get IP address from DHCP server using device name from rotary switches. If conflict, start basic services only; If no conflict, start services configured in the application.	<b>Conflict:</b> Get IP address from BOOTP server. Start basic services only.	<b>No Conflict:</b> Get IP address from DHCP server using device name from application. Start services configured in the application.	

1. Based on device name BMX\_0401\_xxy, where x = the top rotary switch, and y represents the bottom rotary switch.

## Basic Services


The following services are provided by the module when it is using its default IP address:

- FTP server (used for firmware download)
- HTTP/Web server
- Modbus/TCP server
- EtherNet/IP explicit message server
- SNMP agent
- RSTP

**NOTE:** Using the module as a messaging server, when the module is using its default IP address, is not recommended. The module will replace the default IP address with a served or user-configured IP address as soon as one is received.

## Channel Properties - EtherNet/IP Page

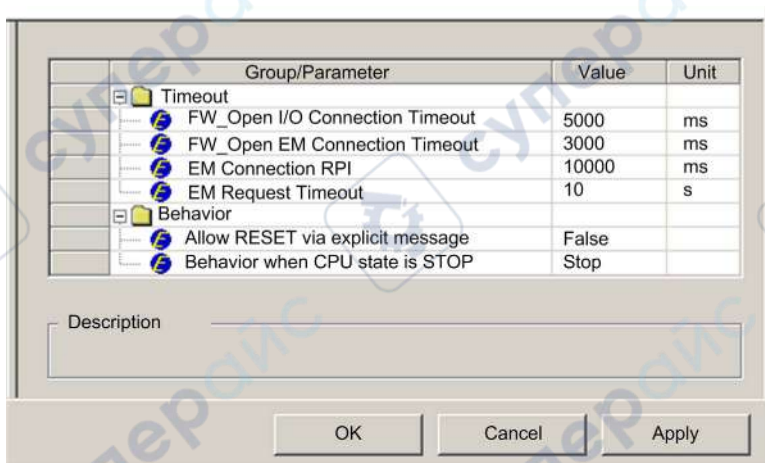
### Description

The **EtherNet/IP** page is displayed only when Control Expert is operating in Advanced Mode (see page 50). Advanced mode properties are identified by the  icon.

Use the **EtherNet/IP** page to configure the following communication module properties:

- properties that determine how the communication module, as a scanner, opens connections for both implicit and explicit messages
- the frequency for transmitting produced data over implicit messaging connections
- the timeout period for explicit messaging connections
- the behavior of the communication module—as a scanner—when:
  - the application is stopped, or
  - the communication module receives a reset service request

The **EtherNet/IP** page looks like this:



To display this page, select the **Channel Properties** → **EtherNet/IP** node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the **Device Editor**.

**NOTE:** Refer to the topic Configuring Properties in the Device Editor (see page 57) for instructions on how to edit properties.

## Properties

**Note:** Users experienced in the configuration of EtherNet/IP networks can edit the following read-write properties.

Name	Description
<b>Timeout</b>	
FW_Open IO Connection Timing	The amount of time the communication module waits for the Forward_Open IO messaging transaction to open an implicit messaging connection. Default = 5000 ms
FW_Open EM Connection Timing	The amount of time the communication module waits for the Forward_Open IO messaging transaction to open an explicit messaging connection. Default = 3000 ms
EM Connected RPI	The value used to set the T->O (target to originator) and O->T (originator to target) requested packet interval (RPI) for explicit message connections. This value is used to calculate the lifetime of a connection. Default = 10000 ms.
EM Request Timeout	The amount of time the communication module waits between a request and reply of an explicit message. Default = 10 s.
<b>Output</b>	
Allow reset explicit message	The behavior of the communication module—as scanner—when it receives a reset service request: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TRUE indicates the module will accept the request and reset itself.</li> <li>• FALSE indicates the module ignores the reset service request and continues uninterrupted operations.</li> </ul> Default = FALSE
Behavior when CPU state is STOP	The state of the communication module when the CPU application goes into a STOP state: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TRUE indicates that the module enters STOP state (implicit connections are closed).</li> <li>• FALSE indicates that the module enters IDLE state (implicit connections are not closed).</li> </ul> Default = FALSE

## Section 2.5

### Ethernet Services

#### Overview

This section describes how to enable and configure Ethernet services provided by the BMX NOC 0401 communication module.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Enabling Ethernet Services	78
Configuring the DHCP and FDR Servers	80
Configuring the SNMP Agent	86
Configuring Access Control	89
Configuring QoS Ethernet Packet Tagging	92
Configuring the Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol	96
Configuring the Email Service	100
Sending Email via the SEND_EMAIL Block	103
Configuring the Network Time Service	105



## Enabling Ethernet Services

### Service List

Use the **Services** page to enable and disable Ethernet services provided by the communications module.

**NOTE:** After you enable any service, you can configure its settings. Control Expert applies default settings to services you enable but elect not to configure.

The **Services** page looks like this:



The screenshot shows a configuration window with a list of services and their status. Each service has a dropdown menu set to 'Enabled'. At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Access Control	Enabled
Address Server	Enabled
QoS Tagging	Enabled
I/O Communication Control	Enabled
RSTP	Enabled
Port Mirroring	Enabled
IGMP Snooping	Enabled
Network Time Service	Enabled
Email	Enabled

To display this page, select the **Services** node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the **Device Editor**.

After you **Enable** a service in this page, the next step is to configure that service. Depending upon the specific service, it can be configured in either the Control Expert **Device Editor** (by selecting a node beneath the **Services** parent node) or in the module's web pages.

**NOTE:** Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* ([see page 57](#)) for instructions on how to edit properties in Control Expert.

## Service Descriptions

The Ethernet communication module can be configured to provide the following services:

This service...	Enables the module to...	Configurable in...
SNMP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>serve as an SNMP v1 agent</li> <li>provide trap information to up to two devices configured as SNMP managers.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The SNMP service is enabled by default and cannot be disabled.</p>	(not editable)
Access Control	deny access to the Ethernet communication module from unauthorized devices.	Device Editor
Address Server	provide both IP addressing parameters and operating parameters to other Ethernet devices.	Device Editor
QoS Tagging	<p>add <i>Differentiated Services Code Point</i> (DSCP) tags to Ethernet packets so that network switches can prioritize the transmission and forwarding of Ethernet packets.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Before enabling QoS tagging, confirm that devices connected to the Ethernet communication module support QoS tagging.</p>	Device Editor
I/O Communication Control	<p>allow the Control Expert application to control the enabling and disabling of individual connections between the communication module and remote I/O devices.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The application can open and close individual connections using the control bits located at the beginning of the output area.</li> <li>If this service is disabled the user—via the application program—cannot toggle on and off connection control bits</li> </ul>	Device Editor
RSTP	employ the <i>rapid spanning tree protocol</i> (RSTP)—in combination with other similarly-configured network devices—to manage redundant physical connections and create a loop-free logical path connecting the network devices.	Device Editor
Port Mirroring	duplicate the traffic entering and exiting any one of the four Ethernet ports onto another non-RSTP destination port, for the purpose of diagnosing the source port.	Web pages
IGMP Snooping	restrict outbound multicast transmissions to only those ports with downstream consumers.	<no configuration required>
Network Time Service	provide the source time synchronization signal for the PLC controller, which manages an internal clock to maintain this time.	Device Editor
Email	enable the sending—but not receiving—of email messages from the PLC application to a standard SMTP server.	Device Editor

## Configuring the DHCP and FDR Servers

### Description

The Ethernet communication module includes both a DHCP and a Fast Device Replacement (FDR) server. The DHCP server provides IP address settings to networked Ethernet devices. The FDR server provides operating parameter settings to replacement Ethernet devices that are equipped with FDR client functionality.

Use the **Address Server** page to:

- enable and disable the communication module's FDR service
- view an automatically generated list of devices included in the communication module's Ethernet configuration, displaying for each device:
  - IP addressing parameters, and
  - whether the device's IP addressing parameters are provided by the communication module's embedded DHCP server
- manually add remote devices—that are not part of the communication module's Ethernet configuration—to the communication module's DHCP client list

**NOTE:** Confirm that each device you manually add is equipped with DHCP client software, and is configured to subscribe to the communication module's IP addressing service.

The **Address Server** page looks like this:

The screenshot shows the 'Address Server' configuration page. At the top, there is a section for 'FDR Server' with a dropdown menu set to 'Enabled'. Below this are two sections for device lists:

**Automatically Added Devices**

Device Number	IP Address	DHCP	Identifier Type	Identifier	Sub-Network Mask	Gateway IP Address
003	192.168.1.6	Enabled	Device Name	NIC2212_01	255.255.255.0	0.0.0.0

**Manually Added Devices**

IP Address	Identifier Type	Identifier	Sub-Network Mask	Gateway IP Address
192.169.0.23	Device Name	NIC2212_24	255.255.255.0	192.169.0.0

Buttons: 'Add Device Manually', 'Remove', 'OK', 'Cancel', 'Apply'.

To display this page:

Step	Description
1	Select the <b>Services</b> node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the <b>Device Editor</b> . The <b>Services</b> page opens.
2	In the <b>Services</b> page, set the <b>Address Server</b> field to <b>Enabled</b> . The <b>Address Server</b> node appears in the navigation tree.
3	Select the <b>Address Server</b> node in the navigation tree.

### Enabling the FDR Service

To enable the communication module's FDR service, set the **FDR Server** field to **Enabled**. To disable the service, toggle the same field to **Disabled**.

**NOTE:** Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* ([see page 57](#)) for instructions on how to apply edited properties to networked devices.

Any networked Ethernet device equipped with FDR client functionality can subscribe to the communication module's FDR service. The communication module can store up to 1 MB of FDR client operating parameter files. When this file storage capacity is reached, the module cannot store any additional client FDR files.

The communication module can store FDR client files for up to 128 devices, depending on the size of each stored file. For example, if the size of each FDR client file is small—not more than 8 Kb—the module could store up to the maximum of 128 parameter files.

## Manually Adding Remote Devices to the DHCP Service

Remote devices that are part of the communication module's Ethernet configuration—and which have subscribed to the communication module's IP addressing service—automatically appear in the **Automatically Added Devices** list.

Other remote devices—that are not part of the communication module's configuration—can be manually added to the communication module's DHCP IP addressing service.

To manually add networked Ethernet devices, which are not part of the communication module's Ethernet configuration, to the communication module's IP addressing service:

Step	Description										
1	In the <b>Address Server</b> page, click the <b>Add Device Manually</b> button. Control Expert adds an empty row to the list of <b>Manually Added Devices</b> .										
2	In the new row, configure the following parameters for the client device: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>IP Address</td> <td>Type in the IP address of the client device.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Identifier Type</td> <td>Select the type of value the client device will use to identify itself to the FDR server:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MAC address</li> <li>• Device Name</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Identifier</td> <td>Depending upon the identifier type, type in the client device setting for the MAC address or Name.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mask</td> <td>Type in the client device subnet mask.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Gateway</td> <td>Type in the gateway address that remote devices can use to communicate with devices located on other networks. Use 0.0.0.0 if remote devices will not communicate with devices located on other networks.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	IP Address	Type in the IP address of the client device.	Identifier Type	Select the type of value the client device will use to identify itself to the FDR server: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MAC address</li> <li>• Device Name</li> </ul>	Identifier	Depending upon the identifier type, type in the client device setting for the MAC address or Name.	Mask	Type in the client device subnet mask.	Gateway	Type in the gateway address that remote devices can use to communicate with devices located on other networks. Use 0.0.0.0 if remote devices will not communicate with devices located on other networks.
IP Address	Type in the IP address of the client device.										
Identifier Type	Select the type of value the client device will use to identify itself to the FDR server: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MAC address</li> <li>• Device Name</li> </ul>										
Identifier	Depending upon the identifier type, type in the client device setting for the MAC address or Name.										
Mask	Type in the client device subnet mask.										
Gateway	Type in the gateway address that remote devices can use to communicate with devices located on other networks. Use 0.0.0.0 if remote devices will not communicate with devices located on other networks.										
3	Refer to the topic <i>Configuring Properties in the Device Editor</i> ( <a href="#">see page 57</a> ) for instructions on how to apply edited properties to networked devices.										

## Viewing the Auto-Generated DHCP Client List

The list of **Automatically Added Devices** includes a row for each remote device that is:

- part of the communication module's Ethernet configuration, and
- configured to subscribe to the communication module's DHCP addressing service

**NOTE:** You cannot add devices to this list in this page. Instead, use the configuration pages for the remote device to subscribe to this service.

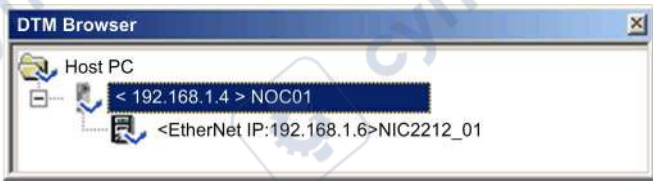
The list of **Automatically Added Devices** contains the following information for each networked device:


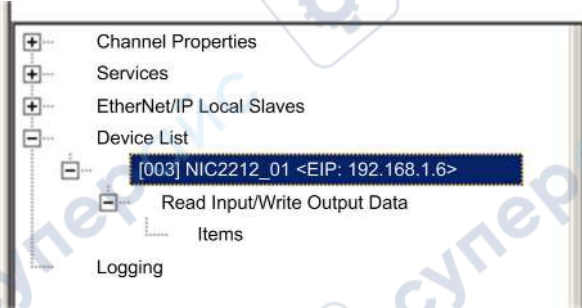
Property	Description
Device Number	The number assigned to the device in the Control Expert configuration.
IP Address	The client device IP address.
Enable DHCP	TRUE indicates that the device subscribes to the DHCP service.

Property	Description
Identifier Type	Indicates the mechanism used by the server to recognize the client (MAC address or DHCP device name).
Identifier	The actual MAC address or DHCP device name.
Mask	The client device subnet mask.
Gateway	The IP address a DHCP client device will use to access other devices that are not located on the local subnet. A value of 0.0.0.0 constrains the DHCP client device by allowing it to communicate only with devices on the local subnet.

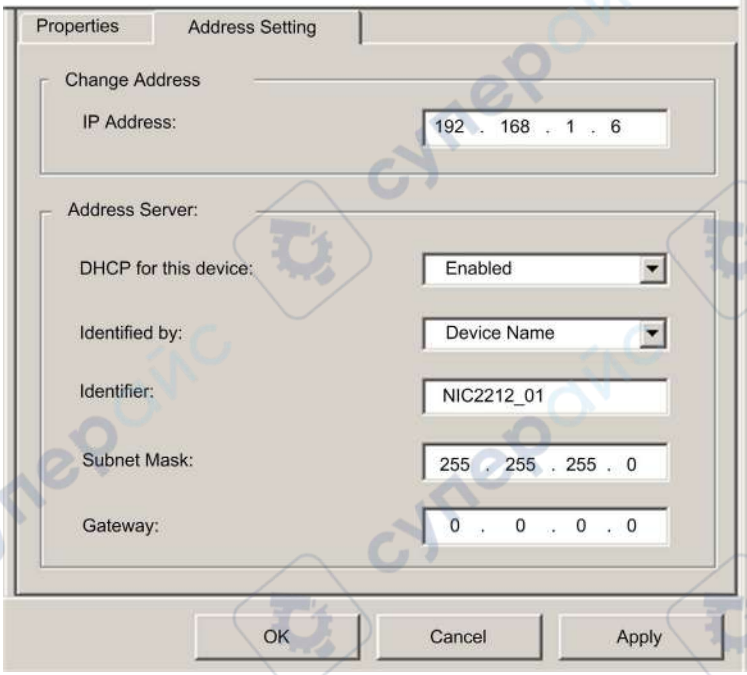
### Subscribing to the DHCP Service for a Device that is Part of the Configuration

An Ethernet device—that is part of the communication module Ethernet configuration—can subscribe to the communication module’s IP addressing service. To subscribe to this service, follow these steps:

Step	Action
1	<p>In the <b>DTM Browser</b>, select the Ethernet communication module that is connected to the remote device that you want to add to the DHCP service. In the following example, the communication module with the alias name of <b>NOC01</b> is selected:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> The selected module is connected to the STB NIC 2212 network interface device bearing the alias name <b>NIC2212_01</b>, which is the module you want to add to the DHCP service.</p>

Step	Action
2	<p>With <b>NOC01</b> selected in the <b>DTM Browser</b>, click the right mouse button, and select <b>Open</b> in the pop-up menu.:</p>  <p>The <b>Device Editor</b> opens.</p>
3	<p>In the navigation tree on the left side of the <b>Device Editor</b>, expand the <b>Device List</b> node and select the device for which you want to enable the DHCP service. In this example, select <b>NIC2212_01</b>:</p>  <p>Control Expert displays the properties for the selected remote device in the right pane of the window.</p>



Step	Action										
4	<p>In the right pane of the window, select the <b>Address Setting</b> tab to display the following page:</p> 										
5	<p>In the <b>Address Server</b> area of this page, configure the following properties:</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td><b>DHCP for this device</b></td> <td>Select <b>Enabled</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Identified by</b></td> <td>           The choices are:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>MAC Address</b>, or</li> <li>● <b>Device Name</b></li> </ul>           Select <b>Device Name</b>.         </td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Identifier</b></td> <td>Control Expert has automatically added the device name <b>NIC2212_01</b>. For the purpose of this example, accept this default value.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Subnet Mask</b></td> <td>Control Expert has automatically applied the same subnet mask used for the Ethernet communication module. For the purpose of this example, accept the default value of <b>255.255.255.0</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Gateway</b></td> <td>For the purpose of this example, accept the default value of <b>0.0.0.0</b>.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	<b>DHCP for this device</b>	Select <b>Enabled</b>	<b>Identified by</b>	The choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>MAC Address</b>, or</li> <li>● <b>Device Name</b></li> </ul> Select <b>Device Name</b> .	<b>Identifier</b>	Control Expert has automatically added the device name <b>NIC2212_01</b> . For the purpose of this example, accept this default value.	<b>Subnet Mask</b>	Control Expert has automatically applied the same subnet mask used for the Ethernet communication module. For the purpose of this example, accept the default value of <b>255.255.255.0</b> .	<b>Gateway</b>	For the purpose of this example, accept the default value of <b>0.0.0.0</b> .
<b>DHCP for this device</b>	Select <b>Enabled</b>										
<b>Identified by</b>	The choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>MAC Address</b>, or</li> <li>● <b>Device Name</b></li> </ul> Select <b>Device Name</b> .										
<b>Identifier</b>	Control Expert has automatically added the device name <b>NIC2212_01</b> . For the purpose of this example, accept this default value.										
<b>Subnet Mask</b>	Control Expert has automatically applied the same subnet mask used for the Ethernet communication module. For the purpose of this example, accept the default value of <b>255.255.255.0</b> .										
<b>Gateway</b>	For the purpose of this example, accept the default value of <b>0.0.0.0</b> .										
6	<p>Click <b>OK</b> to save your edits.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Refer to the topic <i>Configuring Properties in the Device Editor</i> (<a href="#">see page 57</a>) for more information on editing and saving property settings in this window.</p>										



## Configuring the SNMP Agent

### Description

The Ethernet communication module includes an SNMP v1 agent. An SNMP agent is a software component running on the communication module that allows access to the module's diagnostic and management information via the SNMP service.

SNMP browsers, network management software, and other tools typically use SNMP to access this data. In addition, the SNMP agent can be configured with the IP address of up to two devices—typically PC's running network management software—to be the target of event driven trap messages. These trap messages inform the management device of events such as cold start, and detected authentication failures.

Use the **SNMP** page to configure the SNMP agent in the communication module. The SNMP agent can connect to and communicate with up to 2 SNMP managers as part of an SNMP service. The SNMP service includes:

- authentication checking, by the Ethernet communication module, of any SNMP manager that sends SNMP requests
- management of event, or trap, reporting by the module

The **SNMP** page looks like this:

Group/Parameter	Value	Unit
[-] IP Address Managers		
▶ IP Address Manager 1	0.0.0.0	
▶ IP Address Manager 2	0.0.0.0	
[-] Agent		
▶ Location (SysLocation)		
▶ Contact (SysContact)		
▶ SNMP Manager	False	
[-] Community Names		
▶ Set	Public	
▶ Get	Public	
▶ Trap	Public	
[-] Security		
▶ Enable "Authentication Failure" Trap	False	

Description

OK Cancel Apply

To display this page:

Step	Description
1	Select the <b>Services</b> node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the <b>Device Editor</b> . The <b>Services</b> page opens.
2	In the <b>Services</b> page, set the <b>SNMP</b> field to <b>Enabled</b> , then click <b>OK</b> or <b>Apply</b> . The <b>SNMP</b> node appears in the navigation tree.
3	Select the <b>SNMP</b> node in the navigation tree.

**NOTE:** Refer to the topic Configuring Properties in the Device Editor ([see page 57](#)) for instructions on how to edit properties.

### Viewing and Configuring SNMP Properties

**NOTE:** The sysName SNMP parameter is neither editable nor visible in the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool software. By default, the sysName is set to the Ethernet communication module part number.

When DHCP is enabled and **Device Name** is selected as the DHCP identifier for the module, the SNMP sysName parameter is not set to the module part number, but is instead the device name.

The following properties can be viewed and edited in the **SNMP** page:

Property	Description
IP Address Managers:	
IP Address Manager 1	The IP address of the first SNMP manager to which the SNMP agent sends notices of traps.
IP Address Manager 2	The IP address of the second SNMP manager to which the SNMP agent sends notices of traps.
Agent:	
Location	The device location (32 characters maximum)
Contact	Information describing the person to contact for device maintenance (32 characters maximum)
SNMP Manager	Select either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>TRUE:</b> the Location and Contact information are editable in this page</li> <li>● <b>FALSE:</b> Location and Contact settings are not editable in this page</li> </ul>
Community Names:	
Get	Password required by the SNMP agent before executing read commands from an SNMP manager. Default = <b>public</b> .
Set	Password required by the SNMP agent before executing write commands from an SNMP manager. Default = <b>public</b>
Trap	Password an SNMP manager requires from the SNMP agent before the manager will accept trap notices from the agent. Default = <b>public</b>

Property	Description
Security:	
Enable Authentication Failure Trap	<b>TRUE</b> causes the SNMP agent to send a trap notification message to the SNMP manager if an unauthorized manager sends a Get or Set command to the agent. Default = <b>FALSE</b> .

## Configuring Access Control

### Description

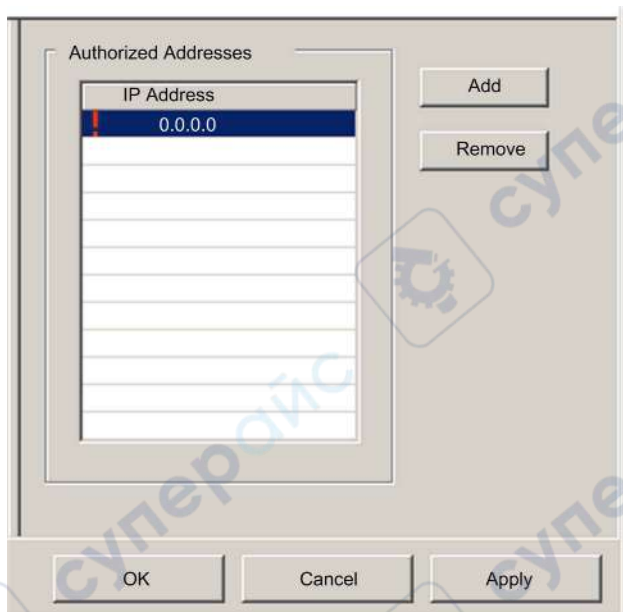
Use the **Access Control** page to restrict access to the Ethernet communication module in its role as either a Modbus TCP or EtherNet/IP server. When access control is enabled in the **Services** page, add the IP addresses of the following devices to the list of **Authorized Addresses** to permit communication with that device:

- the Ethernet communication module itself, so that the module can use EtherNet/IP explicit messaging for any of the following purposes:
  - obtaining diagnostic data
  - resetting the module
  - changing the IP address
- any client device that may send a request to the Ethernet communication module, in its role as either Modbus TCP or EtherNet/IP server
- your own maintenance PC, so that you can communicate with the PLC via Control Expert to configure and diagnose your application, and to view the module's web pages
- any target device to which the Ethernet communication module may send a Modbus TCP explicit message

**NOTE:** You need not add to list the IP address of devices that will be the target of EtherNet/IP explicit messages.

When access control is disabled in the **Services** page, the Ethernet communication module will accept Modbus TCP and EtherNet/IP requests from any device.

The following graphic depicts the **Access Control** page immediately after a new row has been added to the list of **Authorized Addresses**, but before the new item has been configured:



To display this page:

Step	Description
1	Select the <b>Services</b> node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the <b>Device Editor</b> . The <b>Services</b> page opens.
2	In the <b>Services</b> page, set the <b>Access Control</b> field to <b>Enabled</b> and click either <b>OK</b> or <b>Apply</b> . The <b>Access Control</b> node appears in the navigation tree.
3	Select the <b>Access Control</b> node in the navigation tree.

**NOTE:** Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* ([see page 57](#)) for instructions on how to edit properties.

## Adding and Removing Devices in the Authorized Address List

To add a device to the **Authorized Addresses** list:

Step	Description
1	In the <b>Access Control</b> page, click <b>Add</b> . A new row appears in the <b>Authorized Addresses</b> list, displaying: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• a red exclamation point, indicating editing has begun, and</li><li>• a placeholder IP address of 0.0.0.0</li></ul>
2	Double-click the left mouse button on the placeholder IP address. The IP address field expands and becomes editable.
3	In the new IP address field, type in the IP address of the device which will be able to access the communication module, then press <b>Enter</b> .
4	Repeat steps 1 through 3, above, for each additional device to which you want to grant access to the communication module.
5	Refer to the topic <b>Configuring Properties in the Device Editor</b> ( <i>see page 57</i> ) for instructions on how to save your configuration edits.

To remove a device from the **Authorized Addresses** list, select its IP address in the list, then click **Remove**. The selected IP address is removed.

## Configuring QoS Ethernet Packet Tagging

### Description

The Ethernet communication module can be configured to perform Ethernet packet tagging. The module supports the OSI layer 3 Quality of Service (QoS) standard defined in RFC-2475. When you enable QoS, the module adds a *differentiated services code point* (DSCP) tag to each Ethernet packet it transmits, thereby indicating the priority of that packet.

Use the **QoS** page to:

- specify the source of QoS packet priority settings, and
- view or edit QoS DSCP prioritization values

The contents of the **QoS** page depends on the Ethernet communication module you selected for your project: **BMX NOC 0401** or **BMX NOC 0401.2**.

**NOTE:** The DSCP Value settings input in the **QoS** page are synchronized with the same settings in the **QoS Queue** tab of the **Channel Properties** → **Switch** page. Edits to a common property in either page will change that value in the other page.

The **QoS** page displays five EtherNet/IP traffic types when you are operating in **Advanced Mode** (*see page 50*), or two EtherNet/IP traffic types when Advanced Mode is de-selected.

To display the **QoS** page:

Step	Description
1	Select the <b>Services</b> node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the <b>Device Editor</b> . The <b>Services</b> page opens.
2	In the <b>Services</b> page, set the <b>QoS Tagging</b> field to <b>Enabled</b> , then click <b>OK</b> or <b>Apply</b> . The <b>QoS</b> node appears in the navigation tree.
3	Select the <b>QoS</b> node in the navigation tree.

**NOTE:** Refer to the topic Configuring Properties in the Device Editor (*see page 57*) for instructions on how to edit properties.

### The QoS Page for the BMX NOC 0401.2 Ethernet Communication Module

The following **QoS** page displays the default values for the **BMX NOC 0401.2** module displays when operating in **Advanced Mode**:

Traffic Type	Message Type	DSCP Value
EtherNet/IP Traffic	DSCP Value for I/O Data Scheduled Priority Messages	47
	DSCP Value for Explicit Messages	27
	DSCP Value for I/O Data Urgent Priority Messages	55
	DSCP Value for I/O Data High Priority Messages	43
	DSCP Value for I/O Data Low Priority Messages	31
Modbus TCP Traffic	DSCP Value for I/O Messages	47
	DSCP Value for Explicit Messages	27
Network Time Protocol Traffic	DSCP Value for Network Time Protocol Messages	59



### The QoS Page for the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet Communication Module

The following **QoS** page displays the default values for the **BMX NOC 0401** module displays when operating in **Advanced Mode**:

### Specifying the Source of QoS Settings

The five QoS prioritization values can be set either from the communication module’s flash memory, or in this page. To specify the QoS configuration source, set the **Use value from** field to either:

Setting	Description
Configuration <sup>1</sup>	The communication module uses the settings input in the <b>Type of Traffic</b> section of this page.
Flash <sup>1</sup>	The communication module uses the settings saved in the module’s flash memory. The fields in the <b>Type of Traffic</b> section are read-only.

1. Schneider Electric recommends that QoS values be set in the configuration, and not by saving settings to flash memory. Settings saved to flash memory will be lost if the module is replaced.

**NOTE:** You can also edit QoS configuration settings by using explicit messages to set the attributes of the QoS CIP object ([see page 253](#)).

## Type of Traffic Settings

QoS tagging lets you prioritize Ethernet packet streams based on the type of traffic in that stream. The communication module recognizes the traffic types described below. When the **Use value from** field is set to **Configuration**, you can edit the prioritization values in this page. Each traffic type can have a prioritization value from 0... 63.

Traffic Type	Default
DSCP Value for IO Data Scheduled Priority Messages (EtherNet/IP)	43
DSCP Value for Explicit Message (Modbus TCP & EtherNet/IP)	27
DSCP Value for IO Data Urgent Priority Messages (EtherNet/IP) <sup>1</sup>	55
DSCP Value for IO Data High Priority Messages (Modbus TCP & EtherNet/IP) <sup>1</sup>	43
DSCP Value for IO Data Low Priority Messages (EtherNet/IP) <sup>1</sup>	31
DSCP Value for Network Time Protocol Messages	59
1. Visible only when Advanced Mode ( <i>see page 50</i> ) is enabled.	

To effectively implement QoS settings in your Ethernet network:

- use network switches that support QoS
- consistently apply DSCP values to network devices and switches that support DSCP
- verify that switches apply a consistent set of rules for sorting DSCP tags, when transmitting and receiving Ethernet packets

**NOTE:** The QoS settings for Scheduled, High, and Low priority messages also apply to input and output priority messages for a remote device. You can configure these settings for a remote device (*see Quantum using EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet Communication Module, User Manual*) in the **Device Editor** by selecting a device connection node, then opening the connection's **General** page.

## Configuring the Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol

### Description

Ethernet ports 3 and 4, located on the front of the BMX NOC 0401 communication module, support the *Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol* (RSTP). RSTP is an OSI layer 2 protocol defined by IEEE 802.1D 2004. RSTP performs two necessary services:

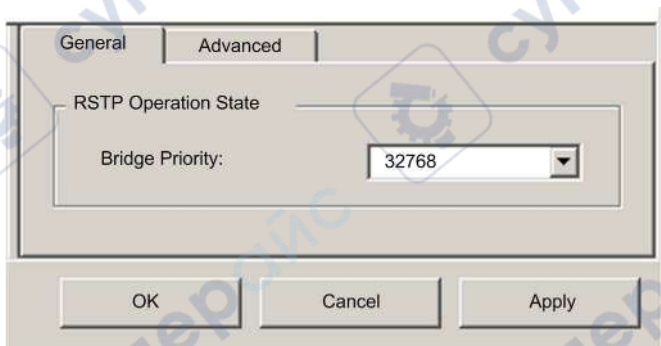
- it creates a loop-free logical network path for Ethernet devices that are part of a topology that includes redundant physical paths
- it automatically restores network communication—by activating redundant links—in the event the network experiences a loss of service

RSTP software, operating simultaneously in every network switch, obtains information from each switch which enables the software to create a hierarchical logical network topology. RSTP is a flexible protocol that can be implemented on many physical topologies, including ring, mesh, or a combination of ring and mesh.

Use the **RSTP → General** and the **RSTP → Advanced** pages to configure RSTP for the embedded Ethernet switch in the communication module.

**NOTE:** RSTP can be implemented only when every network switch is configured to support RSTP.

The **RSTP → General** page looks like this:



The image shows a configuration dialog box for RSTP. It has two tabs: "General" (selected) and "Advanced". Under the "General" tab, there is a section for "RSTP Operation State" which contains a "Bridge Priority" field. The value in this field is "32768". At the bottom of the dialog box, there are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

The **RSTP** → **Advanced** page looks like this:

The screenshot displays the 'Advanced' configuration page for RSTP. It is divided into three main sections: Bridge Parameters, Port 3 Parameters, and Port 4 Parameters. At the bottom, there are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply' buttons.

**Bridge Parameters**

- Maximum Age Time: 20 s
- Transmit Hold Count: 40 Times
- Hello Time: 2 s

**Port 3 Parameters**

- RSTP: Enabled
- Priority: 0
- RTP Cost: Auto Value: N/A
- Edge Port: Auto
- Point to Point: Auto

**Port 4 Parameters**

- RSTP: Enabled
- Priority: 0
- RTP Cost: Auto Value: N/A
- Edge Port: Auto
- Point to Point: Auto

To display these pages:

Step	Description
1	Select the <b>Services</b> node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the <b>Device Editor</b> . The <b>Services</b> page opens.
2	In the <b>Services</b> page, set the <b>RSTP</b> field to <b>Enabled</b> , then click <b>OK</b> or <b>Apply</b> . The <b>RSTP</b> node appears in the navigation tree.
3	Select the <b>RSTP</b> node in the navigation tree, then click on either the <b>General</b> or <b>Advanced</b> tab to display that page.

**NOTE:** Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* ([see page 57](#)) for instructions on how to edit properties.

### Configuring RSTP Properties

The following properties can be viewed and edited in the **RSTP → General** page:

Property	Description
RSTP Operation State: Bridge Priority	A 2-byte value for the switch, from 0 to 65535, with a default of 32768 (the midpoint).  <b>NOTE:</b> Network switches running RSTP software periodically exchange information about themselves using special packets called Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs), which act as a heartbeat. The Bridge Priority value is contained in the BPDU and establishes the relative position of the switch in the RSTP hierarchy.

The following properties can be viewed and edited in the **RSTP → Advanced** page:

Property	Description
Bridge Parameters:	
Maximum Age Time	This value is set to The length of time, from 6 to 40 seconds, that the switch waits for receipt of the next hello message, before initiating a change to the RSTP topology. Default = 40 s.
Transmit Hold Count	The maximum number of BPDUs, from 1 to 40, that the switch can transmit per second. Default = 40.
Hello Time	(read-only) The frequency—set at 2 seconds—that the embedded switch sends heartbeat BPDUs.

Property	Description
Port Parameters (These properties can be separately configured for ports 3 and 4):	
RSTP	(read-only) This property is set to <b>Enabled</b> in the <b>Services</b> page.
Priority	The priority assigned to the switch port, an integer from 0 to 240 in increments of 16. Default = 0. This value is used by the RSTP process if it needs to break a tie between two ports on the same switch when identifying a: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>root port</b>: the port on a non-root switch that is closest to the root bridge in terms of path cost, or</li> <li>● <b>designated port</b>: the port at one end of a network segment through which traffic passes on its way to the root bridge</li> </ul>
RSTP Cost	The method used to determine the RSTP cost of the path through the embedded switch. Values include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Auto</b>—the RSTP protocol will automatically assign a value to the switch by operation of the RSTP algorithm</li> <li>● <b>Manual</b>—you input the RSTP cost—an integer from 1 to 200000000—in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ul>
Edge Port	(read-only) Set to a fixed value of <b>Auto</b> . The RSTP process automatically determines if the port is an RSTP edge port.
Point to Point	(read-only) Set to a fixed value of <b>Auto</b> . The RSTP process automatically determines if the port is an RSTP point-to-point port.

## Configuring the Email Service

### Using the Email Service

Use the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) service to configure up to three (3) Email messages. The PLC uses the Email messages you configure to notify specified Email recipients about meaningful run-time events—for example, a change in the value of a variable, or a threshold overrun.

**NOTE:** The Email service is available only when you first perform the following tasks:

- upgrade the firmware in the **BMX NOC 0401** Ethernet communication module to version 2.01 or higher.
- select the **BMX NOC 0401.2** Ethernet communication module for your project using Unity Pro version 7.0 or higher.

**NOTE:** Unity Pro is the former name of Control Expert for version 13.1 or earlier.

Email messages are transmitted by the execution of a `SEND_EMAIL` (see page 103) function block included in your application logic.

**NOTE:** To successfully send an Email message using the `SEND_EMAIL` block, the Email service and PLC application must be synchronized—i.e., the Email service must be activated whenever the PLC is in RUN mode.

You can configure the Email service only in the **Email Configuration** page of Control Expert. You can diagnose the operation of the Email service in the diagnostic pages of both the Control Expert software (see page 328) and the communication module web pages (see page 391).

## Configuring Email Service Parameters

Use the following page to configure up to three Email messages:

**SMTP Server Configuration**

SMTP Server IP Address: 192 . 168 . 1 . 1      SMTP Server Port: 25

**Password Authentication**

Authentication: Enabled      Login: operator  
 Password: ● ● ●

**Email Header 1**

From: operator1@company.com  
 To: merle@mainoffice.com  
 Subject: Pump #1 pumping mud, Merle, shut her down

**Email Header 2**

From: operator17@company.com  
 To: fred@company.com  
 Subject: Transformer #7 over-load

**Email Header 3**

From: operator21@company.com  
 To: carl@company.com  
 Subject: Circuit breaker activated

To display this page:

Step	Description
1	Select the <b>Services</b> node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the <b>Device Editor</b> . The <b>Services</b> page opens.
2	In the <b>Services</b> page, set the <b>Email</b> field to <b>Enabled</b> . The <b>Email</b> node appears in the navigation tree.
3	Select the <b>Email</b> node in the navigation tree.



## Viewing and Configuring Email Settings

The configurable Email service parameters include the following:

Parameter	Description
SMTP Server Configuration:	
SMTP Server IP Address:	The IP address of the Email server that will relay Email messages.
SMTP Server Port:	TCP port used by the Email server. Default = 25.
Password Authentication:	
Authentication:	Is client authentication by the Email server: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disabled (default)</li> <li>• Enabled</li> </ul>
Login:	If the Email server is configured for client authentication, the user name, up to 64 characters.
Password:	If the Email server is configured for client authentication, the client password string, up to 64 characters.
Email Header 1...3:	
From:	The Email address of the sender, up to 64 characters.
To:	The Email addresses of the recipients, up to 128 characters.
Subject:	The static part of the Email message, up to 32 characters.

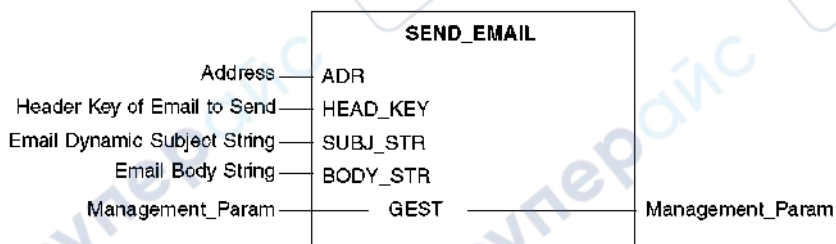
## Sending Email via the SEND\_EMAIL Block

### Using SEND\_EMAIL to Send Pre-configured Email Messages

Use the `SEND_EMAIL` block in your application to programmatically send any of three email messages you previously configured in Control Expert (*see page 100*).

**NOTE:** To successfully send an Email message using the `SEND_EMAIL` block, synchronize the Email client service and PLC application—i.e., activate the Email client service whenever the PLC is in RUN mode.

### FBD Representation



### Input Parameters

The following table describes the input parameters:

Parameters	Data Type	Description
ADR	ARRAY [0...7] OF INT	The path to the destination device, in the format of <i>rack.slot.channel</i> . Use the EFB ADDR to convert from the string format to the array of INT. For example, if the module is configured at rack 0, slot 4, channel 0, use: ADDR('0.4.0').
HEAD_KEY	INT	The email header number previously configured in Control Expert ( <i>see page 100</i> ). Only values of 1, 2, and 3 are valid).
SUBJ_STR	STRING	The dynamic part of the email subject that is appended to the static subject string.
BODY_STR	STRING	The body of the email. <b>NOTE:</b> Use the <b>\$N</b> (or <b>\$n</b> ) two-character tag to insert a line break in the email text.

## Input / Output Parameters

The following table describes the `GEST` management parameter, which is the only input/output parameter:

Parameters	Data Type	Description
GEST	ARRAY [0...3] OF INT	The management parameter, consisting of 4 words.

The `GEST` management parameter presents the following structure:

Description	Word Order	MSB	LSB
System-managed data	1	Exchange number	Activity bit—the first bit of the first word. It indicates the execution status of the communication: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 = Email is being sent</li> <li>• 0 = Email complete</li> </ul>
	2	Operation report ( <i>see page 424</i> )	Communication report ( <i>see page 423</i> )
User-managed data	3	Timeout	
	4	Length: the size of the data buffer.  <b>NOTE:</b> The length parameter is an output parameter. This word is written by the system and equals the total length of the email (header + body). The maximum size of header + body is 1024 characters.	

## Configuring the Network Time Service

### The Network Time Protocol Client

The Ethernet communication module includes a network time protocol (NTP) client. After you enable the network time service ([see page 78](#)), you can configure it by:

- identifying two external NTP servers—a primary server, and a secondary server—the Ethernet communication module uses to synchronize its internal time setting
- specifying the time zone location of the module
- enabling the automatic adjustment of the module internal time setting for daylight saving time changes

The Ethernet communication module sends its internal time setting to the PLC controller over the shared backplane. The PLC manages an internal clock to maintain this time, and uses the time setting to time-stamp system events and I/O data.

**NOTE:** The network time service is available only when you first perform the following tasks:

- upgrade the firmware in the **BMX NOC 0401** Ethernet communication module to version 2.01 or higher
- select the **BMX NOC 0401.2** Ethernet communication module for your project using Unity Pro version 7.0 or higher

**NOTE:** Unity Pro is the former name of Control Expert for version 13.1 or earlier.

Operation of the network time service can be monitored and diagnosed in:

- the Network Time Service Diagnostics page of the Control Expert software ([see page 341](#)), and
- the Network Time Service web page ([see page 414](#))

You can configure the network time only in the following page:

The screenshot shows the 'NTP Server Configuration' dialog box with the following settings:

- Primary NTP Server IP Address: 192 . 168 . 1 . 1
- Secondary NTP Server IP Address: 192 . 168 . 1 . 2
- Polling Period: 18 (1-120) seconds
- Time Zone: (UTC-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)
- Timezone Offset: 0 (-1439 to +1439) Minutes
- Daylight Saving: Automatically adjust clock for daylight saving: Disabled
- Start Daylight Saving: Month: March, Day of Week: Sunday, Week#: 1
- End Daylight Saving: Month: November, Day of Week: Sunday, Week#: 1

To display this page:

Step	Description
1	Select the <b>Services</b> node in the navigation tree located on the left side of the <b>Device Editor</b> . The <b>Services</b> page opens.
2	In the <b>Services</b> page, set the <b>Network Time Service</b> field to <b>Enabled</b> . The <b>Network Time Service</b> node appears in the navigation tree.
3	Select the <b>Network Time Service</b> node in the navigation tree.

## Viewing and Configuring Network Time Service Settings

The following settings can be viewed and edited in this page:

Property	Description	
NTP Server Configuration:		
Primary NTP Server IP Address	The IP address of the NTP server, from which the Ethernet communication module first requests a time setting.	
Secondary NTP Server IP Address	The IP address of the back-up NTP server, from which the Ethernet communication module requests a time setting, after not receiving a response from the primary NTP server.	
Polling Period	The frequency (1...120 seconds) the Ethernet communication module uses for requesting a time setting from the NTP server. Default = 18 seconds.	
Time Zone:		
Time Zone Setting	The time zone associated with the Ethernet communication module, selected from a list that includes time zones around the globe. Default = Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) + 0 minutes.	
Timezone Offset	The number of minutes (-1439...+1439) used to adjust the Time Zone Setting. Default = 0 minutes.	
Daylight Saving:		
Automatically adjust clock for daylight saving	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enabled: turns ON the automatic clock adjustment for daylight savings.</li> <li>Disabled: turns OFF the automatic clock adjustment for daylight savings.</li> </ul> Default = Disabled. If automatic adjustment of the clock for daylight savings is enabled, use the next two fields to configure daylight saving adjustments.	
Start Daylight Saving	Month	Select the month daylight savings begins. Default = March.
	Day of Week	Select the day of the week daylight savings begins. Default = Sunday.
	Week#	Select the week of the month daylight savings begins. Default = 1 (first week of the month).

Property	Description	
End Daylight Saving	Month	Select the month daylight savings ends. Default = November.
	Day of Week	Select the day of the week daylight savings ends. Default = Sunday.
	Week#	Select the week of the month daylight savings ends. Default = 1 (first week of the month).

## Section 2.6

### Security

---

#### Security Features

##### Security and HTTP, FTP, and TFTP Services

You can enhance security for your project by disabling the FTP/TFTP and HTTP services at times when you do not need to use them. The module uses the HTTP service to provide access to the embedded webpages. The module uses the FTP and TFTP services to support various features including firmware upgrades, and FDR services.

The module's HTTP, FTP, and TFTP services can be disabled or enabled using the **DTM Browser Security** screen.

HTTP, FTP, and TFTP services are disabled by default in DTM instances created using BMX NOC 0401 module firmware version 2.04 or later and Unity Pro version 8.1 or later. They are enabled by default in instances created using previous versions of Unity Pro.

**NOTE:** Unity Pro is the former name of Control Expert for version 13.1 or earlier.

You can use Control Expert to enable or disable HTTP, FTP, and TFTP services as described in the following procedure.

If the HTTP, FTP, or TFTP services have been enabled with Control Expert, they can also be enabled or disabled at run time using a DATA\_EXCH function block. (See the *Communication Block Library* for Control Expert.)

### Using Control Expert to Enable and Disable Firmware Upgrade & FDR and Web Access Services

Perform the following steps to enable or disable FTP/TFTP or HTTP services on the module.

Step	Action
1	In the Control Expert main menu, select <b>Tools</b> → <b>DTM Browser</b> to open the <b>DTM Browser</b> .
2	Confirm that the DTM you want to use is not connected to the actual communication module or device. If necessary, disconnect the DTM from the module or device ( <i>see page 46</i> ).
3	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the module. Right-click and select <b>Open</b> to open the <b>Device Editor</b> .
4	Click the <b>Security</b> node in the navigation tree in the left panel to open the <b>Security</b> screen.
5	On the <b>Security</b> screen, choose the appropriate setting: ( <b>Enabled</b> or <b>Disabled</b> ) for the service or services.
6	Click: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Apply</b> to save the changes and keep the window</li> <li>- or -</li> <li>● <b>OK</b> to save the changes and close the window</li> </ul>

The edits do not take effect until they are successfully downloaded from your PC to the CPU and from the CPU to the communication modules and network devices.



## Section 2.7

### Configuring the Ethernet Communication Module as an EtherNet/IP Adapter

#### Overview

This section describes how to configure the Ethernet communication module to act as an EtherNet/IP adapter, using a functionality called Local Slave. The communication module supports up to three instances of local slaves.

In its role as a EtherNet/IP adapter, the module initiates no messages. Instead, it responds to:

- implicit messaging requests from a scanner device in the network, and
- explicit messaging requests—directed to the communication module's assembly object (*see page 247*)—from other devices on the network

**NOTE:** If no local slave instance is enabled, the communication module can respond to explicit messaging requests directed at its CIP objects (*see page 243*) other than the assembly object.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Introducing the Local Slave	111
Configuring a Local Slave	113
Local Slave Inputs and Outputs	118

## Introducing the Local Slave

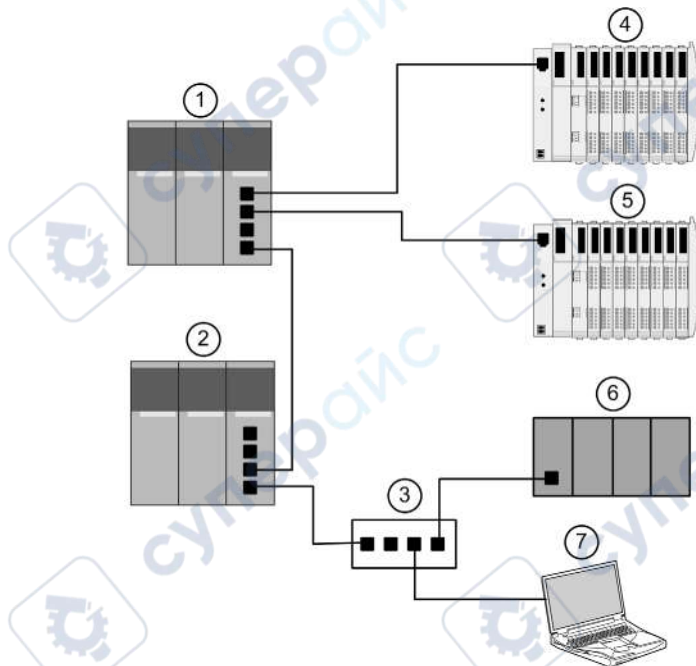
### Local Slave Networking Example

The Ethernet communication module supports up to three instances of the local slave functionality. The local slave functionality allows other scanners on the network to read from, and write to, the Ethernet communication module using implicit messaging. Each local slave instance can accept one exclusive owner connection and one listen only connection. Through a local slave, a remote scanner can access the communication module's CIP Assembly object (*see page 247*). The local slave function is especially beneficial for peer to peer data exchanges at a repetitive rate.

#### NOTE:

- The Ethernet communication module can provide three local slave adapter instances, while simultaneously performing as a scanner. These roles are not mutually exclusive.
- The local slave is exclusively an EtherNet/IP functionality

In this example, the local slave instance is part of the following topology:



The sample configuration, above, includes the following devices:

- A primary PLC (1) incorporating the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module with one local slave instance enabled. The PLC scans I/O data from remote devices (4 and 5)
- A secondary PLC (2) that “listens” to the scan of the primary PLC’s local slave by the third-party PLC (6)
- A managed Ethernet switch (3)
- An Advantys STB island (4), with an STB NIC 2212 EtherNet/IP network interface module plus 8 I/O modules
- An Advantys STB island (5), with an STB NIP 2212 Modbus TCP network interface module plus 8 I/O modules
- A third party scanner (6)—which lacks adapter capability, and therefore cannot itself be scanned by the primary PLC (1)—that:
  - collects data from other sources (not part of this network)
  - writes data to inputs of the primary PLC’s local slave
  - scans the primary PLC’s local slave’s output data via an exclusive owner connection
- A PC running the following software:
  - Control Expert
  - the Control Expert Configuration Tool
  - Advantys Configuration Software

**NOTE:**

- Because the third party scanner (6) and the secondary scanner (2) are both receiving the same data produced by the local slave, configure the requested packet interval (RPI) setting of the third party scanner’s exclusive owner connection and the secondary scanner’s listen only connection to the same setting.
- By enabling a local slave on the primary PLC (1):
  - PLC (1) allows the third party PLC (6) to write to it at a repetitive rate, even if PLC (6) is not capable of acting as an adapter.
  - the secondary PLC (2) is able to scan the primary PLC (1) at a repetitive rate, rather than through application intensive explicit messaging.

The topics in this section show you how to use Control Expert software installed in the PC (7, above) to configure a local slave, and to create input and output items in support of the peer-to-peer data transfers between and among scanners.

## Configuring a Local Slave

### Description

The Ethernet communication module presents three identical **Local Slave** configuration pages. Use each page to configure a separate local slave instance. Create a local slave instance by:

- enabling and naming the local slave
- specifying the size of local slave input and output assemblies
- configuring local slave variable names

To display this page, select one of the three **Local Slave** nodes in the navigation tree located on the left side of the **Device Editor**.

**NOTE:** Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* ([see page 57](#)) for instructions on how to edit properties.

The following steps describe a sample configuration for **Local Slave 1**. Your configuration may be different.

### Configuration Example: Local Slave 1

In the sample network configuration (*see Quantum using EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet Communication Module, User Manual*), the application in the third-party PLC produces data, which is available in the PLC Ethernet communication module as inputs. In this example, the third-party device produces the following information:

- production totals for manufacturing line A
- production totals for manufacturing line B
- the number of production interruption events for line A
- the number of production interruption events for line B

Any information that needs to be passed to the third-party device—for example, confirmation that data from the third-party device has been received by the PLC—is accessible in the third-party device as input data. In this example, the third-party device is programmed to scan Local Slave 1 for this confirmation.

When configuring inputs and outputs in both the local slave and the third-party PLC, associate inputs and outputs as follows:

Associate these local slave items:	With these third-party PLC items:
Outputs (T to O)—assembly instance 101	Inputs—assembly instance 101
Inputs (O to T)—assembly instance 102	Outputs—assembly instance 102

The configured **Local Slave** page looks like this:

The screenshot shows a configuration dialog box for a Local Slave. It is organized into three main sections:

- Properties:**
  - Number: 000 (dropdown)
  - Active Configuration: Enabled (dropdown)
  - Comment: (text area)
  - Connection Bit: 0 (text box)
- Assembly:**
  - Outputs (T to O): 101 (text box)
  - Outputs (T to O) Size: 2 (text box) (1-509) Bytes
  - Inputs (O to T): 102 (text box)
  - Inputs (O to T) Size: 8 (text box) (1-505) Bytes
  - Configuration: 103 (text box)
  - Configuration Size: 0 (text box) (0-200) Words
- IO Structure Name:**
  - Default Name (button)
  - Input:**
    - Structure Name: T\_NOC01\_LS1\_IN (text box)
    - Variable Name: NOC01\_LS1\_IN (text box)
  - Output:**
    - Structure Name: T\_NOC01\_LS1\_OUT (text box)
    - Variable Name: NOC01\_LS1\_OUT (text box)

At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: OK, Cancel, and Apply.

## Enabling and Naming the Local Slave

Use the **Properties** section of the **Local Slave** page to enable (or disable) and identify the local slave.

Setting	Description
Number	The unique number—or identifier—assigned to the device. By default, Control Expert assigns: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 000 = local slave 1</li> <li>• 001 = local slave 2</li> <li>• 002 = local slave 3</li> </ul> In this example, accept the default <b>000</b> .
Active Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled</b> activates the local slave.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled</b> de-activates the local slave, but retains the current local slave settings.</li> </ul> In this example, select <b>Enabled</b> .
Comment	An optional free text comment field up to 80 characters maximum. In this example, leave blank.
Connection bit	Auto-generated integer (0..127) indicating the offset of the connection's: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• health bit, located in the module's input area</li> <li>• control bit, located in the module's output area</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> This setting is auto-generated after the local slave settings are input and the network configuration is saved.

## Configuring the Size of Local Slave Input and Output Assemblies

Use the **Assemblies** section of the **Local Slave** page to configure the size of the local slave inputs and outputs. The assembly numbers are non-editable, and are assigned by Control Expert as follows:

Assembly number	Local slave number	Used for connection
101	1	T->O <sup>1</sup>
102	1	O->T Exclusive Owner
103	1	Configuration
199	1	O->T Listen Only
111	2	T->O
112	2	O->T Exclusive Owner
113	2	Configuration
200	2	O->T Listen Only
1. In this table: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• O indicates the originator—or scanner—device</li> <li>• T indicates the target—or adapter—device</li> </ul>		

Assembly number	Local slave number	Used for connection
121	3	T->O
122	3	O->T Exclusive Owner
123	3	Configuration
201	3	O->T Listen Only

1. In this table:

- O indicates the originator—or scanner—device
- T indicates the target—or adapter—device

The **Local Slave** assembly settings include:

Setting	Description
Outputs (T->O)	A read-only value (see table, above). In this example, <b>101</b> .
Outputs (T->O) Size	The maximum size—in bytes—reserved for local slave outputs. An integer from 1 to 509. In this example, only two output bytes are used: type in <b>2</b> .
Inputs (O->T)	A read-only value (see table, above). In this example, <b>102</b> .
Inputs (O->T) Size	The maximum size—in bytes—reserved for local slave inputs. An integer from 0 to 505. In this example, only eight input bytes are used: type in <b>8</b> .
Configuration	A read-only value (see table, above). In this example, <b>103</b> .
Configuration Size	A read-only value set to <b>0</b> .

**NOTE:** When using explicit messaging to read the Ethernet communication module's assembly object, you need to allocate sufficient room for the response, because the size of the response will equal the sum of:

the assembly size + Reply service (1 byte) + General Status (1 byte)

## Configuring Local Slave I/O Variable Names

Each input and output that Control Expert creates for your application has both a non-editable structure name (used by Control Expert to internally identify input and output items) and an editable variable name.

Use the **I/O Structure Name** section of the **Local Slave** page to:

- view and edit local slave input and output variable names
- view non-editable local slave structure names

The following property settings have been made in this example:

Setting	Description
Input:	
Structure Name	<p>The read-only name for input structures. By default, it is the concatenation of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the prefix T_</li> <li>• the alias device name—in this case NOC01</li> <li>• the device number—in this case 01</li> <li>• the suffix _IN</li> </ul> <p>In this case, the default would be T_NOC01_01_IN.</p>
Variable Name	<p>The editable base name for input variables. By default, it is the concatenation of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the alias device name—in this case NOC01</li> <li>• the device number—in this case 01</li> <li>• the suffix _IN</li> </ul> <p>In this case, the default would be NOC01_01_IN. For this example, accept the default variable name.</p>
Output:	
Structure Name	<p>The read-only name for output structures. By default, it is the concatenation of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the prefix T_</li> <li>• the alias device name—in this case NOC01</li> <li>• the device number—in this case 01</li> <li>• the suffix _OUT</li> </ul> <p>In this case, the default would be T_NOC01_01_OUT.</p>
Variable Name	<p>The editable base name for output variables. By default, it is the concatenation of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the alias device name—in this case NOC01</li> <li>• the device number—in this case 01</li> <li>• the suffix _OUT</li> </ul> <p>In this case, the default would be NOC01_01_OUT. For this example, accept the default variable name.</p>

If you have edited one or more variable names, you can restore the default variable names by clicking on the **Default Name** button.



## Local Slave Inputs and Outputs

### Introduction

The Ethernet communication module serves as an adapter when the **Active Configuration** field is set to **Enabled** in the configuration window for one (or more) of the module's local slave nodes.

When a local slave instance of an Ethernet communication module is enabled, the designated memory location allocated to that instance is exposed to, and can be accessed by, other devices.

The I/O data exchange, between the remote device and the local slave, is configured as part of the remote device's configuration settings.

### Configuring the I/O Items

You can configure input and output items in groups of 1 or more single bits, 8-bit bytes, 16-bit words, 32-bit dwords, or 32-bit IEEE floating values. The number of items you create depends upon the data type and size of each item.

The process for creating and defining I/O items for the local slave is the same as for any adapter class device, and depends upon the type of items you wish to create.

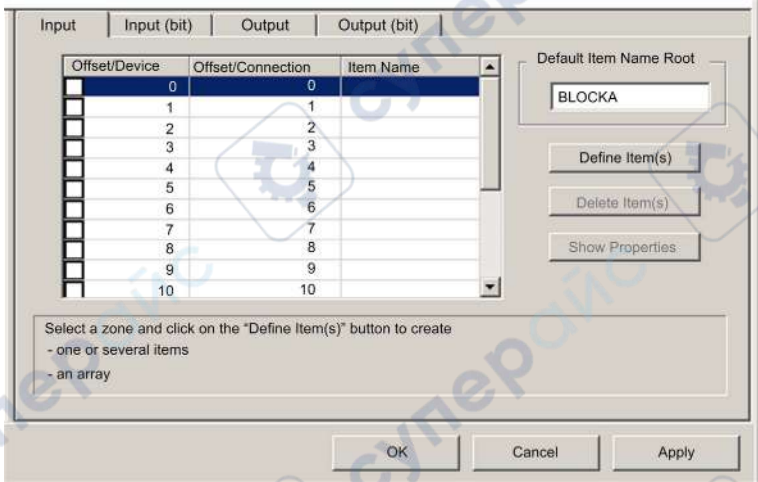
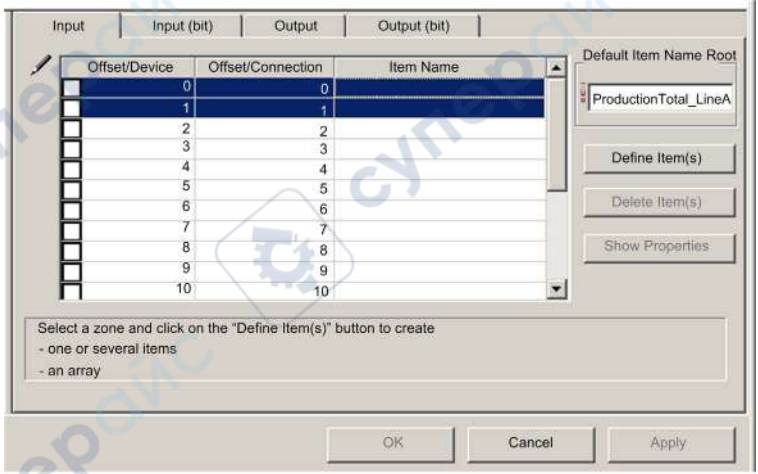
In support of the ongoing configuration example, the following items are required:

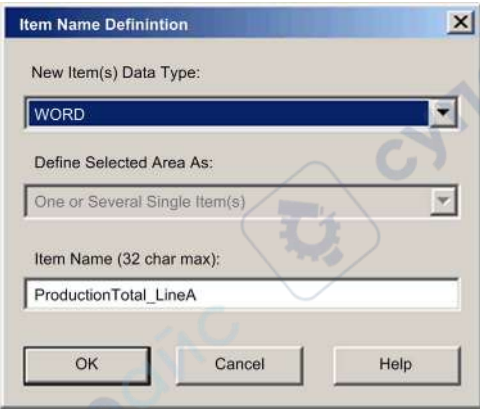
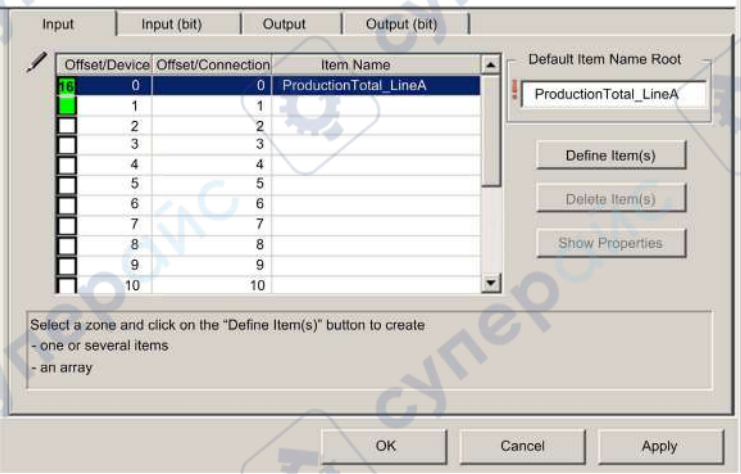
- 4 input word items
- 1 output word item

**NOTE:** The items created, below, are designed to hold data received from, or sent to, the third-party scanner. In addition to these items, it is necessary to include logic in the application programs in which the Ethernet communication module and the third-party scanner, respectively, are included. Writing this code is beyond the scope of this example.

## Creating Input Word Items

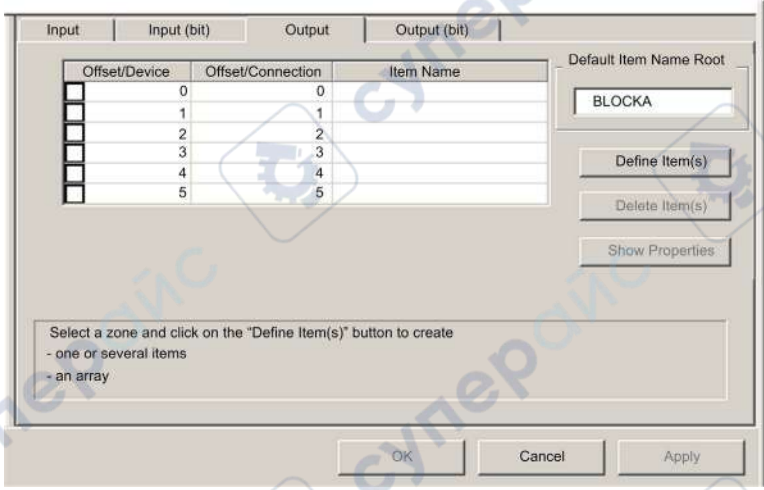
To create input items for local slave 01:

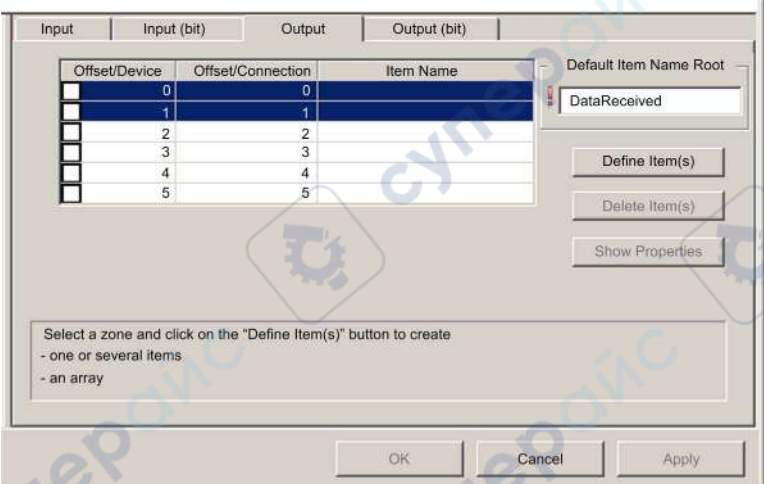
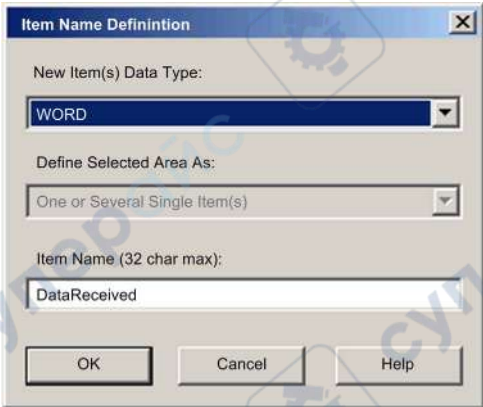
Step	Action
1	<p>Select the <b>Input</b> tab to open that page:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> In this example, each row represents a byte. Because the items you create will be a 16-bit words, each item consists of 2 rows.</p>
2	<p>In the <b>Default Item Name Root</b> input box type: <b>ProductionTotal_LineA</b>.</p>
3	<p>Starting at the beginning of the table, select the first two rows: 0 and 1:</p> 

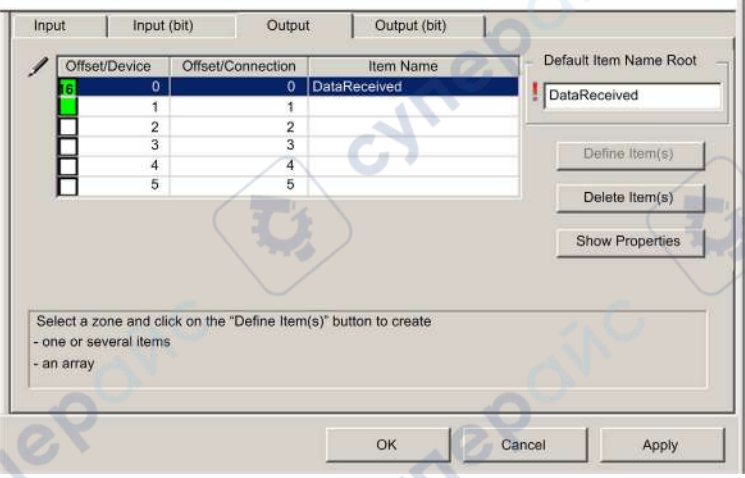
Step	Action
4	<p>Click the <b>Define Item(s)</b> button.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> The <b>Item Name Definition</b> dialog opens:</p> 
5	<p>Select <b>WORD</b> as the <b>New Item(s) Data Type</b>, then click <b>OK</b>.</p> <p><b>Result:</b> A new item is created:</p> 
6	<p>Click <b>Apply</b> to save the new items, and leave the page open.</p>
7	<p>Repeat steps 2 - 6 for each new word item you need to create. In this example, that includes the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Rows 2-3, Default Items Name Root: ProductionTotal_LineB</li> <li>● Rows 4-5: Default Items Name Root: Events_LineA</li> <li>● Rows 6-7: Default Items Name Root: Events_LineB</li> </ul>
8	<p>Create output words.</p>

## Creating Output Word Items

To create output items for local slave 01:

Step	Action
1	<p>Click the <b>Output</b> tab to open the following page:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> In this example, each row represents a byte. Because the only item you will create is a 16-bit word, you will select 2 rows.</p>
2	In the <b>Default Item Name Root</b> input box type: <b>DataReceived</b> .

Step	Action
3	<p>Starting at the beginning of the table, select the first 2 rows, 0 and 1:</p>  <p>Select a zone and click on the "Define Item(s)" button to create</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- one or several items</li> <li>- an array</li> </ul>
4	<p>Click the <b>Define Item(s)</b> button.  <b>Result:</b> The <b>Item Name Definition</b> dialog opens:</p> 

Step	Action
5	<p>Select <b>WORD</b> as the <b>New Item(s) Data Type</b>, then click <b>OK</b>.  <b>Result:</b> A new item is created:</p> 
6	Click <b>OK</b> to close the <b>Items</b> window.
7	Select <b>File</b> → <b>Save</b> to save your edits.

### Using Local Slave Inputs and Outputs

The inputs and outputs created, above, are used as follows:

- The third-party device updates values of the following variables:
  - ProductionTotal\_LineA
  - ProductionTotal\_LineB
  - Events\_LineA
  - Events\_LineB
- The Ethernet communication module updates value of the DataReceived variable in the third-party device at the configured RPI.

---

# Chapter 3

## Adding Devices to an Ethernet Network

---

### Overview

This chapter presents examples of how to add devices to, and how to configure these device for operations on, your Ethernet network.

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Topic	Page
3.1	Hardware Catalog	126
3.2	Adding an EtherNet/IP Device to the Network	135
3.3	Adding a Modbus TCP Device to the Network	170

## Section 3.1

### Hardware Catalog

#### Overview

Control Expert includes a collection of modules and devices—called the **Hardware Catalog**—that you can add to a Control Expert project. EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP devices are located in the hardware catalog's **DTM Catalog** page. Each device in the catalog is represented by a DTM that defines the parameters of the module or device.

Not every device on the market today offer device-specific DTMs. Some devices are instead defined by a device-specific EDS file. Control Expert displays each EDS file in the form of a DTM. In this way, you can use Control Expert to configure these Ethernet/IP devices—defined by an EDS file—in the same way you would configure a DTM-defined device.

Other devices lack both a DTM and an EDS file. You can configure these devices by using a Generic DTM that is included in the **DTM Catalog** page.

This section address the topics:

- how to add a DTM to the catalog
- how to add an EDS file to the catalog
- how to update the catalog
- how to remove an EDS file from the catalog

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Adding a DTM to the Control Expert Hardware Catalog	127
Add an EDS File to the Control Expert Hardware Catalog	128
Updating the Control Expert Hardware Catalog	131
Remove an EDS File from the Control Expert Hardware Catalog	133



## Adding a DTM to the Control Expert Hardware Catalog

### A Manufacturer Defined Process

Before you can add a DTM to the Control Expert **Hardware Catalog**, install it on the host PC—the same PC that is running Control Expert—by means of an installation process defined by the device manufacturer.

Consult your device documentation, provided by the device manufacturer, for information describing how to install a device DTM on your PC.

For instructions on how to install the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module, refer to the topic Installing Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool Software (*see page 26*).

**NOTE:** After you successfully install a device DTM on your PC, update the Control Expert Hardware Catalog (*see page 131*) so the new DTM is visible in the catalog and available to be added to a Control Expert project.

## Add an EDS File to the Control Expert Hardware Catalog

### Overview

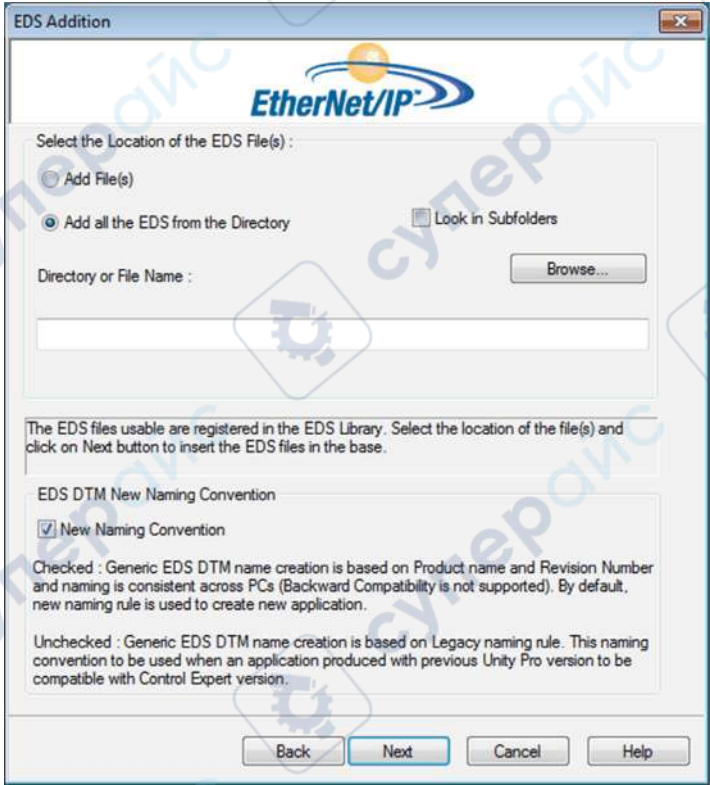
Control Expert includes a wizard you can use to add one or more EDS files to the Control Expert **Hardware Catalog**. The wizard presents a series of instruction screens that:




- simplify the process of adding EDS files to the catalog, and
- provide a redundancy check in case you attempt to add duplicate EDS files to the catalog

**NOTE:** The Control Expert **Hardware Catalog** displays a partial collection of DTMs and EDS files registered with the ODVA. This library includes DTMs and EDS files for products not manufactured or sold by Schneider Electric. The non-Schneider Electric EDS files are identified by vendor in the catalog. Please contact the identified device's manufacturer for inquiries regarding the corresponding non-Schneider Electric EDS files.

## Adding EDS Files

To add one or more EDS files to the library:

Step	Action
1	If the <b>DTM Browser</b> is not already open, in the Control Expert main menu select <b>Tools → DTM Browser</b> .
2	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select a communication module, then click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens.
3	In the pop-up menu, select <b>Device menu → Add EDS to library</b> . The introductory page of the wizard opens.
4	Click <b>Next</b> . Page 2 of the wizard opens:
	
5	In the <b>Select the Location of the EDS File(s)</b> section, select either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Add File(s)</b>, to add one or more EDS files you will individually select, or</li> <li>● <b>Add all the EDS from the Directory</b>, to add all files from a folder you will select. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Select <b>Look in Subfolders</b> to also add EDS files in subfolders beneath the folder you selected.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

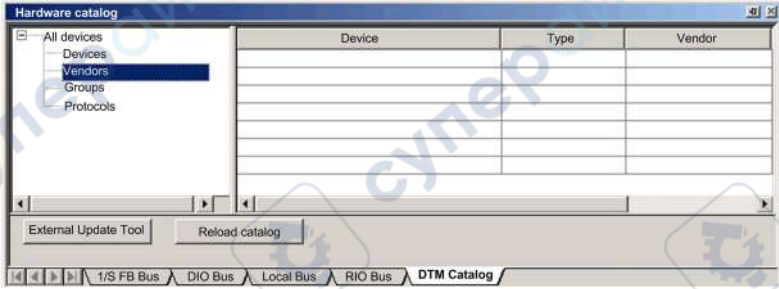
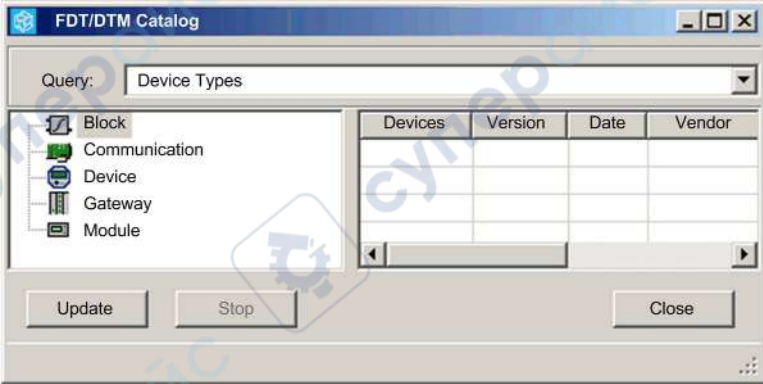
Step	Action
6	Click the <b>Browse</b> button. The <b>Open</b> dialog opens.
7	Use the <b>Open</b> dialog to navigate to and select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● one or more EDS files, or</li> <li>● a folder containing EDS files</li> </ul>
8	After you have made your selections, click <b>Open</b> . The dialog closes and your selection appears in the <b>Directory or File Name</b> field.
9	Choose the naming convention rule for the EDS DTM name creation. The new naming convention is based on Model Name / Product Name and Revision. A random character is automatically suffixed when Model Name / Product Name and Revision of an EDS file of the library are identical. The new naming convention is irrespective of the order in which EDS files are added to device library. By default, the <b>New Naming Convention</b> check box is selected and the new naming rule applies. <b>NOTE:</b> To keep backward compatibility with Control Expert versions, unchecked the <b>New Naming Convention</b> check box and the naming rule is based on Model Name / Product Name.
10	Click <b>Next</b> . The wizard compares the selected EDS files against existing files in the library.
11	(Conditional) If one or more selected EDS files is a duplicate, a <b>File Already Exists</b> message opens. <b>Close</b> the message.
12	Page 3 of the wizard opens indicating the Status of each device you attempted to add: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● a green check mark  indicates the EDS file can be added</li> <li>● a blue informational icon  indicates a redundant file</li> <li>● a red exclamation point  indicates an invalid EDS file</li> </ul> (Optional) Select a file in the list, then click <b>View Selected File</b> to open it.
13	Click <b>Next</b> to add the non-duplicate files. Page 4 of the wizard opens, indicating the action is complete.
14	Click <b>Finish</b> to close the wizard.
15	The next step is to update the Control Expert <b>Hardware Catalog</b> ( <i>see page 131</i> ), so that the newly added device is available for inclusion in a Control Expert project.

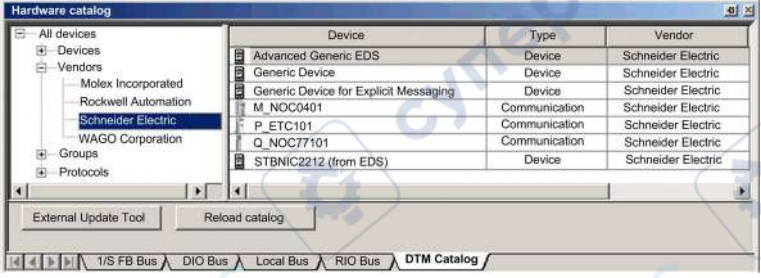
## Updating the Control Expert Hardware Catalog

### Updating Hardware Catalog

After you have followed the manufacturer's instructions and installed a module or device DTM on your PC, the next step is to update the Control Expert **Hardware Catalog**. Updating the **Hardware Catalog** makes the new Ethernet module or device available for addition to your Control Expert application.

To update the **Hardware Catalog**:

Step	Action
1	In the Control Expert main menu, select <b>Tools</b> → <b>Hardware Catalog</b> . The <b>Hardware Catalog</b> window opens.
2	In the <b>Hardware Catalog</b> window, select the <b>DTM Catalog</b> tab to display a module and device DTM list. At the time of initial software installation, the catalog displays no devices: 
3	Click the <b>External Update Tool</b> button. The <b>FDT/DTM Catalog</b> window opens: 
4	In the <b>FDT/DTM Catalog</b> window, click <b>Update</b> . The window refreshes itself, as indicated by the progress bar in the lower right corner of the window.

Step	Action																								
5	After the update has finished, click <b>Close</b> . The <b>FDT/DTM Catalog</b> window closes and the <b>Hardware Catalog</b> displays.																								
6	In the <b>Hardware Catalog</b> window, click <b>Reload catalog</b> to refresh the DTM list.  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Hardware catalog' window with a tree view on the left and a table of devices on the right. The tree view includes 'All devices', 'Devices', 'Vendors' (with sub-items: Moxlec Incorporated, Rockwell Automation, Schneider Electric, WAGO Corporation), 'Groups', and 'Protocols'. The table lists the following devices:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Device</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Vendor</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Advanced Generic EDS</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Generic Device</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Generic Device for Explicit Messaging</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> </tr> <tr> <td>M_NOC0401</td> <td>Communication</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> </tr> <tr> <td>P_ETC101</td> <td>Communication</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Q_NOC77101</td> <td>Communication</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STBNIC2212 (from EDS)</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>At the bottom of the window, there are buttons for 'External Update Tool' and 'Reload catalog'. The status bar at the bottom shows '1/S FB Bus', 'DIO Bus', 'Local Bus', 'RIO Bus', and 'DTM Catalog'.</p>	Device	Type	Vendor	Advanced Generic EDS	Device	Schneider Electric	Generic Device	Device	Schneider Electric	Generic Device for Explicit Messaging	Device	Schneider Electric	M_NOC0401	Communication	Schneider Electric	P_ETC101	Communication	Schneider Electric	Q_NOC77101	Communication	Schneider Electric	STBNIC2212 (from EDS)	Device	Schneider Electric
Device	Type	Vendor																							
Advanced Generic EDS	Device	Schneider Electric																							
Generic Device	Device	Schneider Electric																							
Generic Device for Explicit Messaging	Device	Schneider Electric																							
M_NOC0401	Communication	Schneider Electric																							
P_ETC101	Communication	Schneider Electric																							
Q_NOC77101	Communication	Schneider Electric																							
STBNIC2212 (from EDS)	Device	Schneider Electric																							

## Remove an EDS File from the Control Expert Hardware Catalog

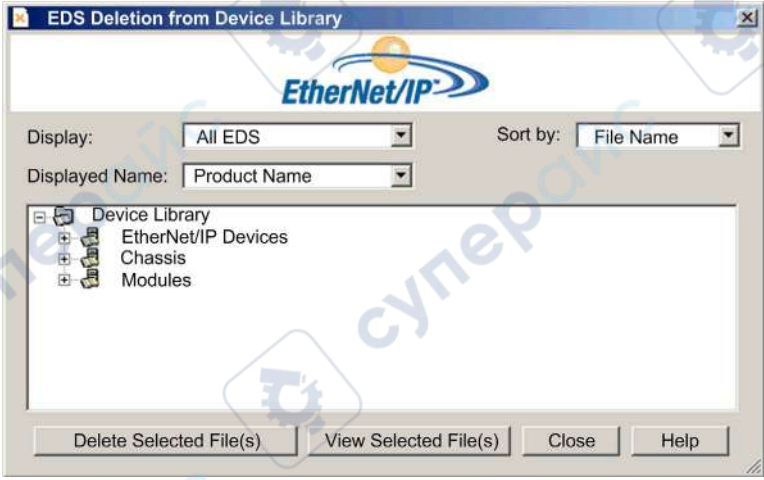
### Overview

You can remove a module or device from the list of available devices in the Control Expert **Hardware Catalog** by removing its EDS file. When you remove an EDS file from the library, the device or module is no longer displayed by Control Expert in the **DTM Catalog** page of the **Hardware Catalog** window.

However, removing an EDS file from the library does not delete the file. Instead, the EDS file remains in its stored location and can again be added to the catalog (*see page 128*) at a future time.

### Removing an EDS File from the Catalog

To remove an EDS file from the catalog:

Step	Action
1	If the <b>DTM Browser</b> is not already open, in the Control Expert main menu select <b>Tools → DTM Browser</b> .
2	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select a communication module, then click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens.
3	In the pop-up menu, select <b>Device menu → Remove EDS from library</b> . The following window opens: 

Step	Action						
4	Use the selection lists in the heading of this window to specify how EDS files will be displayed:						
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Display</b></td> <td>Filters the list of displayed EDS files; select:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● All EDS (no filtering)</li> <li>● Only Devices</li> <li>● Only Chassis</li> <li>● Only Modules</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Sort by</b></td> <td>Sorts the list of displayed EDS files; select:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● File Name</li> <li>● Manufacturer</li> <li>● Category</li> <li>● Device Name</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Displayed Name</b></td> <td>The description displayed for each device; select:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Catalog Name</li> <li>● Product Name</li> </ul> </td> </tr> </table>	<b>Display</b>	Filters the list of displayed EDS files; select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● All EDS (no filtering)</li> <li>● Only Devices</li> <li>● Only Chassis</li> <li>● Only Modules</li> </ul>	<b>Sort by</b>	Sorts the list of displayed EDS files; select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● File Name</li> <li>● Manufacturer</li> <li>● Category</li> <li>● Device Name</li> </ul>	<b>Displayed Name</b>	The description displayed for each device; select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Catalog Name</li> <li>● Product Name</li> </ul>
<b>Display</b>	Filters the list of displayed EDS files; select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● All EDS (no filtering)</li> <li>● Only Devices</li> <li>● Only Chassis</li> <li>● Only Modules</li> </ul>						
<b>Sort by</b>	Sorts the list of displayed EDS files; select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● File Name</li> <li>● Manufacturer</li> <li>● Category</li> <li>● Device Name</li> </ul>						
<b>Displayed Name</b>	The description displayed for each device; select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Catalog Name</li> <li>● Product Name</li> </ul>						
5	In the <b>Device Library</b> tree control, navigate to and select the EDS file you want to remove.						
6	(Optional) Click the <b>View Selected File</b> button to display the read-only contents of the selected EDS file.						
7	Click the <b>Delete Selected File</b> button. A message box opens.						
8	Click <b>Yes</b> to remove the selected EDS file from the list.						
9	When you have finished removing EDS files, click <b>Close</b> .						
10	The next step is to update the <b>Hardware Catalog</b> ( <a href="#">see page 131</a> ).						



## Section 3.2

### Adding an EtherNet/IP Device to the Network

#### Overview

This section extends the sample Control Expert application, by describing how to:

- add an STB NIC 2212 EtherNet/IP network interface module to your Control Expert application
- configure the STB NIC 2212 module
- configure EtherNet/IP connections linking the BMX NOC 0401 communication module and the STB NIC 2212 network interface module
- configure I/O items for the Advantys Island

**NOTE:** The instructions in this chapter describe a single, specific device configuration example. Refer to the Control Expert help files for additional information about alternative configuration choices.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Setting Up Your Network	136
Adding an STB NIC 2212 Remote Device	138
Configuring STB NIC 2212 Properties	140
Configuring EtherNet/IP Connections	146
Connecting to the Advantys STB Island	152
Configuring I/O Items	156

## Setting Up Your Network

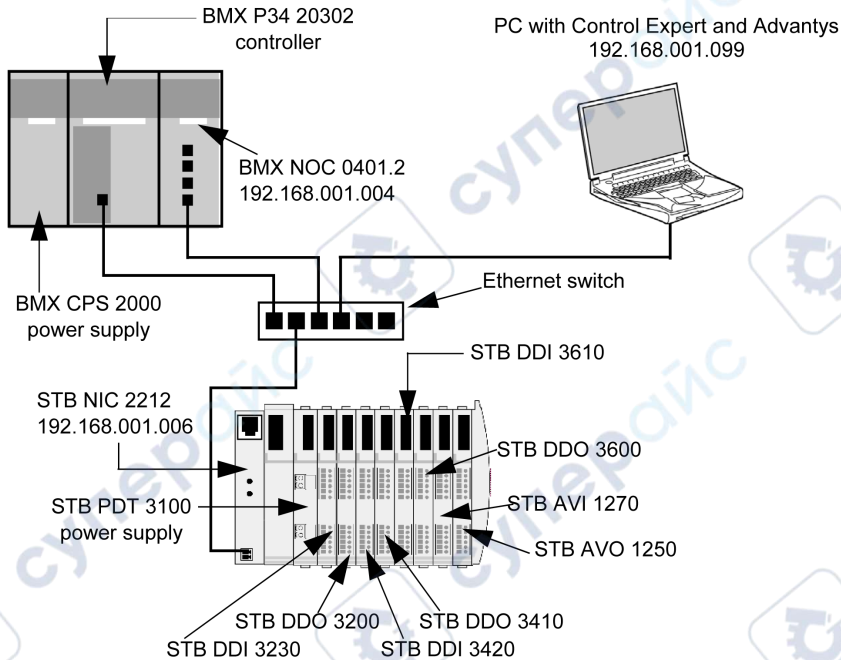
### Overview

This sample network includes the following hardware and software:

- a controller rack with:
  - BMX CPS 2000, 100/240 VAC power supply
  - BMX P34 20302 controller
  - BMX NOC 0401.2 Ethernet communication module
- a remote STB Advantys island with:
  - STB NIC 2212 EtherNet/IP network interface module
  - STB PDT 3100 power distribution module
  - STB DDI 3230 2 pt digital input module
  - STB DDO 3200 2 pt digital output module
  - STB DDI 3420 4 pt digital input module
  - STB DDO 3410 4 pt digital output module
  - STB DDI 3610 6 pt digital input module
  - STB DDO 3600 6 pt digital output module
  - STB AVI 1270 2 pt analog input module
  - STB AVO 1250 2 pt analog output module
- a PC running both Unity Pro (version 5.0 or higher) and Advantys configuration software (version 5.0 or higher)  
**NOTE:** Unity Pro is the former name of Control Expert for version 13.1 or earlier.
- an Ethernet managed switch that is connected to the both the controller and island by means of twisted pair Ethernet cable and RJ45 connectors.

## Network Topology

The Ethernet network devices used in this configuration include the following:



To re-create this example:

- use the IP addresses for your own configuration's:
  - PC
  - BMX NOC 0401.2 Ethernet communication module
  - STB NIC 2212 network interface module
- check wiring

**NOTE:** Control Expert software running in the PC is used to configure the BMX P34 20302 controller. In this example, the PC is indirectly wired to the CPU's Ethernet port via the Ethernet switch. Alternatively, you could bypass the switch and directly wire the PC to either the CPU's Modbus or USB ports.

## Adding an STB NIC 2212 Remote Device

### Overview

You can use the Control Expert device library to add a remote device—in this example the STB NIC 2212 module—to your project. Only a remote device that is part of your Control Expert device library can be added to your project. Refer to the topic describing the Add EDS File Wizard (*see page 128*) for instructions on how to add a device EDS file to the device library.

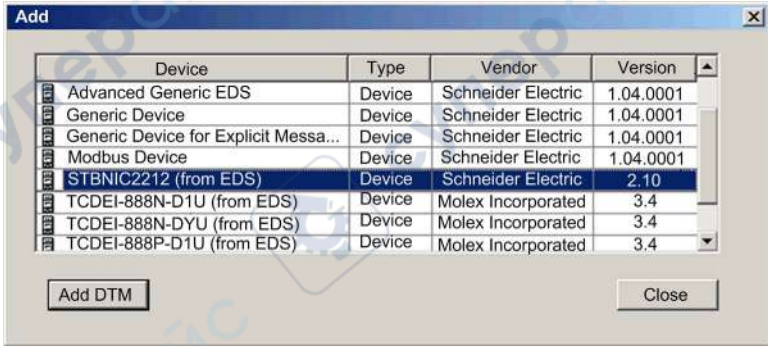
Alternatively, with a remote device already added to your device library, you can use automatic device discovery to populate your project. Perform automatic device discovery by using the **Field bus discovery** command with a communication module selected in the **DTM Browser**.

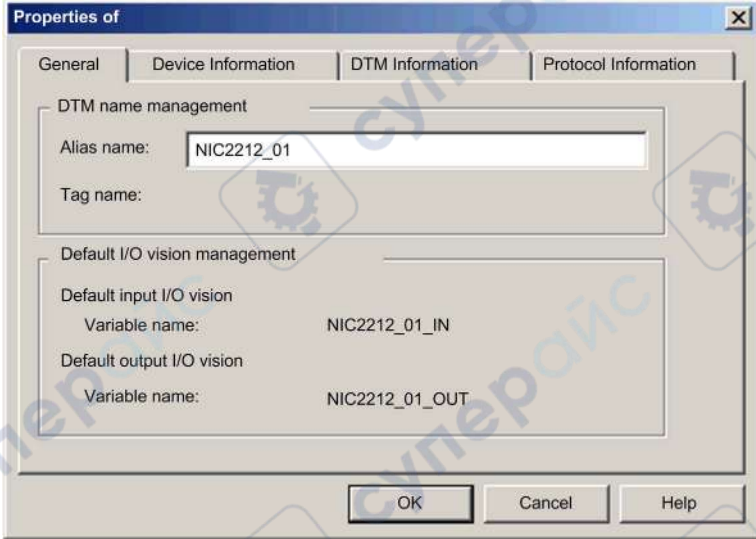
In either case, you need to update the list of available modules and devices, as follows:

Step	Action
1	In the Control Expert main menu, select <b>Tools</b> → <b>Hardware Catalog</b> to display that window.
2	In the <b>Hardware Catalog</b> window, click on the <b>DTM Catalog</b> tab to open that page.
2	In the <b>DTM Catalog</b> page, click <b>Reload catalog</b> . The list of available devices, as displayed both in the <b>DTM Catalog</b> page and the <b>Add</b> dialog, is updated and reflects any device additions or deletions.

### Adding an STB NIC 2212 Remote Device

To add the STB NIC 2212 to your project, follow these steps:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the Ethernet communication module node, and then click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens.
2	In the pop-up menu, select <b>Add...</b> The following dialog opens: 
3	In the <b>Add</b> dialog, select the <b>STBNIC2212</b> , then click <b>Add DTM</b> . The <b>Properties</b> window for the STB NIC 2212 network interface module opens.

Step	Action
4	<p>In the <b>General</b> page of the <b>Properties</b> window, edit the default <b>Alias name</b>, because retaining the original default name can result in duplicate module names. In this example, type in the name <b>NIC2212_01</b>:</p>  <p>When you edit the <b>Alias name</b>, Control Expert applies it as the base for both structure and variable names.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> No additional editing needs to be performed in the pages of this window. Except for the <b>Alias name</b> field, parameters are read-only.</p>
5	Click <b>OK</b> . Control Expert adds the new STB NIC 2212 network interface module to the <b>DTM Browser</b> , beneath the communication module.
6	Refer to the topic <i>Configuring Properties in the Device Editor</i> ( <a href="#">see page 57</a> ) for instructions on how to save your configuration edits.

The next step is to configure the device you have just added to the project.

## Configuring STB NIC 2212 Properties

### Overview

Use the pages of the **Device Editor** to view and edit settings for a remote device. Before you can edit the device settings, disconnect the DTM from the remote device (*see page 49*).

To display the DTM settings for a remote device, select the device name, which is found under the **Device List** node in the left pane of the **Device Editor**.

For the purposes of this example, which configures an STB NIC 2212 network interface module, select the node named **NIC2212 01**. The **Device Editor** displays the following pages:

- Properties
- Address Setting

**NOTE:** Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* (*see page 57*) for instructions on how to edit properties.

### Configuring the Properties Page

The **Properties** page for an STB NIC 2212 network interface module looks like this:

The screenshot shows a configuration window with two tabs: "Properties" and "Address Setting". The "Properties" tab is active. It contains the following fields and controls:

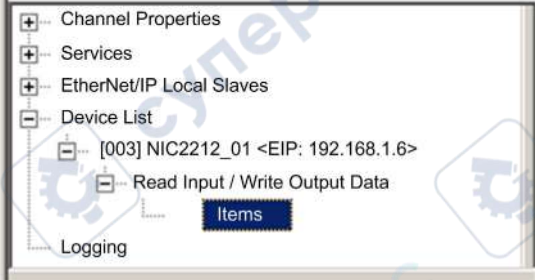
- Properties**
  - Number: 003 (dropdown)
  - Active Configuration: Enabled (dropdown)
  - Comment: (text area)
- IO Structure Name**
  - Default Name (button)
  - Input**
    - Structure Name: T\_NIC2212\_01\_IN
    - Variable Name: NIC2212\_01\_IN
  - Output**
    - Structure Name: T\_NIC2212\_01\_OUT
    - Variable Name: NIC2212\_01\_OUT
- Items Management**
  - Import Mode: Manual (dropdown)
  - Reimport Items (button)

At the bottom of the window are three buttons: OK, Cancel, and Apply.

The following settings are used in this sample configuration. Use settings that are appropriate for your actual application:

Step	Action					
1	In the <b>Properties</b> section of the page, edit the following:					
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Number</td> <td>The relative position of the device in the list, from 0 to 127. For this example, accept the default of <b>003</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Active Configuration</td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled:</b> adds this device to the Control Expert project configuration</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> removes this device from the Control Expert project configuration</li> </ul>                     Accept the default setting of <b>Enabled</b>.                 </td> </tr> </table>	Number	The relative position of the device in the list, from 0 to 127. For this example, accept the default of <b>003</b> .	Active Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled:</b> adds this device to the Control Expert project configuration</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> removes this device from the Control Expert project configuration</li> </ul> Accept the default setting of <b>Enabled</b> .	
	Number	The relative position of the device in the list, from 0 to 127. For this example, accept the default of <b>003</b> .				
Active Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled:</b> adds this device to the Control Expert project configuration</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> removes this device from the Control Expert project configuration</li> </ul> Accept the default setting of <b>Enabled</b> .					
2	In the <b>IO Structure Name</b> section of the page, edit the following:					
	Input area:					
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Structure Name</td> <td>(Read-only) Control Expert automatically assigns a structure name based on the variable name, in this case <b>T_NIC2212_01_IN</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Variable Name</td> <td>Accept the auto-generated input variable name (based on the alias name <i>(see page 138)</i>): <b>NIC2212_01_IN</b>.</td> </tr> </table>	Structure Name	(Read-only) Control Expert automatically assigns a structure name based on the variable name, in this case <b>T_NIC2212_01_IN</b> .	Variable Name	Accept the auto-generated input variable name (based on the alias name <i>(see page 138)</i> ): <b>NIC2212_01_IN</b> .	
	Structure Name	(Read-only) Control Expert automatically assigns a structure name based on the variable name, in this case <b>T_NIC2212_01_IN</b> .				
	Variable Name	Accept the auto-generated input variable name (based on the alias name <i>(see page 138)</i> ): <b>NIC2212_01_IN</b> .				
	Output area:					
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Structure Name</td> <td>(Read-only) Control Expert automatically assigns a structure name based on the variable name, in this case <b>T_NIC2212_01_OUT</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Variable Name</td> <td>Accept the auto-generated output variable name (based on the alias name): <b>NIC2212_01_OUT</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Default Name button</td> <td>Restores the default variable and structure names. For this example, custom names are used instead of the default names.</td> </tr> </table>	Structure Name	(Read-only) Control Expert automatically assigns a structure name based on the variable name, in this case <b>T_NIC2212_01_OUT</b> .	Variable Name	Accept the auto-generated output variable name (based on the alias name): <b>NIC2212_01_OUT</b> .	Default Name button
Structure Name	(Read-only) Control Expert automatically assigns a structure name based on the variable name, in this case <b>T_NIC2212_01_OUT</b> .					
Variable Name	Accept the auto-generated output variable name (based on the alias name): <b>NIC2212_01_OUT</b> .					
Default Name button	Restores the default variable and structure names. For this example, custom names are used instead of the default names.					



Step	Action	
3	<p>In the Items Management section of the page, edit the following:</p> <p>Import mode</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Automatic:</b> Select this if I/O items are pre-defined for the device in its DTM, and will not subsequently be edited. These items are automatically created and added to the configuration, and later updated if the items list if the device DTM changes. These auto-created items cannot be edited in the <b>Device Editor</b>.</li> <li>● <b>Manual:</b> Select this if I/O items will be manually created or edited. If the device DTM pre-defines I/O items, those pre-defined I/O items are automatically created and added to the configuration, and can later be manually edited in the <b>Device Editor</b>. The I/O items list is not affected by changes to the device DTM.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Because the STB NIC 2212 DTM does not contain pre-configured input and output items, select <b>Manual</b>.</li> <li>● To view I/O items, navigate to and select the <b>Items</b> node in the left pane of the <b>Device Editor</b>, as follows:</li> </ul>  <p>The screenshot shows a tree view in the Device Editor. The tree structure is as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Channel Properties</li> <li>Services</li> <li>EtherNet/IP Local Slaves</li> <li>Device List       <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[003] NIC2212_01 &lt;EIP: 192.168.1.6&gt;           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Read Input / Write Output Data               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Items (highlighted)</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>Logging</li> </ul>
	Reimport Items	Imports the I/O items list from the device DTM, overwriting any manual I/O item edits. Enabled only when <b>Import mode</b> is set to <b>Manual</b> .
4	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your edits, and leave the window open for further edits.	

### Configuring the Address Setting Page

Use the **Address Setting** page to enable the DHCP client in the STB NIC 2212 network interface module. When the DHCP client is enabled in the remote device, it will obtain its IP address from the DHCP server in the Ethernet communication module. The **Address Setting** page looks like this:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Address Setting" with two tabs: "Properties" and "Address Setting". The "Address Setting" tab is selected. The dialog contains the following fields and controls:

- Change Address:** A section containing an "IP Address:" field with the value "192 . 168 . 1 . 6".
- Address Server:** A section containing:
  - "DHCP for this device": A dropdown menu set to "Enabled".
  - "Identified by": A dropdown menu set to "Device Name".
  - "Identifier": A text field containing "NIC2212\_01".
- Subnet Mask:** A text field containing "255 . 255 . 255 . 0".
- Gateway:** A text field containing "0 . 0 . 0 . 0".

At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

The following settings are used in this sample configuration. Use settings that are appropriate for your actual application:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Address Settings</b> page, edit the following:
	<p>IP Address</p> <p>By default:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the first three octet values equal the first three octet values of the Ethernet communication module, and</li> <li>the fourth octet value equals this device Number setting—in this case, the default value would be 004.</li> </ul> <p>In our continuing example, type in the address <b>192.168.1.6</b>.</p>
	<p>DHCP for this Device</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Enabled</b> activates the DHCP client in this device. The device obtains its IP address from the DHCP service provided by the Ethernet communication module and appears on the auto-generated DHCP client list (<i>see page 82</i>).</li> <li><b>Disabled</b> (the default) de-activates the DHCP client in this device.</li> </ul> <p>Select <b>Enabled</b>.</p>
	<p>Identified by</p> <p>If <b>DHCP for this Device</b> is <b>Enabled</b>, this indicates the device identifier type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>MAC Address</b>, or</li> <li><b>Device Name</b></li> </ul> <p>Select <b>Device Name</b>.</p>
	<p>Identifier</p> <p>If <b>DHCP for this Device</b> is <b>Enabled</b>, the specific device MAC Address or Name value.</p> <p>Accept the default setting of <b>NIC2212_01</b> (based on the Alias name).</p>
	<p>Mask</p> <p>The device subnet mask. The default = 255.255.255.0.</p> <p>Accept the default value.</p>
	<p>Gateway</p> <p>The gateway address used to reach this device. The default of 0.0.0.0 indicates this device is located on the same subnet as the Ethernet communication module.</p> <p>Accept the default value.</p>
2	Click <b>OK</b> to save your edits.

The next step is to configure the connection between the communication module and the remote device.

## Configuring EtherNet/IP Connections

### Overview

An EtherNet/IP connection provides a communication link between two or more devices. Properties for a single connection can be configured in the DTMs for the connected devices.

Use the **Device Editor** to view and edit connection settings. The following example presents settings for a connection between the BMX NOC 0401 communication module and a remote STB NIC 2212 network interface module. Configuration edits are made to the DTMs for each device.

When making DTM edits, disconnect the selected DTM from the actual module or device (*see page 49*).

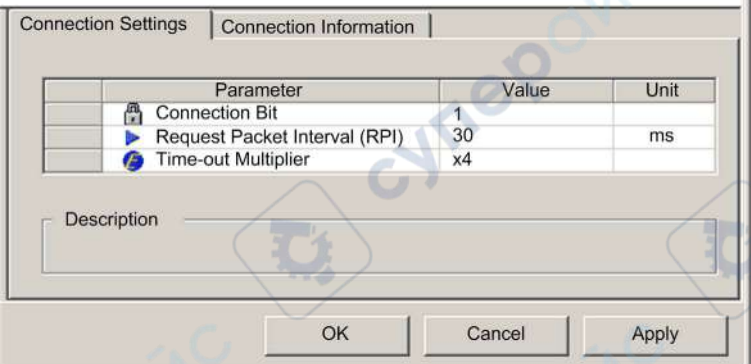
**NOTE:** Refer to the topic Configuring Properties in the Device Editor (*see page 57*) for instructions on how to edit properties.

### Configuring Connection Settings in the Communication Module DTM

Control Expert automatically creates a connection between a communication module and remote device, when the remote device is added to the Control Expert project. Thereafter, many edits to the connection can be made in the DTM for the remote device. However, some of the connection parameters can also be configured in the DTM for the communication module, as demonstrated below.

The following connection settings for this sample configuration can be set in the DTM for the communication module. Use settings that are appropriate for your actual application:

Step	Action
1	<p>Open the DTM for the communications module—in this example <b>NOC01</b>—by selecting it in the <b>Device Editor</b>, then do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in the main menu, select <b>Edit</b> → <b>Open</b>, or</li> <li>• click the right mouse button, and select <b>Open</b> in the pop-up menu</li> </ul> <p>The communication module DTM opens in the <b>Device Editor</b>.</p>
2	<p>In the navigation pane (on the left side of the <b>Device Editor</b>) select the node representing the connection from the communication module to the remote device, in this case: <b>Device List</b> → <b>NIC2212_01</b> → <b>Read Input / Write Output Data</b></p>

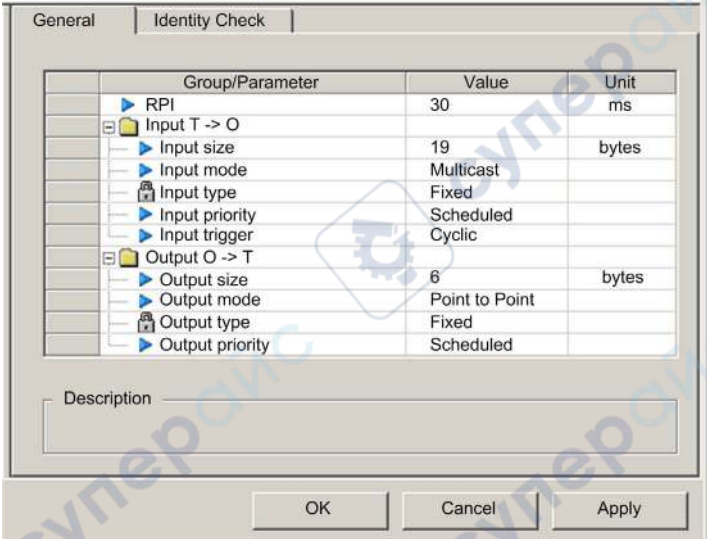
Step	Action						
3	<p>Click on the <b>Connection Settings</b> tab to open the following page:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> To view the <b>Time-out Multiplier</b> parameter, confirm that Control Expert is operating in <b>Advanced Mode</b>.</p>						
4	<p>In the <b>Connection Settings</b> page, edit the following settings:</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Connection Bit</td> <td> <p>(Read-only) The offset for both the health bit and the control bit for this connection. Offset values are auto-generated by the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool, beginning at 0, and are prioritized according to the connection type, as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Modbus TCP connections</li> <li>2 local slave connections</li> <li>3 EtherNet/IP connections</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The initial value of this EtherNet/IP connection is 1, because only a single local slave has previously been enabled. When a single Modbus TCP connection is created, the value of this connection bit offset changes to 2.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Request Packet Interval (RPI)</td> <td> <p>The refresh period for this connection, from 2 to 65535 ms. Default = 12 ms. Type in <b>30</b> ms.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This parameter can be set in the DTM for the communication module or the remote device.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Time-out Multiplier</td> <td> <p>This setting, multiplied against the RPI, produces a value that triggers an inactivity timeout. Setting selections include: x4, x8, x16, x32, x64, x128, x256 and x512.</p> <p>Accept the default of <b>x4</b>.</p> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The Connection Information page is read-only when the communication module is selected. This information needs to be set in the DTM for the remote device.</p>	Connection Bit	<p>(Read-only) The offset for both the health bit and the control bit for this connection. Offset values are auto-generated by the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool, beginning at 0, and are prioritized according to the connection type, as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Modbus TCP connections</li> <li>2 local slave connections</li> <li>3 EtherNet/IP connections</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The initial value of this EtherNet/IP connection is 1, because only a single local slave has previously been enabled. When a single Modbus TCP connection is created, the value of this connection bit offset changes to 2.</p>	Request Packet Interval (RPI)	<p>The refresh period for this connection, from 2 to 65535 ms. Default = 12 ms. Type in <b>30</b> ms.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This parameter can be set in the DTM for the communication module or the remote device.</p>	Time-out Multiplier	<p>This setting, multiplied against the RPI, produces a value that triggers an inactivity timeout. Setting selections include: x4, x8, x16, x32, x64, x128, x256 and x512.</p> <p>Accept the default of <b>x4</b>.</p>
Connection Bit	<p>(Read-only) The offset for both the health bit and the control bit for this connection. Offset values are auto-generated by the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool, beginning at 0, and are prioritized according to the connection type, as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Modbus TCP connections</li> <li>2 local slave connections</li> <li>3 EtherNet/IP connections</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The initial value of this EtherNet/IP connection is 1, because only a single local slave has previously been enabled. When a single Modbus TCP connection is created, the value of this connection bit offset changes to 2.</p>						
Request Packet Interval (RPI)	<p>The refresh period for this connection, from 2 to 65535 ms. Default = 12 ms. Type in <b>30</b> ms.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This parameter can be set in the DTM for the communication module or the remote device.</p>						
Time-out Multiplier	<p>This setting, multiplied against the RPI, produces a value that triggers an inactivity timeout. Setting selections include: x4, x8, x16, x32, x64, x128, x256 and x512.</p> <p>Accept the default of <b>x4</b>.</p>						
5	<p>Click <b>OK</b> to save your settings.</p>						

## Configuring Connection Settings in the Remote Device DTM

Connections between a communication module and remote device can be created and edited in the DTM for the remote device.

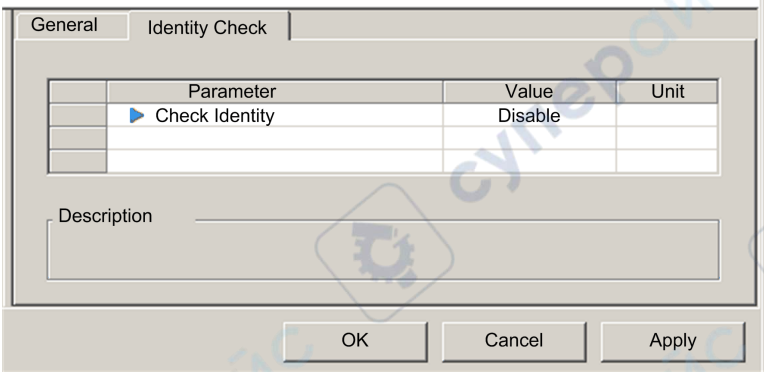
In this example, the following configuration edits are made to the connection that Control Expert automatically created, when the remote device was added to the project. Use settings that are appropriate for your actual application:

Step	Action										
1	<p>Open the DTM for the remote device—in this example <b>NIC2212_01</b>—by selecting it in the <b>Device Editor</b>, then do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in the main menu, select <b>Edit</b> → <b>Open</b>, or</li> <li>• click the right mouse button, and select <b>Open</b> in the pop-up menu</li> </ul> <p>The remote device DTM opens in the <b>Device Editor</b>.</p>										
2	<p>In the navigation pane (on the left side of the <b>Device Editor</b>), confirm that the remote device connection is of the type <b>Read Input / Write Output Data</b>. To view the connection type, select <b>NIC2212_01</b> in the left pane of the <b>Device Editor</b>. If the connection type is not of the type <b>Read Input / Write Output Data</b>, delete the existing connection and add a new one, as follows:</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>a</td> <td>With the connection selected in the left pane, click the <b>Remove Connection</b> button. The existing connection is removed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>b</td> <td>Click the <b>Add Connection</b> button. The <b>Select the connection to add</b> dialog opens.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>c</td> <td>Use the scroll buttons on the drop down list to display and select the <b>Read Input / Write Output Data</b> connection type.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>d</td> <td>Click <b>OK</b> to close the <b>Select the connection to add</b> dialog. The new connection node appears.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>e</td> <td>Click <b>Apply</b> to save the new connection, leaving the <b>Device Editor</b> open for additional edits.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	a	With the connection selected in the left pane, click the <b>Remove Connection</b> button. The existing connection is removed.	b	Click the <b>Add Connection</b> button. The <b>Select the connection to add</b> dialog opens.	c	Use the scroll buttons on the drop down list to display and select the <b>Read Input / Write Output Data</b> connection type.	d	Click <b>OK</b> to close the <b>Select the connection to add</b> dialog. The new connection node appears.	e	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the new connection, leaving the <b>Device Editor</b> open for additional edits.
a	With the connection selected in the left pane, click the <b>Remove Connection</b> button. The existing connection is removed.										
b	Click the <b>Add Connection</b> button. The <b>Select the connection to add</b> dialog opens.										
c	Use the scroll buttons on the drop down list to display and select the <b>Read Input / Write Output Data</b> connection type.										
d	Click <b>OK</b> to close the <b>Select the connection to add</b> dialog. The new connection node appears.										
e	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the new connection, leaving the <b>Device Editor</b> open for additional edits.										

Step	Action																																							
3	<p>With the <b>Read Input / Write Output Data</b> node selected, click on the <b>General</b> tab:</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Group/Parameter</th> <th>Value</th> <th>Unit</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>RPI</td> <td>30</td> <td>ms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Input T -&gt; O</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>  Input size</td> <td>19</td> <td>bytes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>  Input mode</td> <td>Multicast</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>  Input type</td> <td>Fixed</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>  Input priority</td> <td>Scheduled</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>  Input trigger</td> <td>Cyclic</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Output O -&gt; T</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>  Output size</td> <td>6</td> <td>bytes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>  Output mode</td> <td>Point to Point</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>  Output type</td> <td>Fixed</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>  Output priority</td> <td>Scheduled</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Description</p> <p>OK    Cancel    Apply</p>	Group/Parameter	Value	Unit	RPI	30	ms	Input T -> O			Input size	19	bytes	Input mode	Multicast		Input type	Fixed		Input priority	Scheduled		Input trigger	Cyclic		Output O -> T			Output size	6	bytes	Output mode	Point to Point		Output type	Fixed		Output priority	Scheduled	
Group/Parameter	Value	Unit																																						
RPI	30	ms																																						
Input T -> O																																								
Input size	19	bytes																																						
Input mode	Multicast																																							
Input type	Fixed																																							
Input priority	Scheduled																																							
Input trigger	Cyclic																																							
Output O -> T																																								
Output size	6	bytes																																						
Output mode	Point to Point																																							
Output type	Fixed																																							
Output priority	Scheduled																																							

Step	Action	
4	In the <b>General</b> page, edit the following settings:	
RPI	The refresh period for this connection. Accept the value of <b>30 ms</b> . (This parameter can be set in the DTM for the communication module or the remote device.)	
Input size	The number of bytes reserved for input data, from 0 to 505. Type in <b>19</b> . <b>NOTE:</b> Control Expert reserves input data in increments of 4 bytes (2 words). In this example, typing in the value of 19 bytes reserve 20 bytes of input memory.	
Input mode	The transmission type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Multicast</li> <li>● Point to Point</li> </ul> Accept the default selection of <b>Multicast</b> .	
Input type	Ethernet packet type—fixed or variable length—to be transmitted. Only <b>Fixed</b> length packets are supported.	
Input priority	The transmission priority. The value depends upon the device DTM. Values can include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Low</li> <li>● High</li> <li>● Scheduled</li> </ul> <b>NOTE:</b> For remote modules that support more than one priority value, you can use this setting to specify the order in which the Ethernet communication module will handle packets. For more information, refer to the topic describing QoS Packet Prioritization (see <i>Quantum using EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet Communication Module, User Manual</i> ). For the purpose of this example, accept the default selection of <b>Scheduled</b> .	
Input trigger	The transmission trigger. Values can include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Cyclic</li> <li>● Change of state or application</li> </ul> For input I/O data, select <b>Cyclic</b> .	
Output size	The number of bytes reserved for output data, from to 509. Type in <b>6</b> . <b>NOTE:</b> Control Expert reserves output data in increments of 4 bytes (2 words). In this example, typing in the value of 6 bytes reserves 8 bytes of output memory.	
Output mode	Accept the default selection of <b>Point to Point</b> .	
Output type	(Read-only). Only <b>Fixed</b> length packets are supported.	
Output priority	Accept the default selection of <b>Scheduled</b> .	



Step	Action																
5	<p>Click on the <b>Identity Check</b> tab to open the following page:</p> 																
6	<p>In the <b>Identity Check</b> page, set rules for comparing the identity of the remote device, as defined by its DTM or EDS file, against the identity of the actual remote device located on the network. Complete the following settings:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Check Identity</td> <td> <p>Define the rule Control Expert will use in comparing the configured versus the actual remote device. Settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Must match exactly</b>—the DTM or EDS file exactly matches the remote device</li> <li>● <b>Disable</b>—no checking occurs; the identity portion of the connection is filled with zero values (the default setting)</li> <li>● <b>Must be compatible</b>—if the remote device is not the same as defined by the DTM/EDS, it emulates the DTM/EDS definitions</li> <li>● <b>None</b>—no checking occurs; the identity portion of the connection is omitted</li> <li>● <b>Custom</b>—enables the following 6 parameter settings, to be set individually.</li> </ul> <p>For this example, select <b>Disable</b>.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">If <b>Check identity</b> is set to <b>Custom</b>, complete the following 6 fields:</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Compatibility Mode</td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>True</b>—for each of the following selected tests, the DTM/EDS and remote device need only be compatible</li> <li>● <b>False</b>—for each of the following selected tests, the DTM/EDS and remote device need to match exactly</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Minor Version</td> <td>For each of the parameters to the left, select one of the following settings:</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Major Version</td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Compatible</b>—include the parameter in the test</li> <li>● <b>Not checked</b>—the parameter is not included in the test</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Product Code</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Product Type</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Product Vendor</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Check Identity	<p>Define the rule Control Expert will use in comparing the configured versus the actual remote device. Settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Must match exactly</b>—the DTM or EDS file exactly matches the remote device</li> <li>● <b>Disable</b>—no checking occurs; the identity portion of the connection is filled with zero values (the default setting)</li> <li>● <b>Must be compatible</b>—if the remote device is not the same as defined by the DTM/EDS, it emulates the DTM/EDS definitions</li> <li>● <b>None</b>—no checking occurs; the identity portion of the connection is omitted</li> <li>● <b>Custom</b>—enables the following 6 parameter settings, to be set individually.</li> </ul> <p>For this example, select <b>Disable</b>.</p>	If <b>Check identity</b> is set to <b>Custom</b> , complete the following 6 fields:		Compatibility Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>True</b>—for each of the following selected tests, the DTM/EDS and remote device need only be compatible</li> <li>● <b>False</b>—for each of the following selected tests, the DTM/EDS and remote device need to match exactly</li> </ul>	Minor Version	For each of the parameters to the left, select one of the following settings:	Major Version	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Compatible</b>—include the parameter in the test</li> <li>● <b>Not checked</b>—the parameter is not included in the test</li> </ul>	Product Code		Product Type		Product Vendor	
Check Identity	<p>Define the rule Control Expert will use in comparing the configured versus the actual remote device. Settings include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Must match exactly</b>—the DTM or EDS file exactly matches the remote device</li> <li>● <b>Disable</b>—no checking occurs; the identity portion of the connection is filled with zero values (the default setting)</li> <li>● <b>Must be compatible</b>—if the remote device is not the same as defined by the DTM/EDS, it emulates the DTM/EDS definitions</li> <li>● <b>None</b>—no checking occurs; the identity portion of the connection is omitted</li> <li>● <b>Custom</b>—enables the following 6 parameter settings, to be set individually.</li> </ul> <p>For this example, select <b>Disable</b>.</p>																
If <b>Check identity</b> is set to <b>Custom</b> , complete the following 6 fields:																	
Compatibility Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>True</b>—for each of the following selected tests, the DTM/EDS and remote device need only be compatible</li> <li>● <b>False</b>—for each of the following selected tests, the DTM/EDS and remote device need to match exactly</li> </ul>																
Minor Version	For each of the parameters to the left, select one of the following settings:																
Major Version	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Compatible</b>—include the parameter in the test</li> <li>● <b>Not checked</b>—the parameter is not included in the test</li> </ul>																
Product Code																	
Product Type																	
Product Vendor																	
7	Click <b>OK</b> to save your settings.																

The next step is to configure I/O settings.

## Connecting to the Advantys STB Island

### Overview

In this example, you will use the Advantys configuration software running on your PC to:

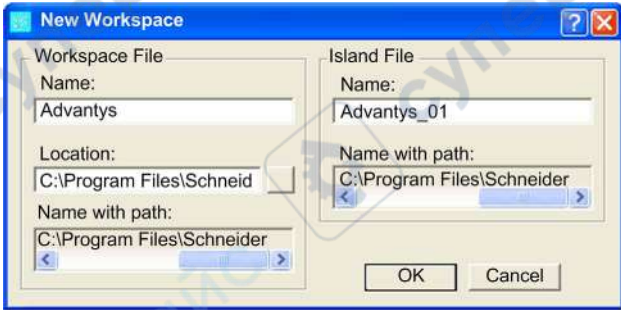
- connect the Advantys configuration software to the STB NIC 2212 and the 8 I/O modules that comprise the Advantys STB island
- upload Advantys STB island configuration to the Advantys configuration software in your PC
- display a fieldbus image for the Advantys STB island showing the relative location of:
  - status information
  - input data
  - output data

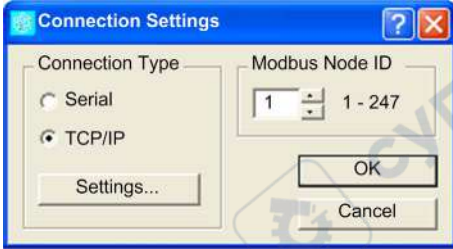
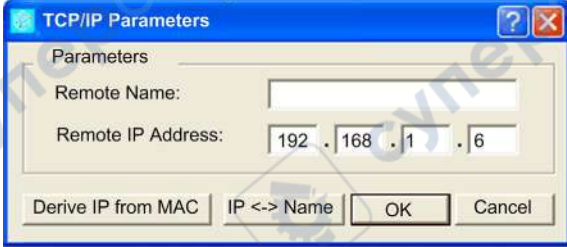
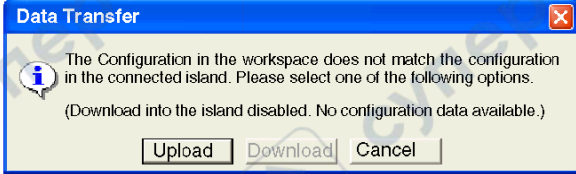
Using the data presented in the fieldbus image, you can use Control Expert to create input and output items that map to specific status, input, output, and output echo data.

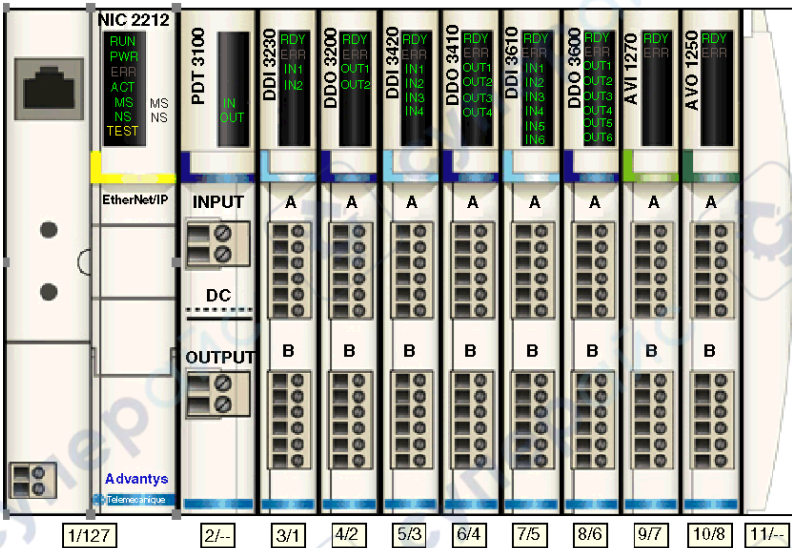
**NOTE:** Before proceeding with the following instructions, confirm that you have auto-configured the Advantys STB island by pressing the **RST** button on the front of the STB NIC 2212 module.

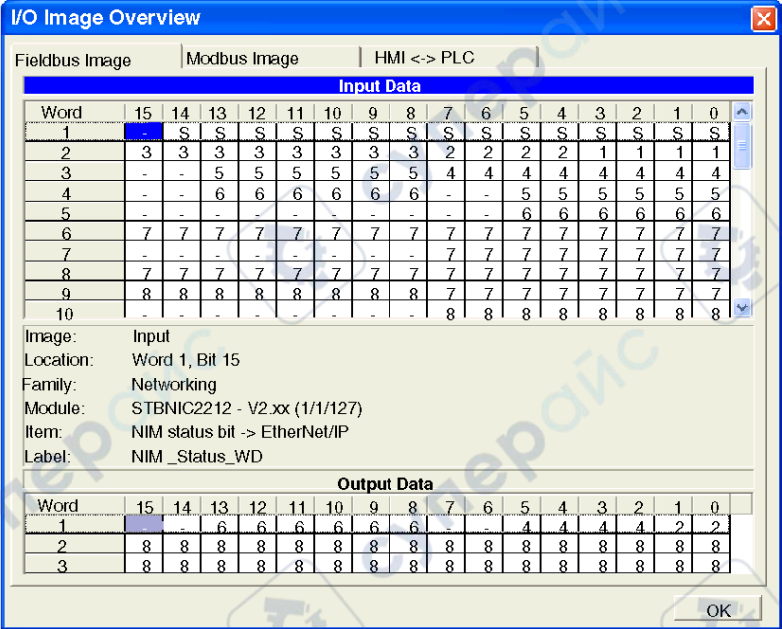
### Making the Connection

To connect to the STB NIC 2212 and I/O modules using the Advantys configuration software:

Step	Action
1	Startup the Advantys configuration software on your PC. A dialog opens displaying available project types.
2	Select <b>STB</b> .
3	Select <b>File</b> → <b>New Workspace</b> . The <b>New Workspace</b> window opens (below).
4	For this example, type in the following field values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● for the field <b>Workspace File</b> type in <b>Advantys</b></li> <li>● for the field <b>Island File</b> type in <b>Advantys_01</b></li> </ul> 
5	Click <b>OK</b> . The Advantys configuration software displays an empty DIN rail in the center of the screen.
6	Select <b>Online</b> → <b>Connection Settings</b> . The <b>Connection Settings</b> window opens (below).

Step	Action
7	<p>In the <b>Connection Settings</b> window, accept the <b>Modbus Node ID</b> default setting of <b>1</b>, select <b>TCP/IP</b>, and click the <b>Settings...</b> button:</p>  <p>The <b>TCP/IP Parameters</b> dialog opens (below).</p>
8	<p>In the <b>Remote IP Address</b> field, type in the IP address for the STB NIC 2212, in this example: <b>192.168.1.6</b>.</p> 
9	<p>Click <b>OK</b> to close the <b>TCP/IP Parameters</b> dialog, and click <b>OK</b> again to close the <b>Connection Settings</b> dialog.</p>
10	<p>Select <b>Online</b> → <b>Connect</b>. The <b>Data Transfer</b> dialog opens (below):</p> 

Step	Action
11	<p>Select <b>Upload</b> in the <b>Data Transfer</b> dialog. The island workspace is populated with island data and shows the STB NIC 2212 and the island modules (below):</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> A box appears beneath each module containing one or two integers—for example <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">3/1</span>. These integers serve the following purpose:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The left-side integer (3 in this example) identifies the module's physical position—left to right—among the modules in the rack.</li> <li>• The right-side integer (1 in this example) identifies the module's relative position—left to right—among only data producing/receiving modules. If the module is not a data producing/receiving module (e.g. a power supply, or end of segment module) no right-side integer appears.</li> </ul>

Step	Action
12	<p>Select <b>Island</b> → <b>I/O Image Overview</b>. The <b>I/O Image</b> window opens to the <b>Fieldbus Image</b> page:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'I/O Image Overview' window with the 'Fieldbus Image' tab selected. It contains two tables: 'Input Data' and 'Output Data'. The 'Input Data' table has 10 rows (Words 1-10) and 16 columns (Bits 15-0). The 'Output Data' table has 3 rows (Words 1-3) and 16 columns (Bits 15-0). Below the tables, a detailed view for 'Input Data' is shown for Word 1, Bit 15, indicating it is a status bit for the STB NIC 2212 network interface module.</p> <p>Each table cell contains one of the following alpha-numeric indicators:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>S</b> indicates a status bit for the STB NIC 2212 network interface module</li> <li>● <b>an integer</b> identifies the relative position—from left to right—of a data producing/receiving module with input or output data in that cell. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ the STB DDI 3230 input module is the first data producing or receiving module in the rack; its data is designated by the integer 1 in bits 0 - 3 of word 2 in the <b>Input Data</b> table</li> <li>○ the STB DDO 3600 output module is the sixth data producing module in the rack; its status and output echo data is designated by the integer 6 in bits 8 - 13 of word 4 and in bits 0 - 5 of word 5 in the <b>Input Data</b> table; its output data is designated by the integer 6 in bits 8 - 13 of word 1 in the <b>Output Data</b> table</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Notes:</b>  Select a cell in either the <b>Input Data</b> or <b>Output Data</b> tables to display—in the middle of the page—a description of the cell data and its source module.  Convert the size of the <b>Input Data</b> table and the <b>Output Data</b> table from words to bytes (i.e. divide by 2), then use that data as the values for the <b>Input Size</b> (19) and <b>Output Size</b> (6) parameters when configuring the remote device's connection properties.</p>

## Configuring I/O Items

### Overview

The final task in this example is to add I/O items to the configuration of the STB NIC 2212 and its 8 I/O modules. To accomplish this:

- use the Advantys configuration software to identify the relative position of each I/O module's inputs and outputs
- use the Control Expert **Device Editor** to create input and output items, defining each item's:
  - name
  - data type

### I/O Item Types and Sizes

The goal is to create a collection of input items and output items that equal the input size and output size specified for the STB NIC 2212 (see *Quantum using EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet Communication Module, User Manual*). In this example, items need to be created for:

- 19 bytes of inputs
- 6 bytes of outputs

The Control Expert **Device Editor** provides great flexibility in creating input and output items. You can create input and output items in groups of 1 or more single bits, 8-bit bytes, 16-bit words, 32-bit dwords, or 32-bit IEEE floating values. The number of items you create depends upon the data type and size of each item.

In the sample project, the following items were created:

- discrete bits for digital inputs and outputs
- 8-bit bytes or 16-bit words for analog inputs and outputs

## Mapping Input and Output Items

Use the **Fieldbus Image** page of the **I/O Image Overview** window in the Advantys configuration software to identify the number and type of I/O items you need to create, as follows:

Step	Action
1	In the Advantys configuration software, select <b>Island</b> → <b>I/O Image Overview</b> . The <b>I/O Image</b> window opens to the <b>Fieldbus Image</b> page.
2	Select the first cell (word 1, cell 0) in the <b>Input Data</b> table to display—in the middle of the page—a description of the cell data and its source module.
3	Make a note of the word, bit(s), module and item information for that cell.
4	Repeat steps 2 and 3 for each cell containing either an S or an integer.

**NOTE:** The Fieldbus Image presents input and output data in the form of 16-bit words (starting with word 1). You need to rearrange this data for the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool, which presents the same data in the form of 8-bit bytes (starting with byte 0).

**NOTE:** When you create items, align items of data type **WORD** and **DWORD**, as follows:

- **WORD** items: align these items on a 16-bit boundary
- **DWORD** items: align these items on a 32-bit boundary.

This process yields the following tables of input and output data:

Input Data:

Advantys Fieldbus Image		Control Expert EIP Items		STB Module	Description
Word	Bit(s)	Byte	Bit(s)		
1	0-15	0	0-7	NIC 2212	low byte status
		1	0-7		high byte status
2	0-1	2	0-1	DDI 3230	input data
	2-3		2-3	DDI 3230	input status
	4-5		4-5	DDO 3200	output data echo
	6-7		6-7	DDO 3200	output status
	8-11	3	0-3	DDI 3420	input data
	12-15		4-7	DDI 3420	input status
3	0-3	4	0-3	DDO 3410	output data echo
	4-7		4-7	DDO 3410	output status
	8-13	5	0-5	DDI 3610	input data
	14-15		6-7	NA	not used



Advantys Fieldbus Image		Control Expert EIP Items		STB Module	Description
Word	Bit(s)	Byte	Bit(s)		
4	0-5	6	0-5	DDI 3610	input status
	6-7		6-7	NA	not used
	8-13	7	0-5	DDO 3600	output data echo
	14-15		6-7	NA	not used
5	0-5	8	0-5	DDO 3600	output status
	6-15	8	6-7	NA	not used
		9	0-7		
6	0-15	10	0-7	AVI 1270	input data ch 1
		11	0-7		
7	0-7	12	0-7	AVI 1270	input status ch 1
	8-15	13	0-7	NA	not used
8	0-15	14	0-7	AVI 1270	input data ch 2
		15	0-7		
9	0-7	16	0-7	AVI 1270	input status ch 2
	8-15	17	0-7	AVO 1250	output status ch 1
10	0-7	18	0-7	AVO 1250	output status ch 2
	8-15	NA	NA	NA	not used

Output Data:

Advantys Fieldbus Image		Control Expert EIP Items		Module	Description
Word	Bit(s)	Byte	Bit(s)		
1	0-1	0	0-1	DDO 3200	output data
	2-5		2-5	DDO 3410	output data
	6-7		6-7	NA	not used
	8-13	1	0-5	DDO 3600	output data
	14-15		6-7	NA	not used
2	0-15	2	0-7	AVO 1250	output data ch 1
		3	0-7		
3	0-15	4	0-7	AVO 1250	output data ch 2
		5	0-7		

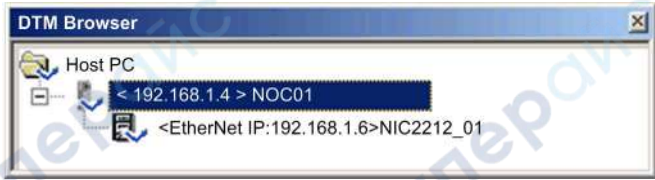
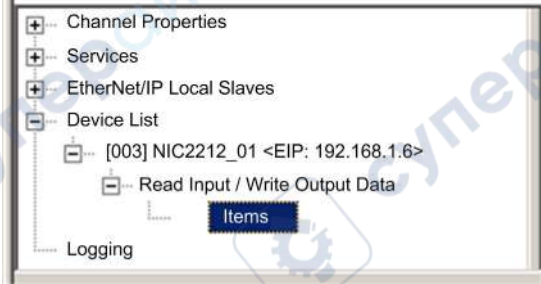


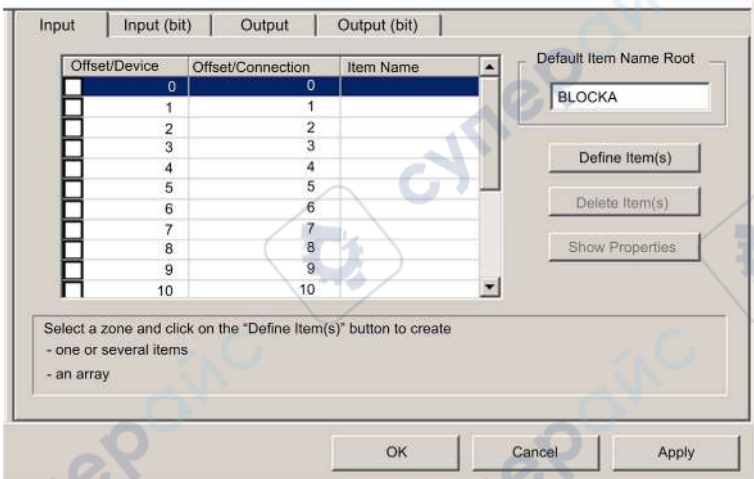
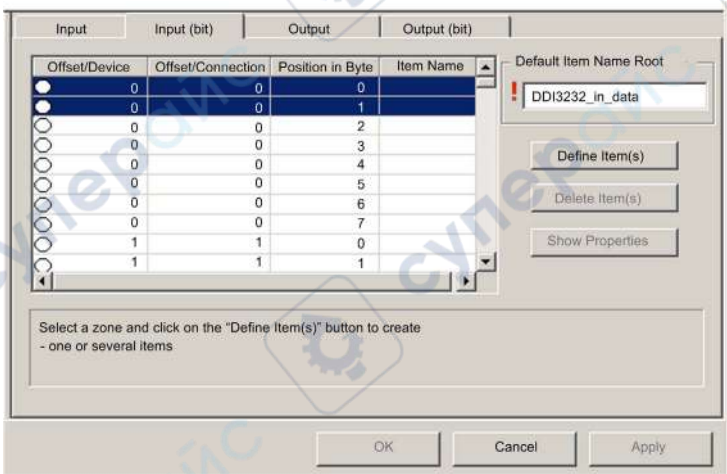
This example shows you how to create 19 bytes of inputs and 6 bytes of outputs. To more efficiently use space, this example creates items in the following sequence:

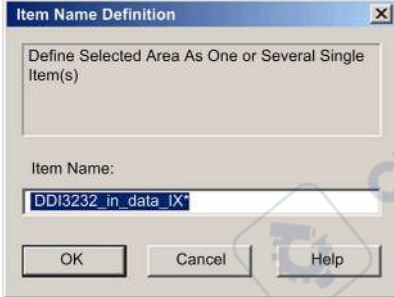
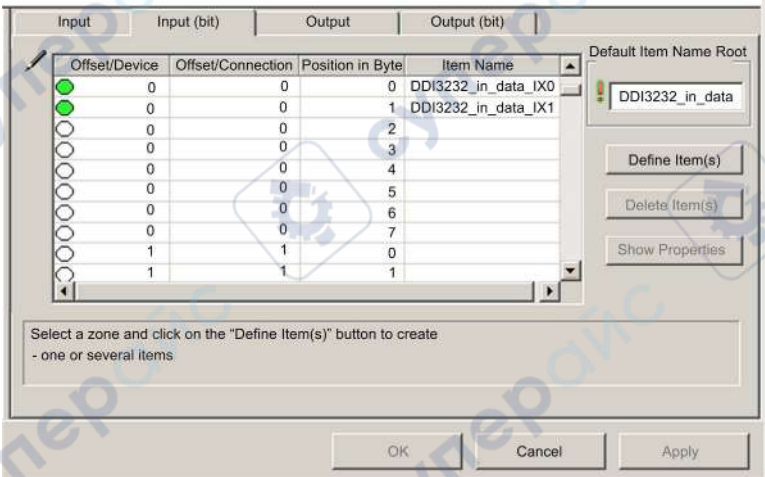
- input bit items
- input byte and word items
- output bit items
- output byte and word items

### Creating Input Bit Items

To create input bit items for the STB NIC 2212 example, beginning with 16 discrete inputs for NIC 2212 status:

Step	Action
1	<p>In the <b>DTM Browser</b>, select the communication module:</p> 
2	<p>Do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in the main menu, select <b>Edit</b> → <b>Open</b>, or</li> <li>• click the right mouse button, then select <b>Open</b> in the pop-up menu.</li> </ul> <p>The <b>Device Editor</b> opens, displaying the DTM for the communication module.</p>
3	<p>In the left pane of the <b>Device Editor</b>, navigate to and select the <b>Items</b> node for the STB NIC 2212 network interface module:</p> 

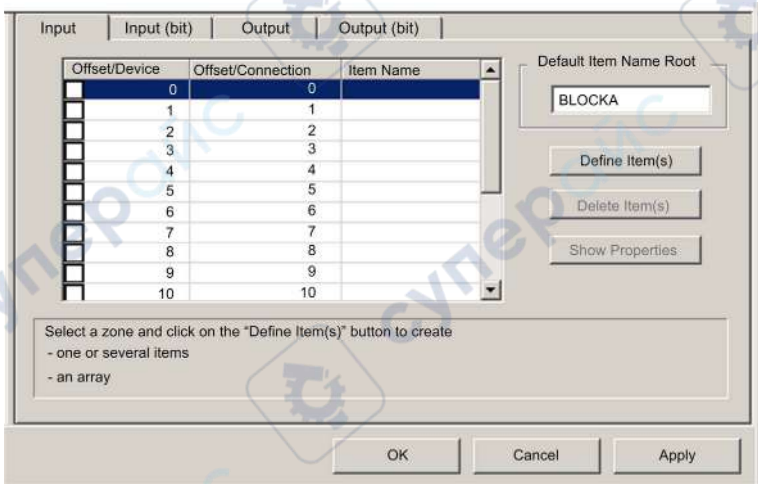
Step	Action																																												
4	<p>The <b>Items</b> window opens:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Items' window with the following table:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Offset/Device</th> <th>Offset/Connection</th> <th>Item Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>2</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>3</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>4</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>5</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>6</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>7</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>8</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>9</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>10</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Default Item Name Root: BLOCKA</p> <p>Select a zone and click on the "Define Item(s)" button to create                      - one or several items                      - an array</p>	Offset/Device	Offset/Connection	Item Name	0	0		1	1		2	2		3	3		4	4		5	5		6	6		7	7		8	8		9	9		10	10									
Offset/Device	Offset/Connection	Item Name																																											
0	0																																												
1	1																																												
2	2																																												
3	3																																												
4	4																																												
5	5																																												
6	6																																												
7	7																																												
8	8																																												
9	9																																												
10	10																																												
5	Select the <b>Input (bit)</b> tab to display that page.																																												
6	In the <b>Input (bit)</b> page, type the following default root name—representing device status—into the <b>Default Items Name Root</b> input box type: <b>DDI3232_in_data</b> .																																												
7	In the <b>Items List</b> , select the first 2 rows in the table. (These rows represent bits 0-1 in byte.)																																												
	 <p>The screenshot shows the 'Items' window with the 'Input (bit)' tab selected. The table now includes a 'Position in Byte' column:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Offset/Device</th> <th>Offset/Connection</th> <th>Position in Byte</th> <th>Item Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>2</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>3</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>4</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>5</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>6</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>7</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Default Item Name Root: DDI3232_in_data</p> <p>Select a zone and click on the "Define Item(s)" button to create                      - one or several items</p>	Offset/Device	Offset/Connection	Position in Byte	Item Name	0	0	0		0	0	1		0	0	2		0	0	3		0	0	4		0	0	5		0	0	6		0	0	7		1	1	0		1	1	1	
Offset/Device	Offset/Connection	Position in Byte	Item Name																																										
0	0	0																																											
0	0	1																																											
0	0	2																																											
0	0	3																																											
0	0	4																																											
0	0	5																																											
0	0	6																																											
0	0	7																																											
1	1	0																																											
1	1	1																																											

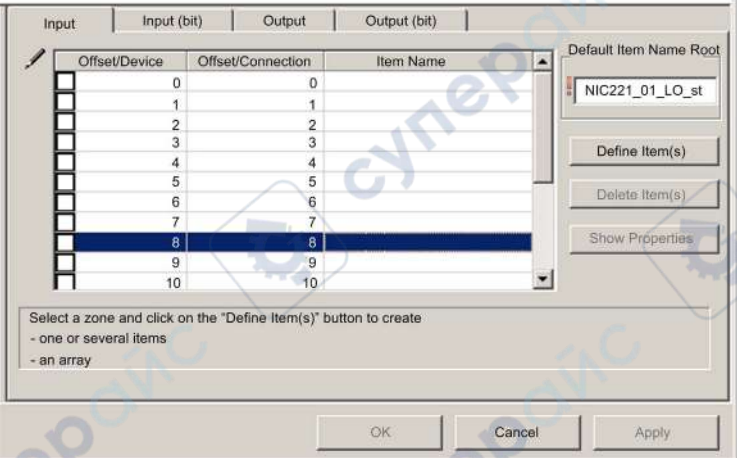
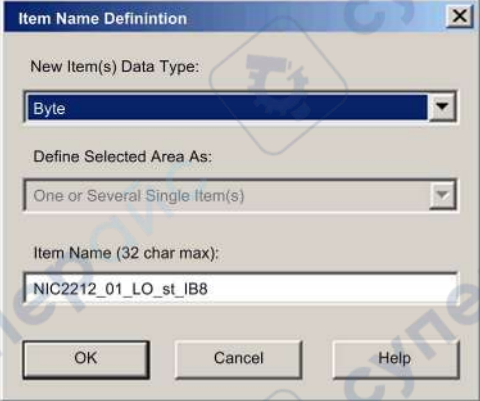
Step	Action
8	<p>Click the <b>Define Item(s)</b> button. The <b>Item Name Definition</b> dialog opens:</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> The asterisk (*) indicates a series of discrete items with the same root name will be created.</p>
9	<p>Accept the default <b>Item Name</b> and click <b>OK</b>. 2 discrete input items are created:</p> 
10	<p>Click <b>Apply</b> to save the items, and leave the page open.</p>

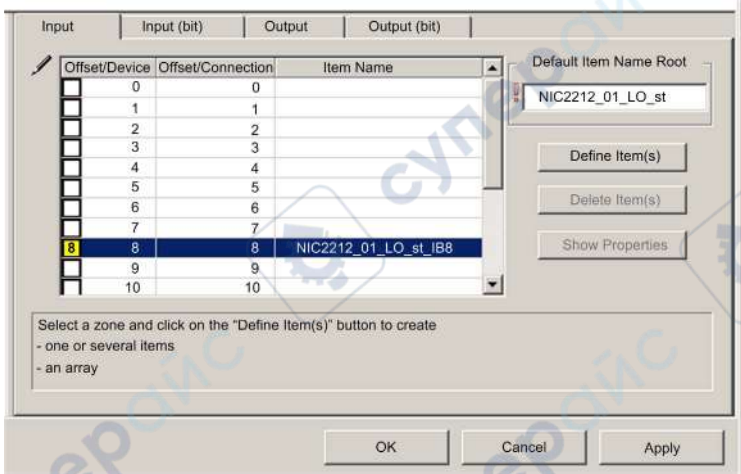
Step	Action
11	<p>Repeat steps 6 - 10 for each group of discrete input items you need to create. In this example, that includes items for each of the following groups:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Byte: 0, Bits: 2-3, Default Items Name Root: DDI3230_in_st</li> <li>● Byte: 0, Bits: 4-5, Default Items Name Root: DDO3200_out_echo</li> <li>● Byte: 0, Bits: 6-7, Default Items Name Root: DDO3200_out_st</li> <li>● Byte: 1, Bits: 0-3, Default Items Name Root: DDI3420_in_data</li> <li>● Byte: 1, Bits: 4-7, Default Items Name Root: DDI3420_in_st</li> <li>● Byte: 2, Bits: 0-3, Default Items Name Root: DDO3410_out_echo</li> <li>● Byte: 2, Bits: 4-7, Default Items Name Root: DDO3410_out_st</li> <li>● Byte: 3, Bits: 0-5, Default Items Name Root: DDI3610_in_data</li> <li>● Byte: 4, Bits: 0-5, Default Items Name Root: DDI3610_in_st</li> <li>● Byte: 5, Bits: 0-5, Default Items Name Root: DDO3600_out_echo</li> <li>● Byte: 6, Bits: 0-5, Default Items Name Root: DDO3600_out_st</li> </ul>
12	The next task is to create input bytes and words.

### Creating Input Items

To create input items for the STB NIC 2212 example, begin with an input data byte containing low byte status for the STB NIC 2212 module:

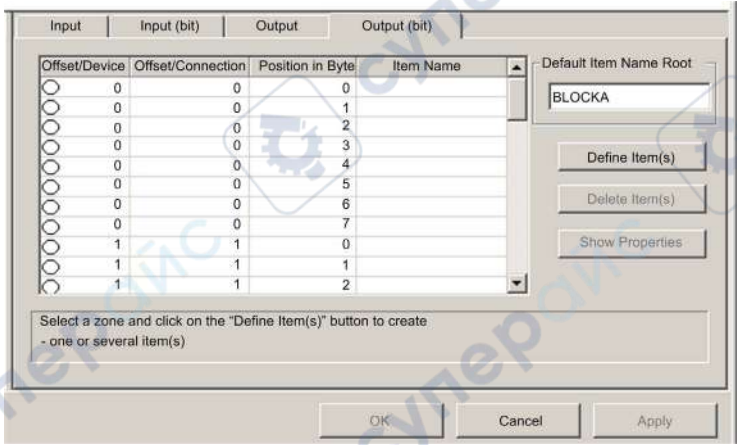
Step	Action
1	<p>Select the <b>Input</b> tab to return to that page:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> In this example, both the <b>Offset/Device</b> and <b>Offset/Connection</b> columns represent the byte address. The items you create will be either an 8-bit byte or a 16-bit word</p>
2	In the <b>Default Item Name Root</b> input box type: <b>NIC22212_01_LO_st</b> .

Step	Action
3	<p>Starting at the first available whole input word, select the single row at byte 8:</p>  <p>Select a zone and click on the "Define Item(s)" button to create</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- one or several items</li> <li>- an array</li> </ul>
4	<p>Click the <b>Define Item(s)</b> button. The <b>Item Name Definition</b> dialog opens:</p> 

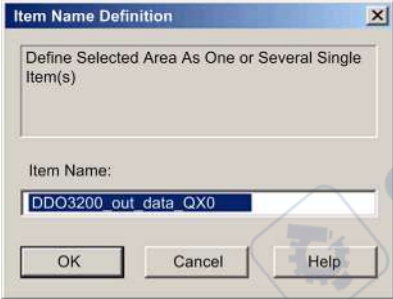
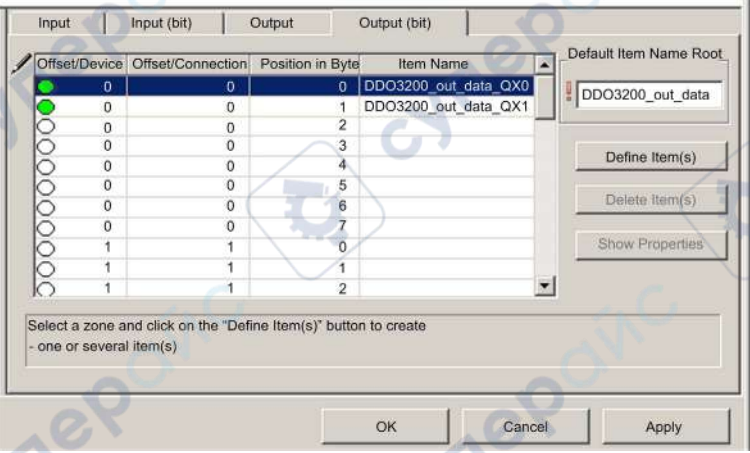
Step	Action
5	<p>Select <b>Byte</b> as the <b>New Item(s) Data Type</b>, then click <b>OK</b>. A new byte item is created:</p> 
6	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the new items, and leave the page open.
7	<p>Repeat steps 2 - 6 for each byte or word input item you need to create.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The number of rows you select for a new item depends upon the item type. If the item is a:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● byte: select a single row</li> <li>● word: select two rows, beginning at the next available whole word</li> </ul> <p>In this example, you will create items for each of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Byte: 9, Default Items Name Root: NIC2212_01_HI_st</li> <li>● Word: 10, Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH1_in_data</li> <li>● Byte: 12, Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH1_in_st</li> <li>● Word: 14-15, Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH2_in_data</li> <li>● Byte: 16, Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH2_in_st</li> <li>● Byte: 17, Default Items Name Root: AVO1250_CH1_out_st</li> <li>● Byte: 18, Default Items Name Root: AVO1250_CH2_out_st</li> </ul>
8	The next task is to create output bits.

### Creating Output Bit Items

To create output bit items for the STB NIC 2212 example, beginning with 2 output bits for the STB DDO3200 module:

Step	Action
1	<p>Select the <b>Output (bit)</b> tab to open the following page:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> Both the <b>Offset/Device</b> and <b>Offset/Connection</b> columns represent the byte address of an output, while the <b>Position in Byte</b> column indicates the bit position—within the byte—of each discrete output item.</p>
2	In the <b>Default Items Name Root</b> input box type: <b>DDO3200_out_data</b> .
3	In the <b>Items List</b> , select the rows that correspond to bits 0-1 in byte 0—i.e., the first 2 rows:

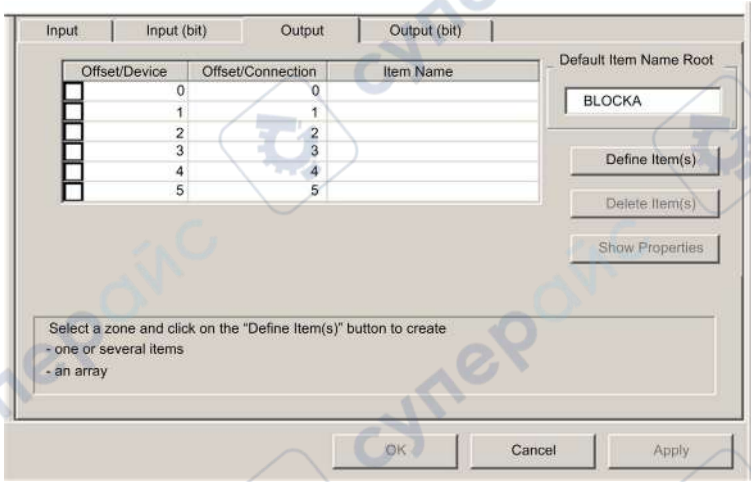


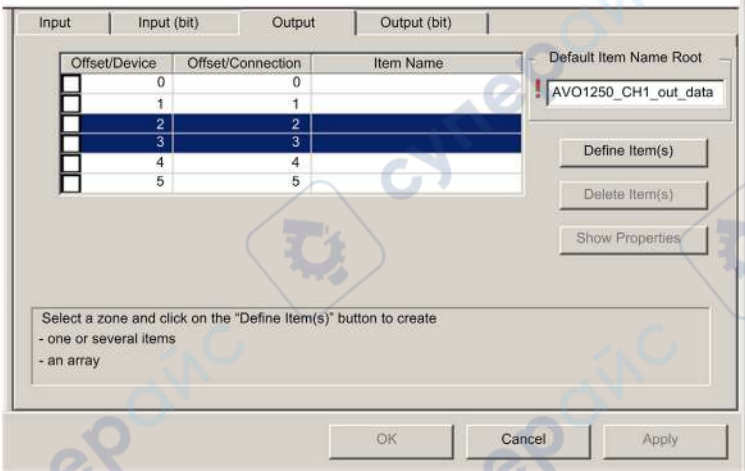
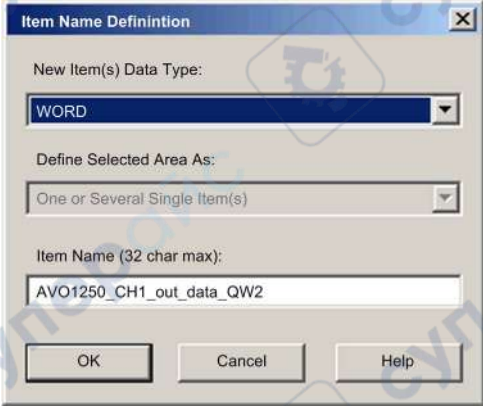
Step	Action
4	<p>Click the <b>Define Item(s)</b> button. The <b>Item Name Definition</b> dialog opens:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> The asterisk (*) indicates a series of discrete items with the same root name will be created.</p>
5	<p>Accept the default output name and click <b>OK</b>. 2 discrete output items are created:</p> 
6	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the new items, and leave the page open.
7	<p>Repeat steps 2 - 6 for each group of discrete output items you need to create. In this example, that includes items for each of the following groups:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Byte: 0, Bits: 2-5, Default Items Name Root: DDO3410_out_data</li> <li>● Byte: 1, Bits: 0-5, Default Items Name Root: DDO3600_out_data</li> </ul>
8	The next task is to create output bytes and words.

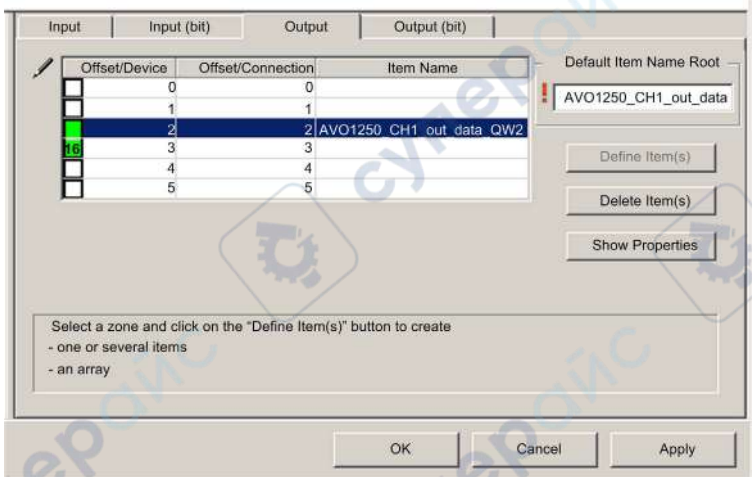


### Creating Numeric Output Items

To create output items for the STB NIC 2212, example, beginning with an output data word for the STB AVO 1250 module:

Step	Action
1	<p>Click on the <b>Output</b> tab to open the following page:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> In this example, both the <b>Offset/Device</b> and <b>Offset/Connection</b> columns represent the byte address. The items you create will be 16-bit words comprising 2 bytes.</p>
2	In the <b>Default Item Name Root</b> input box type: <b>AVO1250_CH1_out_data</b> .

Step	Action
3	<p>Starting at the next available whole word, select 2 rows: 2 and 3:</p> 
4	<p>Click the <b>Define Item(s)</b> button. The <b>Item Name Definition</b> dialog opens:</p> 

Step	Action
5	<p>Accept the default output name and click <b>OK</b>. the following output word item is created:</p> 
6	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the new item and leave the page open.
7	Repeat steps 2 - 6 for the AVO 1250 channel 2 output data at bytes 4 and 5.
8	Click <b>OK</b> to close the <b>Items</b> window.
9	Select <b>File</b> → <b>Save</b> to save your edits.

## Section 3.3

### Adding a Modbus TCP Device to the Network

#### Overview

This section extends the sample Control Expert application, by describing how to:

- add an STB NIP 2212 Modbus TCP network interface module to your Control Expert application
- configure the STB NIP 2212 module
- configure a Modbus TCP connection linking the BMX NOC 0401 communication module and the STB NIP 2212 network interface module

**NOTE:** The instructions in this chapter describe a single, specific device configuration example. Refer to the Control Expert help files for additional information about alternative configuration choices.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Setting Up Your Network	171
Adding an STB NIP 2212 Remote Device	173
Configuring STB NIP 2212 Properties	175
Connecting to the Advantys STB Island	183
Configuring I/O Items	187

## Setting Up Your Network

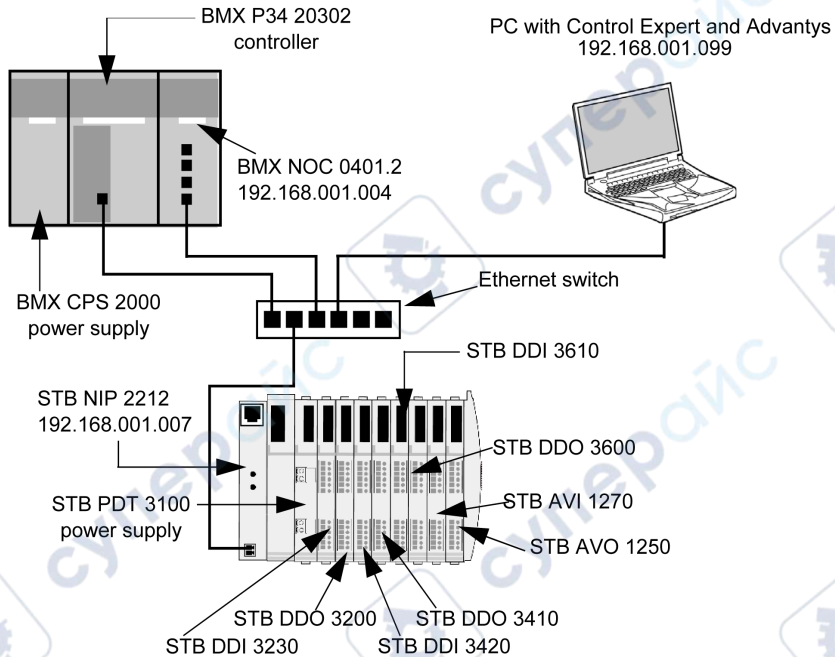
### Overview

This sample network includes the following hardware and software:

- a controller rack with:
  - BMX CPS 2000, 100/240 VAC power supply
  - BMX P34 20302 controller
  - BMX NOC 0401.2 Ethernet communication module
- a remote STB Advantys island with:
  - STB NIP 2212 Modbus TCP network interface module
  - STB PDT 3100 power distribution module
  - STB DDI 3230 2 pt digital input module
  - STB DDO 3200 2 pt digital output module
  - STB DDI 3420 4 pt digital input module
  - STB DDO 3410 4 pt digital output module
  - STB DDI 3610 6 pt digital input module
  - STB DDO 3600 6 pt digital output module
  - STB AVI 1270 2 pt analog input module
  - STB AVO 1250 2 pt analog output module
- a PC running both Unity Pro (version 5.0 or higher) and Advantys configuration software (version 5.0 or higher)  
**NOTE:** Unity Pro is the former name of Control Expert for version 13.1 or earlier.
- an Ethernet managed switch that is connected to the both the controller and island by means of twisted pair Ethernet cable and RJ45 connectors.

## Network Topology

The Ethernet network devices used in this configuration include the following:



To re-create this example:

- use the IP addresses for your own configuration's:
  - PC
  - BMX NOC 0401.2 Ethernet communication module
  - STB NIP 2212 network interface module
- check wiring

**NOTE:** Control Expert software running in the PC is used to configure the BMX P34 20302 controller. In this example, the PC is indirectly wired to the CPU's Ethernet port via the Ethernet switch. Alternatively, you could bypass the switch and directly wire the PC to either the CPU's Modbus or USB ports.

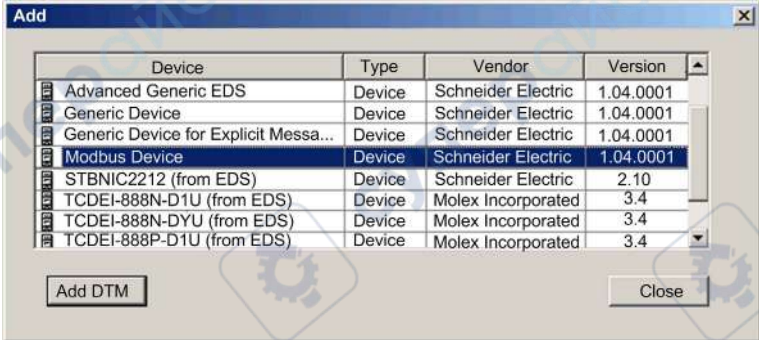
## Adding an STB NIP 2212 Remote Device

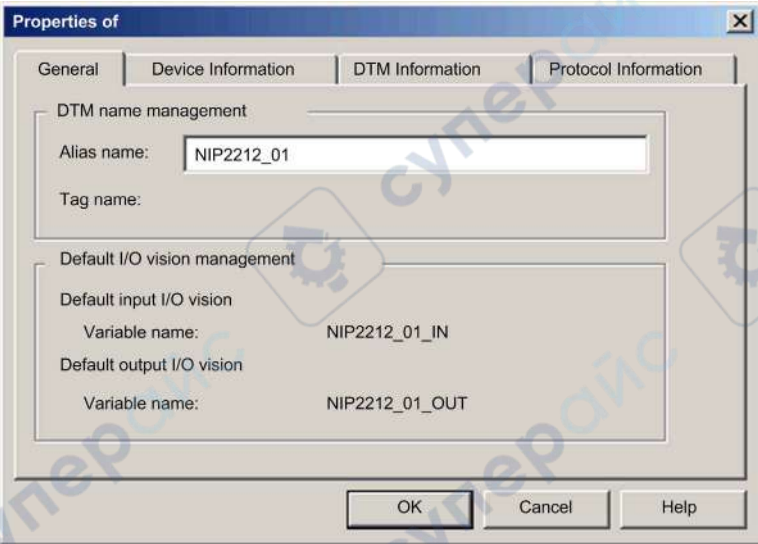
### Overview

Use the generic Modbus DTM selection, in the **Add** dialog, to select and insert an STB NIP 2212 module to your project.

### Adding an STB NIP 2212 Remote Device

To add the STB NIP 2212 to your project, follow these steps:

Step	Action																																				
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the Ethernet communication module node, and then click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens.																																				
2	In the menu, select <b>Add...</b> The following dialog opens:  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Device</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Vendor</th> <th>Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Advanced Generic EDS</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> <td>1.04.0001</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Generic Device</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> <td>1.04.0001</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Generic Device for Explicit Messa...</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> <td>1.04.0001</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Modbus Device</b></td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> <td>1.04.0001</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STBNIC2212 (from EDS)</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Schneider Electric</td> <td>2.10</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TCDEI-888N-D1U (from EDS)</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Molex Incorporated</td> <td>3.4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TCDEI-888N-DYU (from EDS)</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Molex Incorporated</td> <td>3.4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TCDEI-888P-D1U (from EDS)</td> <td>Device</td> <td>Molex Incorporated</td> <td>3.4</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Device	Type	Vendor	Version	Advanced Generic EDS	Device	Schneider Electric	1.04.0001	Generic Device	Device	Schneider Electric	1.04.0001	Generic Device for Explicit Messa...	Device	Schneider Electric	1.04.0001	<b>Modbus Device</b>	Device	Schneider Electric	1.04.0001	STBNIC2212 (from EDS)	Device	Schneider Electric	2.10	TCDEI-888N-D1U (from EDS)	Device	Molex Incorporated	3.4	TCDEI-888N-DYU (from EDS)	Device	Molex Incorporated	3.4	TCDEI-888P-D1U (from EDS)	Device	Molex Incorporated	3.4
Device	Type	Vendor	Version																																		
Advanced Generic EDS	Device	Schneider Electric	1.04.0001																																		
Generic Device	Device	Schneider Electric	1.04.0001																																		
Generic Device for Explicit Messa...	Device	Schneider Electric	1.04.0001																																		
<b>Modbus Device</b>	Device	Schneider Electric	1.04.0001																																		
STBNIC2212 (from EDS)	Device	Schneider Electric	2.10																																		
TCDEI-888N-D1U (from EDS)	Device	Molex Incorporated	3.4																																		
TCDEI-888N-DYU (from EDS)	Device	Molex Incorporated	3.4																																		
TCDEI-888P-D1U (from EDS)	Device	Molex Incorporated	3.4																																		
3	In the <b>Add</b> dialog, select the <b>STBNIP2212</b> , then click <b>Add DTM</b> . The <b>Properties</b> window for the STB NIP 2212 network interface module opens.																																				

Step	Action
4	<p>In the <b>General</b> page of the <b>Properties</b> window, edit the default <b>Alias name</b> to read <b>NIP2212_01</b>:</p>  <p>When you edit the <b>Alias name</b>, Control Expert applies it as the base name for both structure and variable names.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> No additional editing needs to be performed in the pages of this window. Except for the <b>Alias name</b> field, parameters are read-only.</p>
5	<p>Click <b>OK</b>. Control Expert adds the new STB NIP 2212 network interface module to the <b>DTM Browser</b>, beneath the communication module.</p>
6	<p>Refer to the topic <i>Configuring Properties in the Device Editor</i> (<a href="#">see page 57</a>) for instructions on how to save your configuration edits.</p>

The next step is to configure the device you have just added to the project.



## Configuring STB NIP 2212 Properties

### Overview

Use the pages of the **Device Editor** to view and edit settings for a remote device. To edit the device settings, disconnect the DTM from the remote device (*see page 49*).

To display the DTM settings for a remote device, select the device name, which is found under the **Device List** node in the left pane of the **Device Editor**.

For the purposes of this example, which configures an STB NIP 2212 network interface module, select the node named **NIP2212\_01**. The **Device Editor** displays the following pages:

- Properties
- Address Setting
- Request Setting

**NOTE:** Refer to the topic *Configuring Properties in the Device Editor* (*see page 57*) for instructions on how to edit properties.

### Configuring the Properties Page

Use the **Properties** page to:

- add the remote device to, or remove it from, the configuration
- edit the base name for variables and data structures used by the remote device
- indicate how input and output items will be created and edited

The **Properties** page for an STB NIP 2212 network interface module looks like this:

The screenshot shows a configuration window with the following elements:

- Properties** tab selected.
- Properties** section:
  - Number: 004 (dropdown)
  - Active Configuration: Enabled (dropdown)
  - Comment: (text area)
- IO Structure Name** section:
  - Default Name (button)
  - Input** section:
    - Structure Name: T\_NIP2212\_01\_IN
    - Variable Name: NIP2212\_01\_IN
  - Output** section:
    - Structure Name: T\_NIP2212\_01\_OUT
    - Variable Name: NIP2212\_01\_OUT
- Items Management** section:
  - Import Mode: Manual (dropdown)
  - Reimport Items (button)
- Buttons at the bottom: OK, Cancel, Apply.

The following settings are used in this sample configuration. Use settings that are appropriate for your actual application:

Step	Action	
1	In the <b>Properties</b> section of the page, edit the following:	
	Number	The relative position of the device in the list, from 0...127. For this example, accept the default of <b>004</b> .
	Active Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Enabled</b>: adds this device to the Control Expert project configuration</li> <li>● <b>Disabled</b>: removes this device from the Control Expert project configuration</li> </ul> Accept the default setting of <b>Enabled</b> .
2	In the <b>IO Structure Name</b> section of the page, edit the following:	
	Input area:	
	Structure Name	(Read-only) Control Expert automatically assigns a structure name based on the variable name, in this case <b>T_NIP2212_01_IN</b> .
	Variable Name	Accept the auto-generated variable name (based on the alias name ( <i>see page 173</i> )): <b>NIP2212_01_IN</b> .
	Output area:	
	Structure Name	(Read-only) Control Expert automatically assigns a structure name based on the variable name, in this case <b>T_NIP2212_01_OUT</b> .
	Variable Name	Accept the auto-generated variable name (based on the alias name): <b>NIP2212_01_OUT</b> .
	Default Name button	Restores the default variable and structure names. For this example, custom names are used.
3	In the <b>Items Management</b> section of the page, edit the following:	
	Import mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Automatic</b>: I/O items are taken from the device DTM and updated if the items list in the device DTM changes. Items cannot be edited in the <b>Device Editor</b>.</li> <li>● <b>Manual</b>: I/O items are manually added in the <b>Device Editor</b>. The I/O items list is not affected by changes to the device DTM.</li> </ul> In this example, select <b>Manual</b> .
	Reimport Items	Imports the I/O items list from the device DTM, overwriting any manual I/O item edits. Enabled only when <b>Import mode</b> is set to <b>Manual</b> .
4	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your edits, and leave the window open for further edits.	

### Configuring the Address Setting Page

Use the **Address Setting** page to:

- configure the IP address for the remote device
- enable, or disable, DHCP client software for the remote device

When the DHCP client software is enabled in the remote device, it will obtain its IP address from the DHCP server in the Ethernet communication module. The **Address Setting** page looks like this:

The screenshot shows a configuration window with three tabs: "Properties", "Address Setting", and "Request Setting". The "Address Setting" tab is active. It contains two main sections: "Change Address" and "Address Server".

**Change Address:**

- IP Address: 192 . 168 . 1 . 7

**Address Server:**

- DHCP for this device: Enabled (dropdown menu)
- Identified by: Device Name (dropdown menu)
- Identifier: NIP2212\_01
- Subnet Mask: 255 . 255 . 255 . 0
- Gateway: 0 . 0 . 0 . 0

At the bottom of the window are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

The following settings are used in this sample configuration. Use settings that are appropriate for your actual application:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Address Settings</b> page, edit the following:
IP Address	<p>By default:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the first three octet values equal the first three octet values of the Ethernet communication module, and</li> <li>the fourth octet value equals this device Number setting—in this case, 004.</li> </ul> <p>In this example, the IP address is <b>192.169.1.7</b>.</p>
DHCP for this Device	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Enabled</b> activates the DHCP client in this device. The device obtains its IP address from the DHCP service provided by the Ethernet communication module and appears on the auto-generated DHCP client list (<i>see page 82</i>).</li> <li><b>Disabled</b> (the default) de-activates the DHCP client in this device.</li> </ul> <p>Select <b>Enabled</b>.</p>
Identified by	<p>If <b>DHCP for this Device</b> is <b>Enabled</b>, this indicates the device identifier type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>MAC Address</b>, or</li> <li><b>Device Name</b></li> </ul> <p>Select <b>Device Name</b>.</p>
Identifier	<p>If <b>DHCP for this Device</b> is <b>Enabled</b>, the specific device MAC Address or Name value.</p> <p>Type in <b>NIP2212_01</b>.</p>
Mask	<p>The device subnet mask. The default = 255.255.255.0.</p> <p>Accept the default value.</p>
Gateway	<p>The gateway address used to reach this device. The default of 0.0.0.0 indicates this device is located on the same subnet as the Ethernet communication module.</p> <p>Accept the default value.</p>
2	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your edits, and leave the window open for further edits.

The next step is to configure the connection between the communication module and the remote device.

### Configuring the Request Setting Page

Use the **Request Setting** page to add, configure, and remove Modbus requests for the remote device. Each request represents a separate link between the communication module and the remote device.

The **Request Setting** page for an STB NIP 2212 network interface module looks like this:

Connection Bit	Unit ID	Health Time Out	Repetitive Rate	RD Address	RD Length	Last Value	WR Address	WR Length
0	255	1500	60	5391	18	Hold Value	0	5

The **Add Request** function is enabled only when **Import Mode** is set to **Manual**.

The following settings are used in this sample configuration. Use settings that are appropriate for your actual application:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Request Settings</b> page, edit the following:
Connection Bit	<p>(Read-only) The offset for both the health bit and the control bit for this connection. Offset values are auto-generated by the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool—starting at 0—based on the connection type, in the following order:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Modbus TCP connections</li> <li>2. Local Slave connections</li> <li>3. EtherNet/IP connections</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When this Modbus TCP connection is created, the offset values for the previously created local slave and EtherNet/IP connections are incremented by 1; the local slave connection bit is set to 1, and the EtherNet/IP connection bit value is set to 2.</p>
Unit ID	<p>The number of the device, or module, that is the target of the connection. A value of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● 255 (the default) used to access the Ethernet communication module itself</li> <li>● 254 causes no Modbus message to be sent; the module reports an event</li> <li>● 0...253 identifies the device number of the target device, behind a Modbus TCP to Modbus gateway</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When accessing data in the Ethernet communication module itself, use 255. When accessing data in the application running in the PLC, use a value from 0 to 254 (a value of 1 is recommended).</p> <p>Because the remote device itself is the request target, accept the default value of <b>255</b>.</p>
Health Timeout	<p>The maximum allowed period, in milliseconds, between device responses, from 0...120000 ms in increments of 5 ms. When this setting is exceeded, the health timeout bit is set to 1. The default = 1500 ms. Accept the default value of <b>1500</b>.</p>
Repetitive Rate	<p>The data scan rate, from 0...60000 ms, in intervals of 5 ms. The default = 60 ms. Accept the default value of <b>60</b>.</p>
RD Address	<p>Address in the remote device of the input data image. The input data image begins at word 45391. Because there is an offset of 40000 in the M340 platform, type in a value of <b>5391</b>.</p>
RD Length	<p>The number of words in the remote device, from 0...125, that the communication module will read. Because the Modbus device will be configured for 18 words of input items, type in a value of <b>18</b>.</p>
Last Value	<p>The behavior of inputs in the application in the event communication is lost:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Hold Value (the default)</li> <li>● Set To Zero</li> </ul> <p>Accept the default.</p>
WR Address	<p>Address in the remote device of the output data image. The output data image begins at word 40000. Because there is an offset of 40000 in the M340 platform, type in a value of <b>0</b>.</p>

Step	Action	
	WR Length	The number of words in the remote device, from 0 to 120, to which the communication module will write. Because the Modbus device will be configured for 5 words of output items, type in a value of <b>5</b> .
2	Click <b>OK</b> to save your edits, and close the window.	

The next step is to connect the Control Expert project to the Advantys Island.



## Connecting to the Advantys STB Island

### Overview

In this example, you will use the Advantys configuration software running on your PC to:

- connect the Advantys configuration software to the STB NIP 2212 and the 8 I/O modules that comprise the Advantys STB island
- upload Advantys STB island configuration to the Advantys configuration software in your PC
- display a fieldbus image for the Advantys STB island showing the relative location of:
  - input data
  - output data

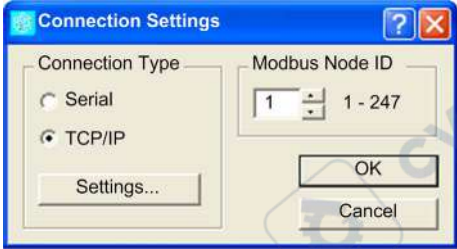
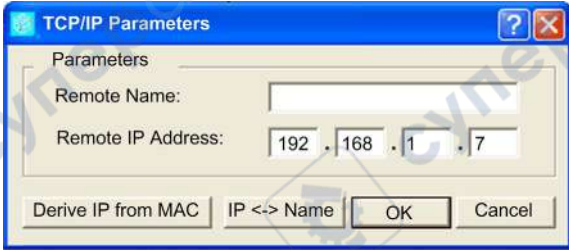
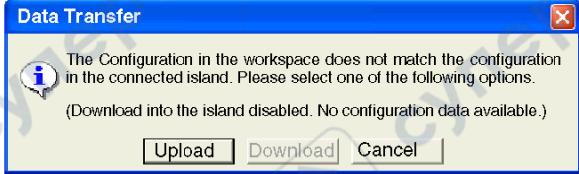
Using the data presented in the fieldbus image, you can use Control Expert to create input and output items that map to specific input, output, and output echo data.

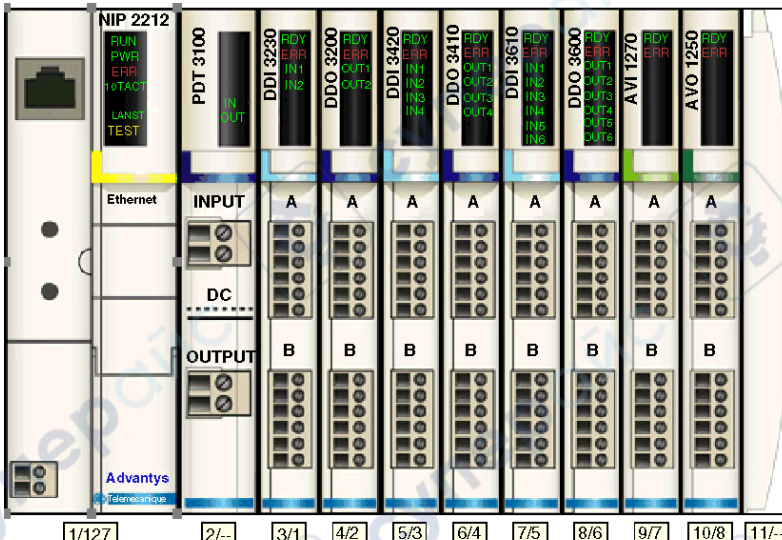
**NOTE:** Before proceeding with the following instructions, confirm that you have auto-configured the Advantys STB island by pressing the **RST** button on the front of the STB NIP 2212 module.

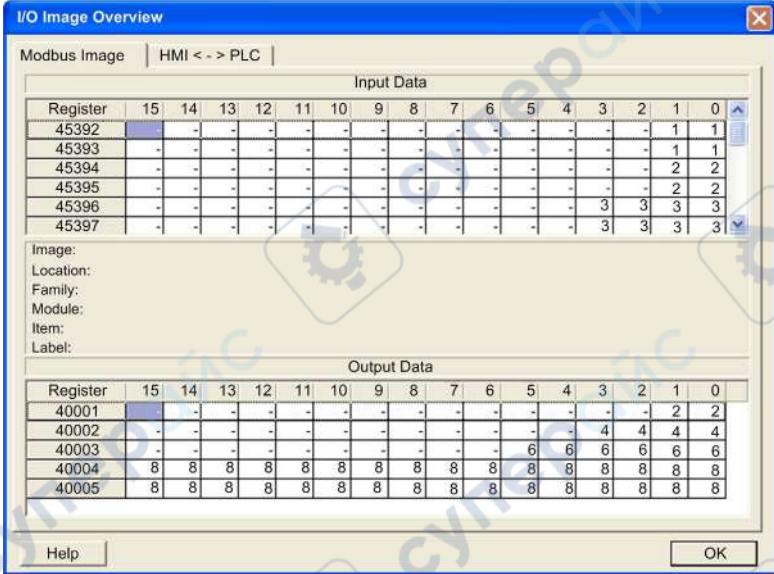
### Making the Connection

To connect to the STB NIP 2212 and I/O modules using the Advantys configuration software:

Step	Action
1	Startup the Advantys configuration software on your PC. A dialog opens displaying available project types.
2	Select <b>STB</b> .
3	Select <b>File</b> → <b>New Workspace</b> . The <b>New Workspace</b> window opens (below).
4	For this example, type in the following field values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● for the field <b>Workspace File</b> type in <b>Advantys</b></li> <li>● for the field <b>Island File</b> type in <b>Advantys_02</b></li> </ul> <div> </div>
5	Click <b>OK</b> . The Advantys configuration software displays an empty DIN rail in the center of the screen.
6	Select <b>Online</b> → <b>Connection Settings</b> . The <b>Connection Settings</b> window opens (below).

Step	Action
7	<p>In the <b>Connection Settings</b> window, accept the <b>Modbus Node ID</b> default setting of <b>1</b>, select <b>TCP/IP</b>, and click the <b>Settings...</b> button:</p>  <p>The <b>TCP/IP Parameters</b> dialog opens (below).</p>
8	<p>In the <b>Remote IP Address</b> field, type in the IP address for the STB NIP 2212, in this example: <b>192.168.1.7</b>.</p> 
9	<p>Click <b>OK</b> to close the <b>TCP/IP Parameters</b> dialog, and click <b>OK</b> again to close the <b>Connection Settings</b> dialog.</p>
10	<p>Select <b>Online</b> → <b>Connect</b>. The <b>Data Transfer</b> dialog opens (below):</p> 

Step	Action
11	<p>Select <b>Upload</b> in the <b>Data Transfer</b> dialog. The island workspace is populated with island data and shows the STB NIP 2212 and the island modules (below):</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> A box appears beneath each module containing one or two integers—for example <b>3/1</b>. These integers serve the following purpose:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The left-side integer (3 in this example) identifies the module's physical position—left to right—among the modules in the rack.</li> <li>• The right-side integer (1 in this example) identifies the module's relative position—left to right—among only data producing/receiving modules. If the module is not a data producing/receiving module (e.g. a power supply, or end of segment module) no right-side integer appears.</li> </ul>

Step	Action
12	<p>Select <b>Island</b> → <b>I/O Image Overview</b>. The <b>I/O Image</b> window opens to the <b>Fieldbus Image</b> page:</p>  <p>Each table cell contains an integer that identifies the relative rack position of a data producing/receiving module with input or output data in that cell. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the STB DDI 3230 input module is the first data producing or receiving module in the rack; its data and status information is indicated by the integer 1 in bits 0...1 of registers 45392 and 45393 in the <b>Input Data</b> table</li> <li>the STB DDO 3600 output module is the sixth data producing module in the rack; its output echo and status data is designated by the integer 6 in bits 0 - 5 of register 45402 and in bits 0 - 5 of register 45403 in the <b>Input Data</b> table; its output data is designated by the integer 6 in bits 0 - 5 of register 40003 in the <b>Output Data</b> table</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select a cell in either the <b>Input Data</b> or <b>Output Data</b> tables to display—in the middle of the page—a description of the cell data and its source module.</li> <li>Convert the size of the <b>Input Data</b> table and the <b>Output Data</b> table from words to bytes (i.e. divide by 2), then use that information when setting the <b>RD Length</b> (inputs) and <b>WR Length</b> (outputs) parameters in the <b>Request Setting</b> page for the remote Modbus TCP device.</li> </ul>

## Configuring I/O Items

### Overview

The next task in this example is to add I/O items to the configuration of the STB NIP 2212 and its 8 I/O modules. To accomplish this:

- use the **Modbus Image** page of the Advantys configuration software to identify the relative position of each I/O module's inputs and outputs
- use the Control Expert **Device Editor** to create input and output items, defining each item's:
  - name
  - data type

**NOTE:** You can manually configure I/O items only when **Input Mode** is set to **Manual**.

### I/O Item Types and Sizes

Because the Modbus TCP network interface module transmits data in the form of 16-bit words, in this example you will create every input and output item using the **WORD** data type. This remains true even if the item contains only a few bits of data. Bit-packing is not permitted when, as in this example, the remote device is a Modbus TCP network interface module.

**NOTE:** When you add more devices to your network, it may be necessary to increase the size and index location of both inputs and outputs for your Control Expert project (*see page 38*).

In this example, the following number and type of items need to be created:

- 18 input words
- 5 output words

### Mapping Input and Output Items

Use the **Fieldbus Image** page of the **I/O Image Overview** window in the Advantys configuration software to identify the number and type of I/O items you need to create, as follows:

Step	Action
1	In the Advantys configuration software, select <b>Island</b> → <b>I/O Image Overview</b> . The <b>I/O Image</b> window opens to the <b>Modbus Image</b> page.
2	Select the cell 0 of the first word (45392) in the <b>Input Data</b> table to display—in the middle of the page—a description of the cell data and its source module.
3	Make a note of the register number and item information for that word.
4	Repeat steps 2 and 3 for each word.

**NOTE:** The Modbus Image presents input and output data in the form of 16-bit words (starting with word 1). You need to maintain this data format as you create input and output items in Control Expert.

**NOTE:** When you create items, align items of data type WORD and DWORD, as follows:

- WORD items: align these items on a 16-bit boundary
- DWORD items: align these items on a 32-bit boundary

This process yields the following tables of input and output data:

Input Data (Read):

Advantys Modbus Image		Control Expert Items		STB Module	Description
Register	Bit(s)	Bytes	Bit(s)		
45392	0-1	0	0-1	DDI 3230	input data
		1	not used		
45393	0-1	2	0-1	DDI 3230	input status
		3	not used		
45394	0-1	4	0-1	DDO 3200	output data echo
		5	not used		
45395	0-1	6	0-1	DDO 3200	output status
		7	not used		
45396	0-3	8	0-3	DDI 3420	input data
		9	not used		
45397	0-3	10	0-3	DDI 3420	input status
		11	not used		
45398	0-3	12	0-3	DDO 3410	output data echo
		13	not used		
45399	0-3	14	0-3	DDO 3410	output status
		15	not used		
45400	0-5	16	0-5	DDI 3610	input data
		17	not used		
45401	0-5	18	0-5	DDI 3610	input status
		19	not used		
45402	0-5	20	0-5	DDO 3600	output data echo
		21	not used		
45403	0-5	22	0-5	DDO 3600	output status
		23	not used		
45404	0-15	24	0-7	AVI 1270	input data ch 1
		25	0-7		
45405	0-7	26	0-7	AVI 1270	input status ch 1
		27	not used		

Advantys Modbus Image		Control Expert Items		STB Module	Description
Register	Bit(s)	Bytes	Bit(s)		
45406	0-15	28	0-7	AVI 1270	input data ch 2
		29	0-7		
45407	0-7	30	0-7	AVI 1270	input status ch 2
		31	not used		
45408	0-7	32	0-7	AVI 1270	output status ch 1
		33	not used		
45409	0-7	34	0-7	AVI 1270	output status ch 2
		35	not used		

Output Data (Write):

Advantys Modbus Image		Control Expert Items		STB Module	Description
Register	Bit(s)	Byte	Bit(s)		
40001	0-1	0	0-1	DDO 3200	output data
		1	not used		
40002	0-3	2	0-3	DDO 3410	output data
		3	not used		
40003	0-5	4	0-5	DDO 3600	output data
		5	not used		
40004	0-15	6	0-7	AVO 1250	output data ch 1
		7	0-7		
40005	0-15	8	0-7	AVO 1250	output data ch 2
		9	0-7		

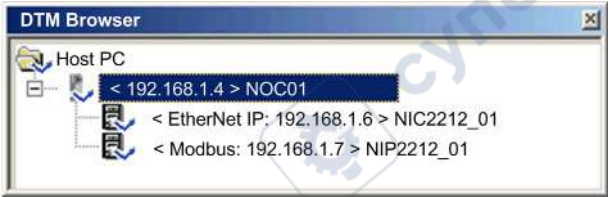
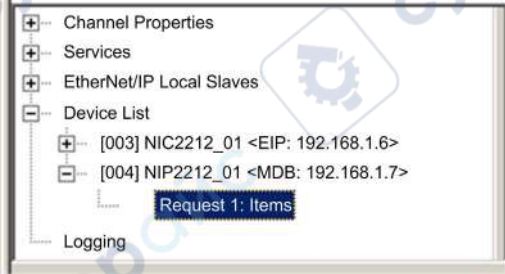
This example shows you how to create 18 words of inputs and 5 words of outputs. This example creates items in the following sequence:

- input word items
- output word items

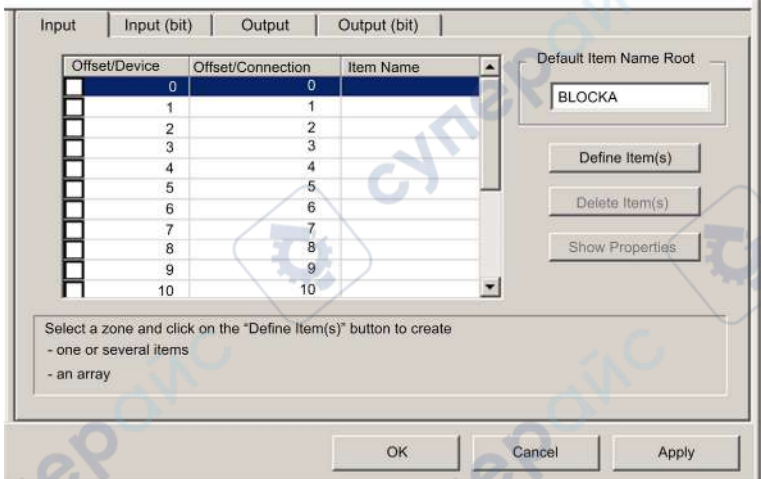
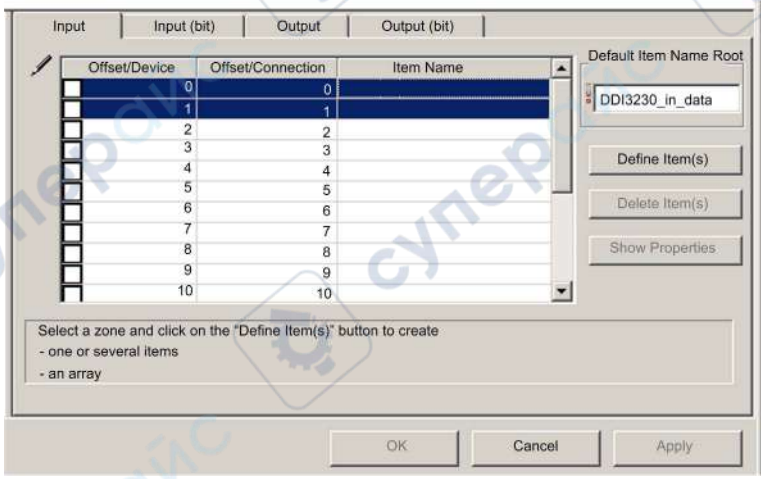


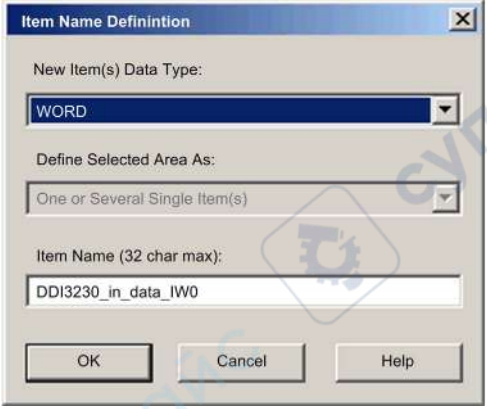
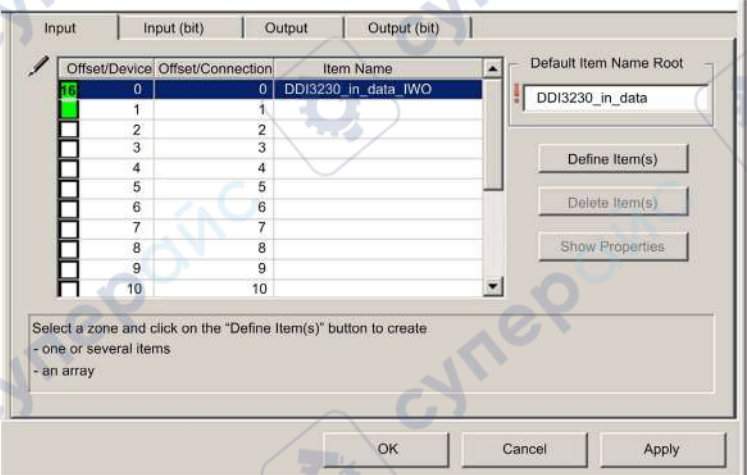
### Creating Input Word Items

To create input items for the STB NIP 2212 example, beginning with an input word for the DDI 3230 input module:

Step	Action
1	<p>In the <b>DTM Browser</b>, select the communication module:</p> 
2	<p>Do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● in the main menu, select <b>Edit → Open</b>, or</li> <li>● click the right mouse button, then select <b>Open</b> in the pop-up menu.</li> </ul> <p>The <b>Device Editor</b> opens, displaying the DTM for the communication module.</p>
3	<p>In the left pane of the <b>Device Editor</b>, navigate to and select the <b>Items</b> node for the STB NIP 2212 network interface module:</p> 



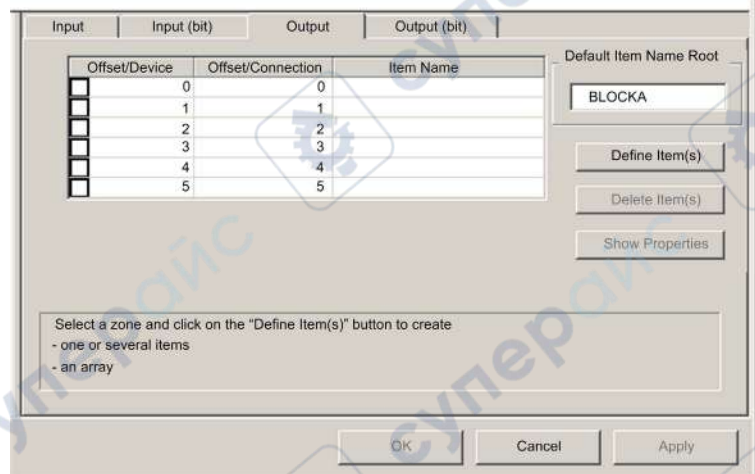
Step	Action
4	<p>Select the <b>Input</b> tab to open that page:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> In this example, each row represents a byte. Because the items you create will be a 16-bit word, each item consists of 2 rows.</p>
5	<p>In the <b>Default Item Name Root</b> input box type: <b>DDI3230_in_data</b>.</p>
6	<p>Starting at the beginning of the table, select the first two rows: 0 and 1:</p> 

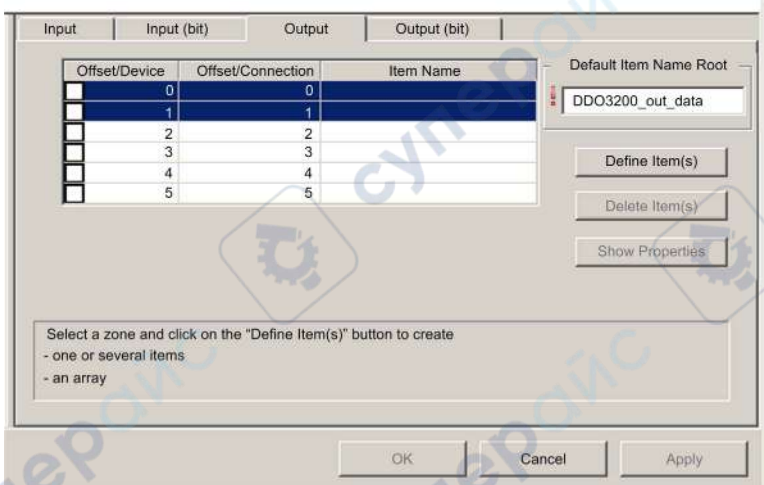
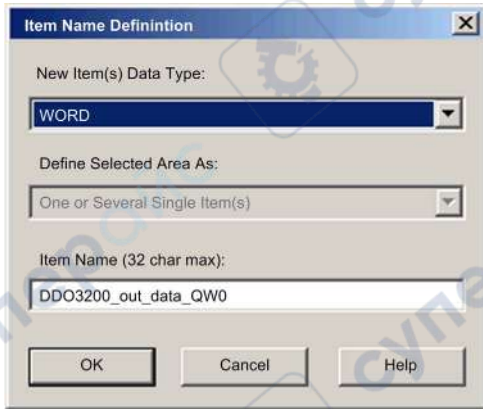
Step	Action																																																												
7	<p>Click the <b>Define Item(s)</b> button. The <b>Item Name Definition</b> dialog opens:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> The <b>Define Item(s)</b> button is enabled only when <b>Input Mode</b> is set to <b>Manual</b>.</p>																																																												
8	<p>Select <b>WORD</b> as the <b>New Item(s) Data Type</b>, then click <b>OK</b>. A new item is created:</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Input</th> <th>Input (bit)</th> <th>Output</th> <th>Output (bit)</th> <th>Item Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td>DDI3230_in_data_IW0</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>2</td> <td>2</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>3</td> <td>3</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>4</td> <td>4</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>5</td> <td>5</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>6</td> <td>6</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>7</td> <td>7</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>8</td> <td>8</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>9</td> <td>9</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>10</td> <td>10</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Select a zone and click on the "Define Item(s)" button to create                      - one or several items                      - an array</p>	Input	Input (bit)	Output	Output (bit)	Item Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	0		DDI3230_in_data_IW0	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	1			<input type="checkbox"/>	2	2			<input type="checkbox"/>	3	3			<input type="checkbox"/>	4	4			<input type="checkbox"/>	5	5			<input type="checkbox"/>	6	6			<input type="checkbox"/>	7	7			<input type="checkbox"/>	8	8			<input type="checkbox"/>	9	9			<input type="checkbox"/>	10	10		
Input	Input (bit)	Output	Output (bit)	Item Name																																																									
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	0		DDI3230_in_data_IW0																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	1																																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	2																																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	3																																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	4																																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	5																																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	6																																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	7																																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	8																																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	9																																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	10																																																											
9	<p>Click <b>Apply</b> to save the new items, and leave the page open.</p>																																																												

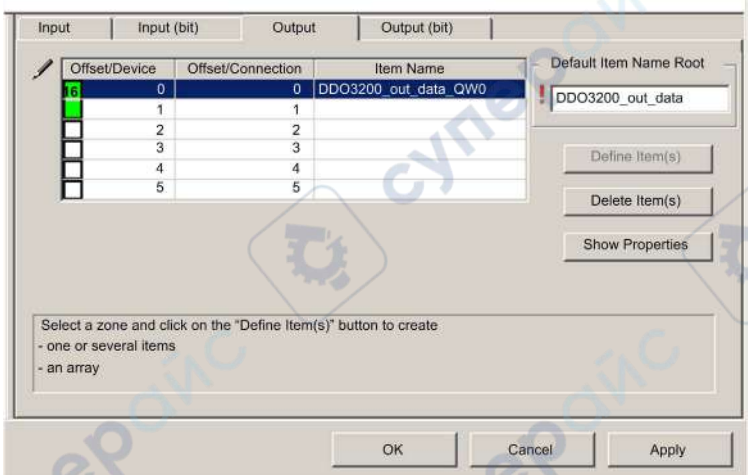
Step	Action
10	<p>Repeat steps 2 - 6 for each new word item you need to create. In this example, that includes the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Rows 2-3: Default Items Name Root: DDI3230_in_st</li> <li>● Rows 4-5: Default Items Name Root: DDO3200_out_echo</li> <li>● Rows 6-7: Default Items Name Root: DDO3200_out_st</li> <li>● Rows 8-9: Default Items Name Root: DDI3420_in_data</li> <li>● Rows 10-11: Default Items Name Root: DDI3420_in_st</li> <li>● Rows 12-13: Default Items Name Root: DDO3410_out_echo</li> <li>● Rows 14-15: Default Items Name Root: DDO3410_out_st</li> <li>● Rows 16-17: Default Items Name Root: DDI3610_in_data</li> <li>● Rows 18-19: Default Items Name Root: DDI3610_in_st</li> <li>● Rows 20-21: Default Items Name Root: DDO3600_out_echo</li> <li>● Rows 22-23: Default Items Name Root: DDO3600_out_st</li> <li>● Rows 24-25: Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH1_in_data</li> <li>● Rows 26-27: Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH1_in_st</li> <li>● Rows 28-29: Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH2_in_data</li> <li>● Rows 30-31: Default Items Name Root: AVI1270_CH2_in_st</li> <li>● Rows 32-33: Default Items Name Root: AVO1250_CH1_out_st</li> <li>● Rows 34-35: Default Items Name Root: AVO1250_CH2_out_st</li> </ul>
11	The next task is to create output words.

### Creating Output Word Items

To create output items for the STB NIP 2212, example, beginning with an output data word for the DDO 3200 output module:

Step	Action
1	<p>Click on the <b>Output</b> tab to open the following page:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> In this example, each row represents a byte. Because the items you create will be a 16-bit word, each item consists of 2 rows.</p>
2	In the <b>Default Item Name Root</b> input box type: <b>DDO3200_out_data</b> .

Step	Action
3	<p>Starting at the beginning of the table, select the first 2 rows, 0 and 1:</p>  <p>Select a zone and click on the "Define Item(s)" button to create</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- one or several items</li> <li>- an array</li> </ul>
4	<p>Click the <b>Define Item(s)</b> button. The <b>Item Name Definition</b> dialog opens:</p>  <p><b>NOTE:</b> The <b>Define Item(s)</b> button is enabled only when <b>Input Mode</b> is set to <b>Manual</b>.</p>

Step	Action
5	<p>Select <b>WORD</b> as the <b>New Item(s) Data Type</b>, then click <b>OK</b>. A new item is created:</p> 
6	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the new item and leave the page open.
7	<p>Repeat steps 2 - 6 for each new word item you need to create. In this example, that includes the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Rows 2-3, Default Items Name Root: DDO3410_out_data</li> <li>● Rows 4-5: Default Items Name Root: DDO3600_out_data</li> <li>● Rows 6-7: Default Items Name Root: AVO1250_CH1_out_data</li> <li>● Rows 8-9: Default Items Name Root: AVO1250_CH2_out_data</li> </ul>
8	Click <b>OK</b> to close the <b>Items</b> window.
9	Select <b>File</b> → <b>Save</b> to save your edits.

The next task is to update the Control Expert application (see *Quantum using EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet Communication Module, User Manual*).

---

# Chapter 4

## Working With Derived Data Types

---

### Overview

This chapter describes how to complete your project by creating, updating, and viewing derived data type (DDT) variables in Control Expert.

### What Is in This Chapter?

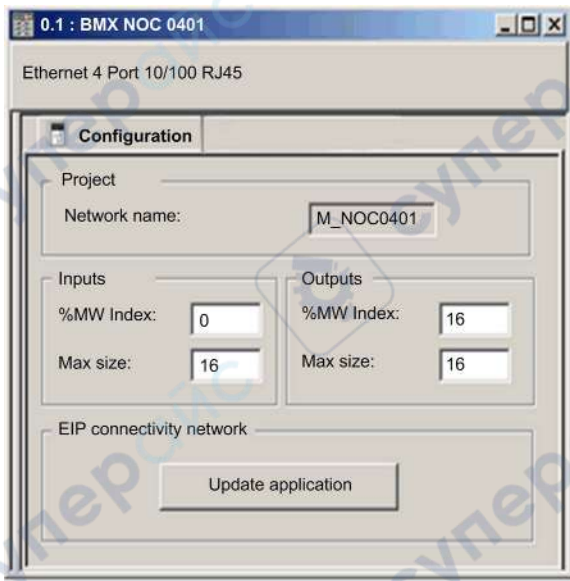
This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Creating and Updating Derived Data Types	198
Working with Derived Data Type Variables	200
Effect of Activating and De-activating Devices on I/O %MW Memory Addresses	209

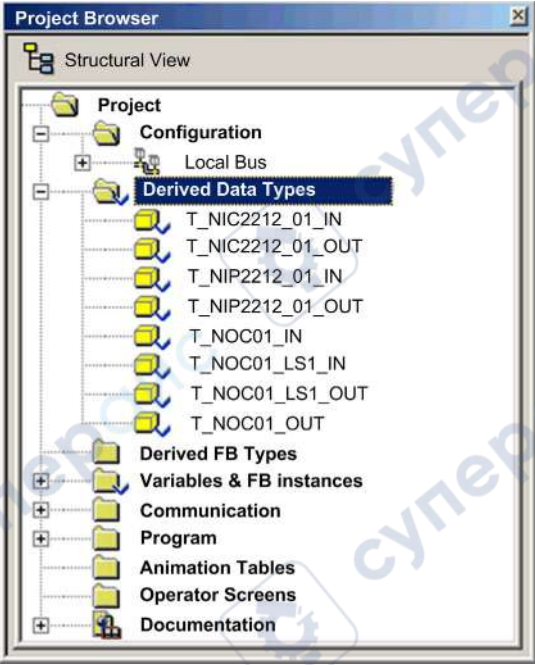
## Creating and Updating Derived Data Types

### Creating or Updating Derived Data Types

After you have completed your edits in the **Device Editor**, the next step is to let Control Expert create the necessary program objects—in the form of derived data types (DDTs) and variables—that will support your network design. To do this, follow these steps:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Project Browser</b> , navigate to and select the communication module.
2	<p>Do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• click the right mouse button, and select <b>Open</b> in the pop-up menu, or</li> <li>• in the <b>Edit</b> menu, select <b>Open</b>.</li> </ul> <p>The <b>Configuration</b> page of the Ethernet communication module opens, below:</p> 
3	<p>Click the <b>Update application</b> button.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Every time you use the <b>Device Editor</b> to make changes to your Control Expert project, return to this screen and click the <b>Update application</b> button to save your edits.</li> <li>• Control Expert refreshes the collection of DDTs and variables—by adding, editing, or deleting previously generated DDTs and variables—each time you: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ click on the <b>Update application</b> button, above, or</li> <li>○ select either <b>Build</b> → <b>Build Changes</b> or <b>Build</b> → <b>Rebuild All Project</b></li> </ul> </li> </ul>



Step	Action
4	<p>Click <b>OK</b>. The <b>Project Browser</b> displays the new or edited derived data types, below:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the Project Browser window with the Structural View. The 'Project' folder is expanded to show 'Configuration', 'Local Bus', and 'Derived Data Types'. The 'Derived Data Types' folder is selected and expanded, displaying a list of data types: T_NIC2212_01_IN, T_NIC2212_01_OUT, T_NIP2212_01_IN, T_NIP2212_01_OUT, T_NOC01_IN, T_NOC01_LS1_IN, T_NOC01_LS1_OUT, and T_NOC01_OUT. Below this list are folders for 'Derived FB Types', 'Variables &amp; FB instances', 'Communication', 'Program', 'Animation Tables', 'Operator Screens', and 'Documentation'.</p>

## Working with Derived Data Type Variables

### Derived Data Type Variables

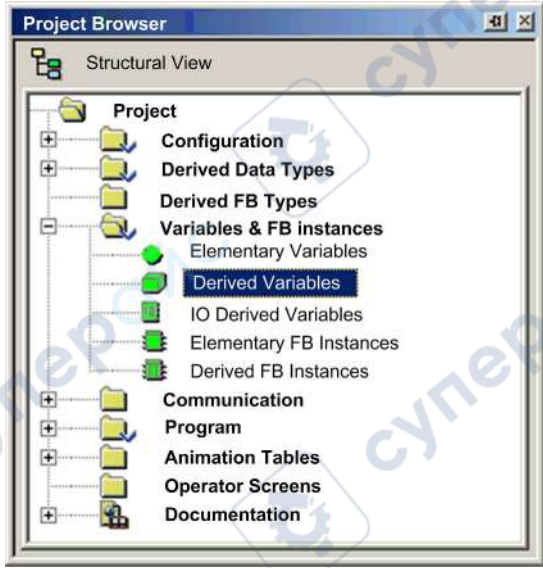
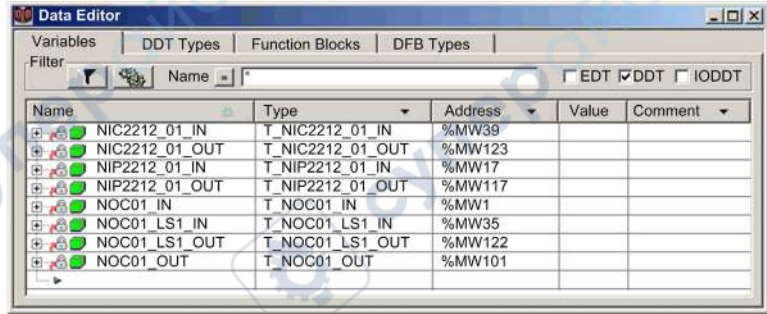
When you click on the **Update application** button, Control Expert creates a collection of derived data types and variables. These are used by Control Expert to support communication and data transfer between the PLC and the various local slaves, remote devices, and their I/O items. You can access these derived data types and variables in the Control Expert **Data Editor** and add them to a user-defined **Animation Table**, where you can monitor read-only variables and edit read-write variables.

Use these data types and variables to:

- view the status of connections from the communication module to remote EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP devices, where:
    - the status of connections is displayed in the form of a HEALTH\_BITS array consisting of 32 bytes
    - each connection is represented by a single bit in the array
    - a bit value of 1 indicates the connection is healthy
    - a bit value of 0 indicates the connection is lost, or the communication module can no longer communicate with the remote device
  - toggle a connection ON (1) or OFF (0) by writing to a selected bit in a 32 byte CONTROL\_BITS array
- NOTE:** Distinguish between toggling a bit in the CONTROL\_BITS array on or off, and enabling or disabling a remote device.
- monitor the value of local slave and remote device input and output items you created in the Control Expert **Device Editor**

## Identifying Derived Variables in the Data Editor

To view your Control Expert application's derived data type variables:

Step	Description																																													
1	<p>In the <b>Project Browser</b>, navigate to and double-click the left mouse button on <b>Variables &amp; FB instances</b> → <b>Derived Variables</b>:</p> 																																													
2	<p>The <b>Data Editor</b> opens, displaying the <b>Variables</b> page:</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Address</th> <th>Value</th> <th>Comment</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NIC2212_01_IN</td> <td>T_NIC2212_01_IN</td> <td>%MW39</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NIC2212_01_OUT</td> <td>T_NIC2212_01_OUT</td> <td>%MW123</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NIP2212_01_IN</td> <td>T_NIP2212_01_IN</td> <td>%MW17</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NIP2212_01_OUT</td> <td>T_NIP2212_01_OUT</td> <td>%MW117</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NOC01_IN</td> <td>T_NOC01_IN</td> <td>%MW1</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NOC01_LS1_IN</td> <td>T_NOC01_LS1_IN</td> <td>%MW35</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NOC01_LS1_OUT</td> <td>T_NOC01_LS1_OUT</td> <td>%MW122</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NOC01_OUT</td> <td>T_NOC01_OUT</td> <td>%MW101</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A check mark appears in the <b>DDT</b> checkbox. (If not, select the <b>DDT</b> checkbox to display these variables.)</li> <li>• The red arrow and lock icons indicate the variable name was auto-generated by Control Expert based on the configuration of the local slave or remote device and cannot be edited.</li> </ul>	Name	Type	Address	Value	Comment	NIC2212_01_IN	T_NIC2212_01_IN	%MW39			NIC2212_01_OUT	T_NIC2212_01_OUT	%MW123			NIP2212_01_IN	T_NIP2212_01_IN	%MW17			NIP2212_01_OUT	T_NIP2212_01_OUT	%MW117			NOC01_IN	T_NOC01_IN	%MW1			NOC01_LS1_IN	T_NOC01_LS1_IN	%MW35			NOC01_LS1_OUT	T_NOC01_LS1_OUT	%MW122			NOC01_OUT	T_NOC01_OUT	%MW101		
Name	Type	Address	Value	Comment																																										
NIC2212_01_IN	T_NIC2212_01_IN	%MW39																																												
NIC2212_01_OUT	T_NIC2212_01_OUT	%MW123																																												
NIP2212_01_IN	T_NIP2212_01_IN	%MW17																																												
NIP2212_01_OUT	T_NIP2212_01_OUT	%MW117																																												
NOC01_IN	T_NOC01_IN	%MW1																																												
NOC01_LS1_IN	T_NOC01_LS1_IN	%MW35																																												
NOC01_LS1_OUT	T_NOC01_LS1_OUT	%MW122																																												
NOC01_OUT	T_NOC01_OUT	%MW101																																												

## Displaying the Order of Input and Output Items in PLC Memory

The **Data Editor** displays the address of each input and output variable. Click once on the **Address** column header to sort input and output addresses in ascending order. When you open the first input and output variables, you can see both the connection health bits and the connection control bits:

Name	Type	Address	Value	Comment
NOC01_IN	T_NOC01_IN	%MW1		
HEALTH BITS IN	ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE	%MW1		
NIP2212_01_IN	T_NIP2212_01_IN	%MW17		
NOC01_LS1_IN	T_NOC01_LS1_IN	%MW35		
NIC2212_01_IN	T_NIC2212_01_IN	%MW39		
NOC01_OUT	T_NOC01_OUT	%MW101		
CONTROL BITS OUT	ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE	%MW101		
NIP2212_01_OUT	T_NIP2212_01_OUT	%MW117		
NOC01_LS1_OUT	T_NOC01_LS1_OUT	%MW122		
NIC2212_01_OUT	T_NIC2212_01_OUT	%MW123		

Note the order of inputs and outputs in the above example. Recall that the user defines the size and location of inputs and outputs (*see page 38*). However, within the reserved area for both inputs and outputs, Control Expert assigns addresses to variables in the following order:

Inputs	Order	Outputs
Health bits <sup>1</sup>	1	Control bits <sup>1</sup>
Modbus TCP input variables <sup>2</sup>	2	Modbus TCP output variables <sup>2</sup>
Local Slave input variables <sup>3</sup>	3	Local Slave output variables <sup>3</sup>
EtherNet/IP input variables <sup>2</sup>	4	EtherNet/IP output variables <sup>2</sup>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Health and control bits are sub-ordered as follows:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. by device type: a. Modbus TCP; b. local slave; c. EtherNet/IP</li> <li>ii. within each device type:                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. by device or local slave number</li> <li>b. within a device: by connection number</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Device variables are sub-ordered as follows:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. by device number</li> <li>ii. within a device: by connection number</li> <li>iii. within a connection: by item offset</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Local slave variables are sub-ordered as follows:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. by local slave number</li> <li>ii. within each local slave: by item offset</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

**NOTE:** When a device is added to or removed from the project, or when the active status of an existing device or a local slave changes, the specific location of inputs and outputs in PLC memory also changes.

## Identifying the Connection Health Bits

The Ethernet communication module can support up to 128 connections to remote devices. The health of each connection is represented in a single bit value. A health bit value of:

- 1 indicates the connection is active
- 0 indicates the connection is inactive

The health bits are contained in a 32-byte array in the **Variables** page of the **Data Editor**. To display offline this byte array, first sort the variables in ascending order of address, then open the first input variable as shown below:

Name	Type	Address	Value	Comment
NOC01_IN	T NOC01_IN	%MW1		
HEALTH_BITS_IN	ARRAY[0..31]OF BYTE	%MW1		
HEALTH_BITS_IN[0]	BYTE	%MW1		
HEALTH_BITS_IN[1]	BYTE	%MW1		
HEALTH_BITS_IN[2]	BYTE	%MW2		
HEALTH_BITS_IN[3]	BYTE	%MW2		
HEALTH_BITS_IN[4]	BYTE	%MW3		
HEALTH_BITS_IN[5]	BYTE	%MW3		
HEALTH_BITS_IN[6]	BYTE	%MW4		
HEALTH_BITS_IN[7]	BYTE	%MW4		
HEALTH_BITS_IN[7]	BYTE	%MW5		

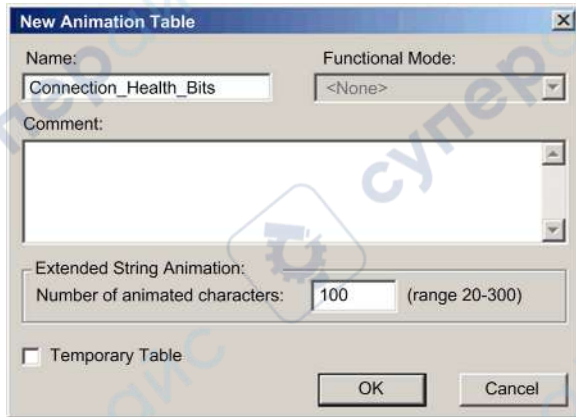

To determine which health bit is mapped to a specific remote device connection, in the **Device Editor** for the Ethernet communications

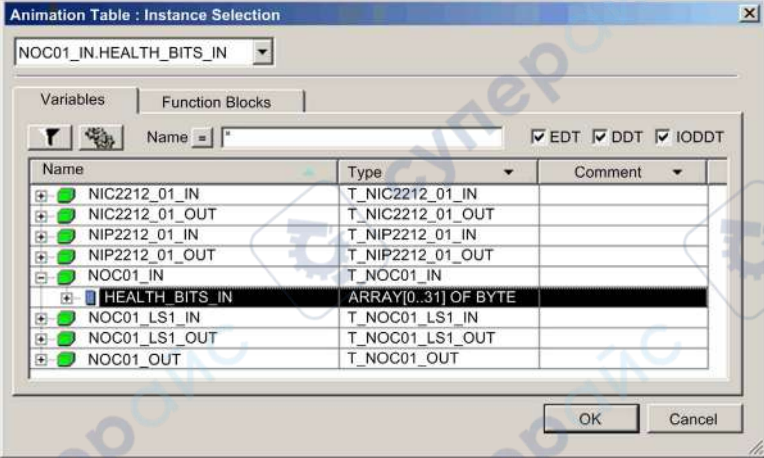
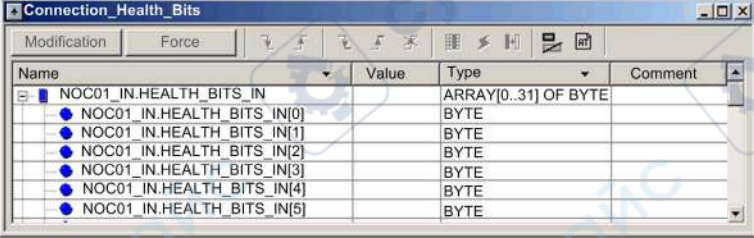
Step	Action																		
1	In the <b>Device Editor</b> for the Ethernet communication module, under the <b>Device List</b> node, navigate to and select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• for Modbus TCP devices: the main device node</li> <li>• for EtherNet/IP devices: a connection node</li> </ul>																		
2	For a Modbus TCP device, open the <b>Request Setting</b> page and look for the <b>Connection Bit</b> number: <div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Connection Bit</th> <th>Unit ID</th> <th>Health Time Out</th> <th>Repetitive Rate</th> <th>RD Address</th> <th>RD Length</th> <th>Last Value</th> <th>WR Address</th> <th>WR Length</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>255</td> <td>1500</td> <td>60</td> <td>5392</td> <td>18</td> <td>Hold Value</td> <td>1</td> <td>5</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>In the above example (which displays the left portion of a truncated <b>Request Setting</b> page), the <b>Connection Bit</b> value of 0 maps to the first bit in the first byte of the <b>HEALTH_BITS_IN</b> array, which can be represented as <code>HEALTH_BITS_IN[0].0</code>.</p>	Connection Bit	Unit ID	Health Time Out	Repetitive Rate	RD Address	RD Length	Last Value	WR Address	WR Length	0	255	1500	60	5392	18	Hold Value	1	5
Connection Bit	Unit ID	Health Time Out	Repetitive Rate	RD Address	RD Length	Last Value	WR Address	WR Length											
0	255	1500	60	5392	18	Hold Value	1	5											
3	For an EtherNet/IP device, open the <b>Connection Settings</b> page and look for the <b>Connection Bit</b> number: <div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter</th> <th>Value</th> <th>Unit</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Connection Bit</td> <td>2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Request Packet Interval (RPI)</td> <td>30</td> <td>ms</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Time-out Multiplier</td> <td>x4</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>In the above example, the <b>Connection Bit</b> value of 2 maps to the third bit in the first byte of the <b>HEALTH_BITS_IN</b> array, which can be represented as <code>HEALTH_BITS_IN[0].2</code>.</p>	Parameter	Value	Unit	Connection Bit	2		Request Packet Interval (RPI)	30	ms	Time-out Multiplier	x4							
Parameter	Value	Unit																	
Connection Bit	2																		
Request Packet Interval (RPI)	30	ms																	
Time-out Multiplier	x4																		
4	For a local slave, open the local slave configuration page ( <i>see page 113</i> ) and look for the <b>Connection Bit</b> number:																		



### Monitoring Connection Health Bits in an Animation Table

Use an animation table to monitor the status of connection health bits and other variables. To add health bits to an animation table, follow these steps:

Step	Action				
1	In the <b>Project Browser</b> , select the <b>Animation Tables</b> node and click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens.				
2	Select <b>New Animation Table</b> .				
3	In the <b>New Animation Table</b> dialog, type in values for the following fields: <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Name</td> <td>Type in a name for the new animation table. In this example, type in <b>Connection_Health_Bits</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Number of animated characters</td> <td>Accept the default value of <b>100</b>.</td> </tr> </table> <p>The completed dialog looks like this:</p> 	Name	Type in a name for the new animation table. In this example, type in <b>Connection_Health_Bits</b> .	Number of animated characters	Accept the default value of <b>100</b> .
Name	Type in a name for the new animation table. In this example, type in <b>Connection_Health_Bits</b> .				
Number of animated characters	Accept the default value of <b>100</b> .				
4	Click <b>OK</b> . The dialog closes and the new <b>Connection_Health_Bits</b> animation table opens.				
5	Double-click on the first empty row in the <b>Name</b> column, then click the ellipsis button  . The <b>Instance Selection</b> dialog opens.				

Step	Action																																
6	<p>In the <b>Instance Selection</b> dialog, navigate to and select the entire <code>HEALTH_BITS_IN</code> array:</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Comment</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>NIC2212_01_IN</td><td>T_NIC2212_01_IN</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NIC2212_01_OUT</td><td>T_NIC2212_01_OUT</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NIP2212_01_IN</td><td>T_NIP2212_01_IN</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NIP2212_01_OUT</td><td>T_NIP2212_01_OUT</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_IN</td><td>T_NOC01_IN</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td><b>HEALTH_BITS_IN</b></td><td><b>ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE</b></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_LS1_IN</td><td>T_NOC01_LS1_IN</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_LS1_OUT</td><td>T_NOC01_LS1_OUT</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_OUT</td><td>T_NOC01_OUT</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Name	Type	Comment	NIC2212_01_IN	T_NIC2212_01_IN		NIC2212_01_OUT	T_NIC2212_01_OUT		NIP2212_01_IN	T_NIP2212_01_IN		NIP2212_01_OUT	T_NIP2212_01_OUT		NOC01_IN	T_NOC01_IN		<b>HEALTH_BITS_IN</b>	<b>ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE</b>		NOC01_LS1_IN	T_NOC01_LS1_IN		NOC01_LS1_OUT	T_NOC01_LS1_OUT		NOC01_OUT	T_NOC01_OUT			
Name	Type	Comment																															
NIC2212_01_IN	T_NIC2212_01_IN																																
NIC2212_01_OUT	T_NIC2212_01_OUT																																
NIP2212_01_IN	T_NIP2212_01_IN																																
NIP2212_01_OUT	T_NIP2212_01_OUT																																
NOC01_IN	T_NOC01_IN																																
<b>HEALTH_BITS_IN</b>	<b>ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE</b>																																
NOC01_LS1_IN	T_NOC01_LS1_IN																																
NOC01_LS1_OUT	T_NOC01_LS1_OUT																																
NOC01_OUT	T_NOC01_OUT																																
7	<p>Click <b>OK</b> to add the array to the <b>Connection_Health_Bits</b> animation table:</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Value</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Comment</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN</td><td></td><td>ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[0]</td><td></td><td>BYTE</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[1]</td><td></td><td>BYTE</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[2]</td><td></td><td>BYTE</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[3]</td><td></td><td>BYTE</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[4]</td><td></td><td>BYTE</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[5]</td><td></td><td>BYTE</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Keep in mind that each row represents a byte, which contains eight individual connection health bits. When the DTM for the Ethernet communication module is connected to the physical module, the <b>Value</b> field displays a value for the entire byte.</p>	Name	Value	Type	Comment	NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN		ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE		NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[0]		BYTE		NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[1]		BYTE		NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[2]		BYTE		NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[3]		BYTE		NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[4]		BYTE		NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[5]		BYTE	
Name	Value	Type	Comment																														
NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN		ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE																															
NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[0]		BYTE																															
NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[1]		BYTE																															
NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[2]		BYTE																															
NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[3]		BYTE																															
NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[4]		BYTE																															
NOC01_IN.HEALTH_BITS_IN[5]		BYTE																															




## Modifying Connection Control Bits in an Animation Table

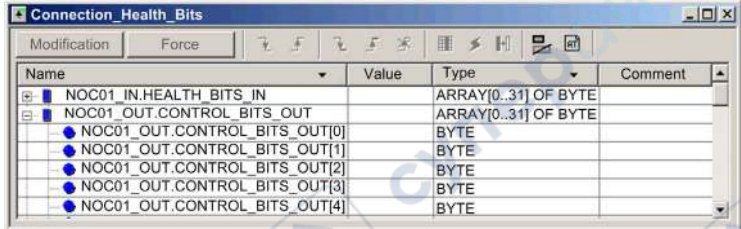
You can also use an animation table to modify the value of a control bit, toggling it on or off.

**NOTE:** Using control bits to toggle a connection on or off (as described below) is the preferred way of regulating communication with a remote device. Toggling a connection control bit on and off does not affect the address location of I/O items. In either case—on or off—the I/O items remain a part of the configuration at the same address locations.

By contrast, enabling and disabling the **Active Configuration** property for a device or local slave either adds I/O items to, or removes I/O items from, the application. This has the rippling effect of changing the addresses not only for the items of the enabled/disabled device, but also for I/O items relating to other devices in the configuration.

The following example shows you how to add connection control bits to the **Connection\_Health\_Bits** animation table that you created, above, and use the animation table's **Modification** function to toggle control bits on or off:

Step	Action																														
1	With the <b>Connection_Health_Bits</b> animation table open, double-click on the next empty row in the <b>Name</b> column, then click the ellipsis button  . The <b>Instance Selection</b> dialog opens.																														
2	In the <b>Instance Selection</b> dialog, navigate to and select the entire <b>CONTROL_BITS_OUT</b> array: <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Animation Table : Instance Selection</p> <p>NOC01_OUT.CONTROL_BITS_OUT</p> <p>Variables    Function Blocks</p> <p>Name    <input type="checkbox"/> EDIT   <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DDT   <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IODDT</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Comment</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>NIC2212_01_IN</td><td>T_NIC2212_01_IN</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NIC2212_01_OUT</td><td>T_NIC2212_01_OUT</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NIP2212_01_IN</td><td>T_NIP2212_01_IN</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NIP2212_01_OUT</td><td>T_NIP2212_01_OUT</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_IN</td><td>T_NOC01_IN</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_LS1_IN</td><td>T_NOC01_LS1_IN</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_LS1_OUT</td><td>T_NOC01_LS1_OUT</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>NOC01_OUT</td><td>T_NOC01_OUT</td><td></td></tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0e0e0;"><td>CONTROL_BITS_OUT</td><td>ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>OK    Cancel</p> </div>	Name	Type	Comment	NIC2212_01_IN	T_NIC2212_01_IN		NIC2212_01_OUT	T_NIC2212_01_OUT		NIP2212_01_IN	T_NIP2212_01_IN		NIP2212_01_OUT	T_NIP2212_01_OUT		NOC01_IN	T_NOC01_IN		NOC01_LS1_IN	T_NOC01_LS1_IN		NOC01_LS1_OUT	T_NOC01_LS1_OUT		NOC01_OUT	T_NOC01_OUT		CONTROL_BITS_OUT	ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE	
Name	Type	Comment																													
NIC2212_01_IN	T_NIC2212_01_IN																														
NIC2212_01_OUT	T_NIC2212_01_OUT																														
NIP2212_01_IN	T_NIP2212_01_IN																														
NIP2212_01_OUT	T_NIP2212_01_OUT																														
NOC01_IN	T_NOC01_IN																														
NOC01_LS1_IN	T_NOC01_LS1_IN																														
NOC01_LS1_OUT	T_NOC01_LS1_OUT																														
NOC01_OUT	T_NOC01_OUT																														
CONTROL_BITS_OUT	ARRAY[0..31] OF BYTE																														

Step	Action
3	<p>Click <b>OK</b> to add the control bit array to the <b>Connection_Health_Bits</b> animation table:</p>  <p>Keep in mind that each row represents a byte, which contains eight individual connection control bits. When the DTM for the Ethernet communication module is connected to the physical module, the <b>Value</b> field displays a value for the entire byte.</p>
4	<p>With the DTM for the Ethernet communication module connected to the physical module, double click in the <b>Value</b> column for the row (byte) that contains the control bit you want to toggle.</p>
5	<p>Type a value that toggles the bit (or bits) in the byte you want to change to on or off. For example, suppose the <b>Value</b> field of the control bit displays an initial value of <b>7</b>. This indicates that the first three (0, 1, and 2) are not established. If you intend to establish the third connection (connection 2), modify the corresponding bit to 0 (type a value of <b>3</b>).</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When the control bit is 0, the connection is established. When the control bit is 1, the connection is closed.</p>
6	<p>On your keyboard, press <b>Enter</b>. The control bit for the third connection (i.e. connection number 2) is toggled off.</p>

## Effect of Activating and De-activating Devices on I/O %MW Memory Addresses

### Introduction

Control Expert assigns a located address in %MW memory to each input and output variable for a remote device and local slave, when that device or slave is activated.

In addition, Control Expert removes from %MW memory each located variable address whenever the related device or slave is de-activated.

In each case, because of the ordered structure of I/O items in PLC memory (*see page 202*), the activation and de-activation of a single device causes a rippling effect on the address locations of other I/O variables throughout the application.

Because activating and de-activating devices can cause substantial changes to located variable addresses, Schneider Electric recommends the following practices:

- Activate every device and local slave your application is likely to use, and allow these devices to remain activated.
- If it subsequently becomes necessary to disable communications to a device or slave, instead of de-activating it, use the appropriate control bits to toggle off all connections to that slave or device (*see page 207*).
- When configuring function blocks in Control Expert, instead of directly reassigning input and output pins to a specific %MW address, do the following: assign specific input and output pins only to the derived data types and variables automatically created by Control Expert.

### The Sample Network

The sample network is a part of the same physical network that has been the subject of our continuing configuration example, and includes:

- the Ethernet communication module, named NOC01
- an STB NIC 2212 EtherNet/IP network interface module with I/O modules, named NIC2212\_01

Note that, when a new network is created, Control Expert presents three local slave nodes that can be activated and pre-assigns them device numbers 000, 001, and 002. By default, each local slave is not activated. Therefore, each local slave's inputs and outputs are not initially assigned a %MW memory address.

The following example describes the effect of activating a local slave function after another remote device has already been configured and added to the network. In this ca

The sample Ethernet network has been configured as follows:

- Total network inputs and outputs are set in the **Configuration** page of the Ethernet communication module in Control Expert:
  - 100 input words are reserved, beginning at %MW01
  - 100 output words are reserved, beginning at %MW101
- Connection bits for the project include:
  - 32 input bytes (16 words) for health bits with an instance name of NOC01\_IN
  - 32 output bytes (16 words) for control bits with an instance name of NOC01\_OUT

- Local slave inputs and outputs include:
  - 8 input bytes (4 words) are reserved with an instance name of NOC01\_LS1\_IN
  - 4 output bytes (2 words) are reserved with an instance name of NOC01\_LS1\_OUT
- Remote EtherNet/IP device inputs and outputs include:
  - 19 input bytes (10 words) are reserved with an instance name of NIC2212\_01\_IN
  - 8 output bytes (4 words) are reserved with an instance name of NIC2212\_01\_OUT

### I/O Assignment Without an Activated Local Slave

When you click the **Update application** button in the Ethernet communication module **Configuration** page, with the local slave de-activated, Control Expert auto-generates a collection of variables in support of the application's I/O items at the following instance locations:

Name	Type	Address	Value	Comment
NOC01_IN	T_NOC01_IN	%MW1		
NIC2212_01_IN	T_NIC2212_01_IN	%MW17		
NOC01_OUT	T_NOC01_OUT	%MW101		
NIC2212_01_OUT	T_NIC2212_01_OUT	%MW117		

Note the address locations of the remote EtherNet/IP device's inputs (%MW17) and outputs (%MW117). As you will see, below, when the local slave is activated, these address locations will change.

### I/O Assignment With an Activated Local Slave

The following example displays input and output variables for the same project. However, in this example the **Active Configuration** setting for the first local slave was set to **Enabled** in the local slave configuration page (*see page 115*), before the input and output variables were created. As a result clicking the **Update application** button in the Ethernet communication module **Configuration** page generated the following collection of variables:

Name	Type	Address	Value	Comment
NOC01_IN	T_NOC01_IN	%MW1		
NOC01_LS1_IN	T_NOC01_LS1_IN	%MW17		
NIC2212_01_IN	T_NIC2212_01_IN	%MW21		
NOC01_OUT	T_NOC01_OUT	%MW101		
NOC01_LS1_OUT	T_NOC01_LS1_OUT	%MW117		
NIC2212_01_OUT	T_NIC2212_01_OUT	%MW118		

Notice how the address locations for the remote EtherNet/IP device have shifted:

- inputs (NIC2212\_01\_IN) have shifted from %MW17 to %MW21
- outputs (NIC2212\_01\_OUT) have shifted from %MW117 to %MW118

This shift of %MW input and output memory address assignments occurs because the local slave was activated, and local slave I/O variables are placed in a located memory address position ahead of remote EtherNet/IP device I/O variables.

A similar shift of addresses would occur—with respect to both local slave and EtherNet/IP device I/O variable addresses—if a Modbus TCP remote device is activated. This is because Modbus TCP device I/O variables are placed in a located memory address position ahead of both local slave and EtherNet/IP I/O variables.

As stated above, a way to avoid this shift of I/O memory addresses is to activate every local slave and remote device that your project may require, and then allow them to remain active. To later disable a device, use the appropriate control bits to toggle off every connection to that device.

---

# Chapter 5

## Optimizing Performance

---

### Overview

This chapter describes how to optimize the performance of your Ethernet network.

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Topic	Page
5.1	Selecting a Switch	214
5.2	Control Application Design	224
5.3	Projecting Ethernet Network Performance	238

## Section 5.1

### Selecting a Switch

#### Overview

This section describes how to select an Ethernet switch for your network.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Role of a Switch in an Ethernet Network	215
Transmission Speed, Duplex and Auto-Negotiation	216
Quality of Service (QoS)	217
IGMP Snooping	218
Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP)	219
Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN)	220
Port Mirroring	222
Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Agent	223



## Role of a Switch in an Ethernet Network

### Overview

Schneider Electric recommends the use of managed switches—not unmanaged switches or hubs—in process control networks. A managed switch provides more functionality than an unmanaged switch, including the ability to:

- turn switch ports on or off
- configure port speed and duplex settings
- control and monitor message traffic within segments
- prioritize message traffic

### Recommended Switch Features

When acquiring an Ethernet switch for your process control network, confirm that the switch includes the following features:

- Multiple speed (10/100/1000 Mbps)
- Full duplex
- QoS
- IGMP snooping
- RSTP
- VLAN support
- Port mirroring
- SNMP agent



## Transmission Speed, Duplex and Auto-Negotiation

### Introduction

Most Ethernet switches support multiple transmission speeds, full- and half-duplex communication, and offer auto-negotiation capability. Hubs, by contrast, are not designed to support full duplex transmissions.

### Duplex

Full duplex enables a switch port to both transmit and receive messages simultaneously, over two dedicated communication channels. Half duplex, by contrast, permits a port to transmit or receive messages in only one direction at a time. Signal collisions are possible in half duplex communications—because messages are transmitted and received over a single channel. Half duplex communications can cause poor performance and message loss.

### Auto-Negotiation

Auto-negotiation permits a switch port—connected to a remote device that also supports auto-negotiation—to automatically configure itself for the maximum speed and duplex configuration supported by both devices. However, it may be necessary to manually configure the speed and duplex settings of the switch port, if its peer device does not possess auto-negotiation capability.

### Recommendation

Schneider Electric recommends that you employ only switches that support:

- both auto-negotiation and manual configuration of speed and duplex settings
- multiple speeds: 10/100/1000 Mbps
- both full duplex and half duplex

## Quality of Service (QoS)

### Introduction

A switch that supports QoS packet tagging can be configured to deliver higher priority messages before messages with a lower (or no) priority. This enhances system determinism and increases the timely delivery of prioritized messages.

In the absence of QoS tagging, the switch delivers various application messages on a first-in first-out basis. This can result in poor system performance caused by the long forwarding delay—and late delivery—of high priority application messages, which may be handled after lower priority messages.

### Types of QoS

The tagging types are based on the switch configuration:

Tagging type	Priority mapping rule	Description
Explicit (QoS tag in Ethernet packet)	DSCP or TOS field in IP header	Each IP based Ethernet packet contains a value in the DSCP or TOS field in its IP header, indicating the QoS priority. The switch forwards packets based on this priority.
	VLAN tag in Ethernet header	Each Ethernet packet contains a value in the priority field in the VLAN tag in its Ethernet header, indicating the QoS priority. The switch forwards packets based on this priority.
Implicit	Port based	Switch ports are mapped to different QoS priorities. For example, switch port 1 is mapped to QoS priority 1, switch port 2 is mapped to QoS priority 2, etc.

### Recommendation

Schneider Electric recommends the use of devices—including switches—that support explicit QoS tagging.

**NOTE:** Some switches that support QoS tagging have this feature disabled by default. Confirm that QoS is enabled when deploying each switch.

## IGMP Snooping

### Multicast Messaging

Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) is an essential feature of multicast messaging. IGMP instructs routers and switches to forward Ethernet multicast packets to only those device ports that have requested these packets.

In the absence of IGMP snooping, a switch forwards multicast packets out of all its ports, resulting in greater network traffic, wasted network bandwidth, and degraded network performance.

Configure one Ethernet network switch as the IGMP querier. This switch periodically polls the field devices connected to the network, which causes all connected devices to issue an *IGMP Multicast Group Join* message. The group message is received by all network switches, which update their multicast addressing information databases in response.

Similarly, when an Ethernet device transmits an *IGMP Multicast Group Leave* message, all network switches update their multicast addressing information databases by removing the device from their databases.

Multicast messaging reduces network traffic by:

- requiring that a message be sent only once
- sending the message only to devices for which the message is intended

### Recommendation

Schneider Electric recommend the following:

- employ switches that support IGMP V2 or higher
- because IGMP snooping may be disabled by default, enable IGMP snooping for each network switch
- confirm that one switch is configured as the IGMP querier

## Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP)

### RSTP

Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) is an OSI layer 2 protocol defined by IEEE 802.1D 2004 that performs the following functions:

- it creates a loop-free logical network path for Ethernet devices that are part of a topology that includes redundant physical paths
- it automatically restores network communication—by activating redundant links—in the event the network experiences a broken link

RSTP software, operating simultaneously in every network switch, obtains information from each switch which enables the software to create a hierarchical logical network topology. RSTP is a flexible protocol that can be implemented on many physical topologies, including ring, mesh, or a combination of ring and mesh.

### Recommendation

Schneider Electric recommends the following practices:

- Use RSTP instead of STP: RSTP provides a faster recovery time than STP  
**NOTE:** Recovery time is the time that elapses between the moment a broken link is detected to the moment network service is restored. Recovery time depends on:
  - the number of switches in the topology: the more switches, the longer the recovery time
  - the processing speed of the switches in the topology: the slower the speed, the longer the recovery time
  - the bandwidth, traffic load, and topology pattern
- If the switch is part of a topology with redundant physical paths: enable RSTP.
- If the switch is part of a topology that does not include redundant physical paths: disable RSTP—in this case, disabling RSTP improves network performance.

## Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN)

### Introduction

Use VLANs to divide a larger network into smaller virtual groups of devices, and to split a switch into many virtual network switches. VLANs permit the creation of logically separate groups of network devices, without having to physically re-wire those devices.

When a switch receives a message directed to a specific VLAN, it forwards that message only to the switch ports connected to devices that are members of that VLAN. The switch does not send the message to other ports.

A VLAN reduces network traffic, blocks multicast and broadcast traffic from other VLANs, provides separation between VLANs, and improves system performance.

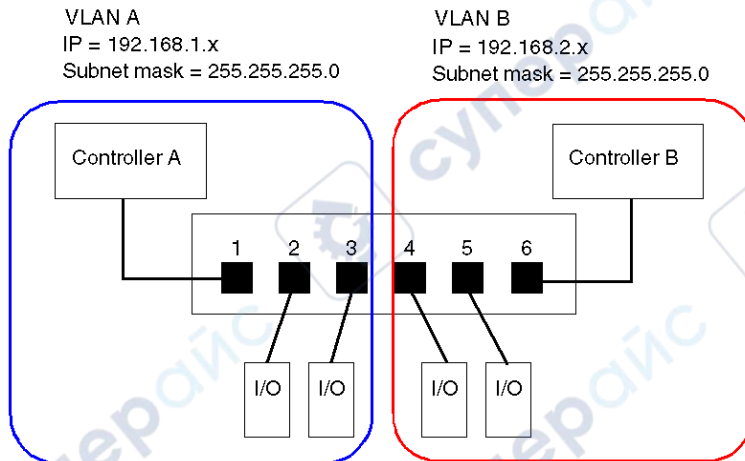
### VLAN Types

Depending upon the switch features, there many different ways to define and implement VLANs:

Tagging type	Mapping rule	Description
Explicit (VLAN tag in Ethernet packet)	Tag based	Each VLAN group is assigned a unique VLAN ID, which is included in each Ethernet packet. The switch forwards packets based on VLAN ID.
Implicit (no VLAN tag in Ethernet packet)	Port based	Switch ports are assigned to different VLANs, when the switch is configured (see example, below.)
	MAC based	A switch maps VLAN group membership—and forwards Ethernet frames—based on device MAC address.
	Protocol based	A switch maps VLAN group membership—and forwards Ethernet frames—based on message protocol.
	IP-subnet based	A switch maps VLAN group membership—and forwards Ethernet frames—based on IP subnet portion of the target address.

**Example**

In the port-based VLAN example, below, switch ports 1, 2, and 3 are assigned to VLAN A, while switch ports 4, 5, and 6 are assigned to VLAN B:



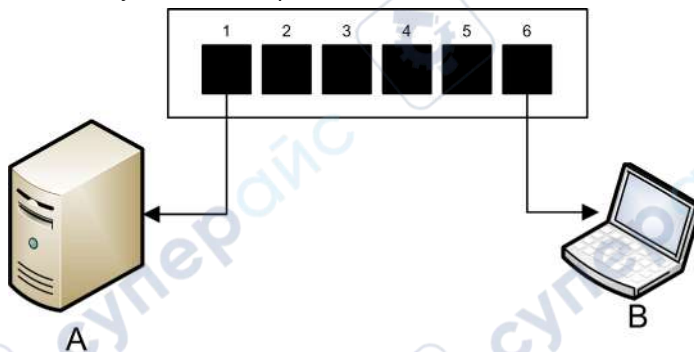
**NOTE:** A single port can be a member of multiple VLANs.

## Port Mirroring

### Introduction

Port mirroring lets you troubleshoot switch port transmissions by copying the traffic that passes through one port (the source or mirrored port) and sending the copied transmission to a second port (the destination or mirror) port, where the packets can be examined.

In the following example, the data packets transmitted over port 1 are copied and sent to port 6. To troubleshoot port 1, a PC with packet sniffing software is used to analyze the traffic on port 6 and thereby troubleshoot port 1.



**A** target device of port 1 transmissions

**B** PC with packet sniffing software connected to port 6, which mirrors port 1 transmissions

Port mirroring does not affect the normal forwarding behavior of the mirrored port. In many switches, you can configure port mirroring so that you can forward and examine:

- only the incoming packets of a single mirrored port
- only the outgoing packets of a single mirrored port
- both the incoming and outgoing packets of a single mirrored port
- the packets of several mirrored ports—or the whole switch

A packet sniffer's troubleshooting features should include:

- analyzing network performance
- monitoring network activity

### Recommendation

Schneider Electric recommends implementing port mirroring as follows:

- Use a destination or mirror port only for port mirroring and not for any other purpose. Connect only the PC with packet sniffer to the mirroring port.
- When configuring the switch, confirm that port mirroring is designed to forward packets—e.g., incoming, outgoing, or both—to meet your requirements.
- A packet sniffer's troubleshooting features should include the capabilities of analyzing network performance and monitoring network activity.

## Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Agent

An *SNMP agent* is a software component that responds to queries about the management data of the switch, and reports events to another device acting as an SNMP manager.

The management data for a switch can include:

- operational state information (interface status, mode of operation, etc.)
- configuration parameters (IP address, features enabled / disabled, timer values, etc.)
- performance statistics (frame counters, event logs, etc.)

If a switch is equipped with SNMP agent software, a designated SNMP manager can:

- retrieve management data about the switch
- control the switch by editing its configuration settings
- receive traps—or notices of events—affecting the state of the switch



## Section 5.2

### Control Application Design

#### Overview

In a control system, control and automation are achieved by processing and delivering various application service messages.

Understanding messages, allocating network bandwidth among messages, and determining the time required for a message to traverse the network are all major performance considerations of your control application design.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Message Types	225
Message Connection Types	227
TCP and CIP Connections	229
Message Priority	230
Messaging Performance	231
Message Frequency	232
Allocating Network Bandwidth	234
Estimating Message Traverse and Response Times	236

## Message Types

### Overview

Two types of industrial Ethernet message types are supported by the Ethernet communication module:

Message Type	Includes...
Explicit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Non-time critical management data</li><li>● Read/write application data</li></ul>
Implicit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Real-time I/O data</li><li>● Real-time control data</li><li>● Real-time synchronization data</li></ul>

### Explicit Messages

Explicit messages transmit information used for device configuration and diagnostics, and for data collection. In explicit messaging, the client issues a request; the server receives, processes, and sends a response back to the client.

You can specify a response timeout value, indicating how long the client waits for a response from the server. If the client does not receive a response from the server within the response timeout period, the client reissues its request. The length of the response timeout will vary depending on the requirements of your application.

Examples of explicit messages include: SNMP messages, FTP messages, CIP establish connection messages, EtherNet/IP query and response messages, and DHCP messages.

The characteristics of explicit messaging are:

- point-to-point client-server mode
- variable size
- variable frequency
- long response time
- long connection timeout

Explicit messages can be sent as either connected or unconnected, depending on the frequency of your need for data, and on the level of service required:

Message type	Characteristics
Connected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Begins when an originating device initiates a connection by sending a request to a target device.</li> <li>● The connection is established when the originator receives a successful response from the target.</li> <li>● A CIP connected message has a higher priority and provides better service, but requires a greater amount of resources from both the target and originator devices.</li> <li>● Used for recurring requests, and for high priority parameter monitoring.</li> <li>● Typically use short response timeout settings.</li> </ul>
Unconnected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Less resource intensive.</li> <li>● Used for less frequent requests, and for lower priority parameter monitoring.</li> <li>● Typically use very long response timeout settings.</li> </ul>

**NOTE:** The response timeout can be configured using the **EM Request Timeout** parameter (located in the **Channel Properties** → **EtherNet/IP** page).

### Implicit Messages

Implicit messages consist of packets of data that are time critical. Implicit messages are used for real-time control and synchronization. Examples of implicit messages include: real-time I/O data, motion control data, functional diagnostic data, real-time synchronization data, and network topology management data.

Implicit messages require determinism and high performance in message processing and delivery.

The characteristics of implicit messaging are:

- producer/consumer mode (EtherNet/IP) or client/server mode (Modbus TCP)
- small, fixed data size
- fixed frequency
- short response time
- short connection timeout

## Message Connection Types

### Introduction

The transmission of most messages require a point-to-point connection between a transmitter and receiver.

For all types of explicit messages, the connection automatically closes when the communication ends, or is timed-out.

For implicit messages, keep the connection open. If the I/O connection—CIP for EtherNet/IP, TCP for Modbus TCP—the transmission stops. In this case, the scanner employs the TCP implicit messaging connection to dynamically re-establish the CIP connection.

### Calculating the Connection Timeout

For CIP connections, you can control the connection timeout setting by specifying both the network multiplier and the requested packet interval (RPI in ms):

$$\text{Timeout} = \text{Network Multiplier} \times \text{RPI}$$

**NOTE:** You can locate and configure these values in the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool. Open the **DTM Editor** for the Ethernet communication module, then edit the following settings:

- the network multiple is the **Time-out Multiplier** parameter found in the **Device List** → **<device>** → **<connection>** → **Connection Settings** page, and
- the RPI is the **EM Connection RPI** parameter found in the **Channel Properties** → **EtherNet/IP** page

A large timeout value may affect the ability of the network to optimize the availability of connection resources, re-establish connections, and update I/O data when the connection is lost.

A small timeout value may unnecessarily cause the frequent closing and re-establishing of connections.

It is preferable to use a larger timeout value for explicit messaging connections, and a smaller timeout value for implicit messaging connections. The specific value you employ depends on your application requirements.

### Connection Types and Protocols

The connection type and transport protocol employed depends upon the message type and message protocol, as follows:

Message Type	Message Protocol	Connection Type	Connection Protocol
Explicit	EtherNet/IP	CIP, TCP	TCP/IP
	Modbus TCP	TCP	TCP/IP
	FTP	TCP	TCP/IP
	HTML (web)	TCP	TCP/IP
	SMTP	TCP	TCP/IP
	SNMP	N/A	UDP/IP
	SNTP	N/A	UDP/IP
	DHCP	N/A	UDP/IP
	BOOTP	N/A	UDP/IP
Implicit	EtherNet/IP	CIP, TCP	UDP/IP
	Modbus TCP	TCP	TCP/IP
	IGMP	N/A	IP
	RSTP	N/A	Ethernet

### Connection- Overhead

Any message transmission includes overhead, which consumes network bandwidth and processing time. The smaller the size of the data transmitted, the relatively greater the portion of the message allocated to overhead.

Consequently, it makes sense to design your I/O messaging by consolidating data from multiple I/O devices—with similar processing capabilities and performance needs—and transmitting it through a single adapter. This design conserves bandwidth, stores network resources, and improves performance.

## TCP and CIP Connections

### Number of Connections Supported

The Ethernet communication module employs both TCP and CIP connections to support both implicit and explicit messages, as follows:

Connection Type	Maximum Number of Connections per Module
CIP	256
TCP	128

**NOTE:**

- A single TCP connection can support multiple CIP connections.
- The maximum number of TCP connections does not include connections dedicated to other services, for example, FTP and Web connections.

## Message Priority

### QoS

The routers and switches that comprise your network infrastructure cannot distinguish between explicit message and implicit messages. However, these devices—including the Ethernet communication module—can support QoS Ethernet packet tagging (*see Quantum using EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet Communication Module, User Manual*).

Using QoS tagging, these devices can handle messages they send and receive according to each message's tagged priority, forwarding higher priority messages before lower priority messages.

## Messaging Performance

### Maximum Messaging Load

The Ethernet communication module supports the following maximum messaging loads:

Message Type	Maximum Messaging Load
Implicit (EtherNet/IP plus Modbus TCP)	12000 packets per second, with no simultaneous explicit messages
Explicit (EtherNet/IP plus Modbus TCP)	120 packets per second, with a maximum of 6000 simultaneous implicit messages



## Message Frequency

### Introduction

The term *message frequency* refers to how often a device transmits a particular type of message. Message frequency directly affects control network load and performance, as well as the CPU capacity of every network device that processes these messages.

Depending on your application requirements, real-time I/O data can be transmitted using implicit messaging as follows:

- on a cyclic basis, at the *request packet interval* (RPI) rate, or
- upon the occurrence of a change of state event

### Cyclic Real-Time I/O Messaging

Much of the load on an Ethernet control network consists of cyclic real-time I/O data. Consequently, carefully consider how to set the RPI value for transmitting these messages:

- A small RPI value results in more frequent, and more numerous, message transmissions. This increases network load, and may waste network resources and degrade system performance.
- Conversely, a larger RPI value—for example, one that is equal (or nearly equal) to the frequency of your application's need for new data—can result in your application not receiving the most current data. Also, if a connection is lost, the time to re-establish the connection will be relatively long, because the connection timeout is proportional to the RPI.

Schneider Electric recommends setting RPI to 50% of the actual frequency by which your application requires data for cyclic real-time I/O messaging.

**NOTE:** The I/O scanner can simultaneously communicate with different I/O adapters at different RPI rates. This enhances the ability of the PLC to control and monitor different devices with varying processing capacities.

### Change of State I/O Messaging

For change of state triggered real-time I/O data messages:

- output transmissions occur at the rate of the PLC controller application cycle time
- input transmissions occur whenever an input event is detected by an input device

Consequently, for an I/O device with a rapid response and transmission time, using a direct connection to the I/O device may be more efficient than using a rack optimized connection. In this design, because only the single device input data is sent, the size of the frequently transmitted message is potentially much smaller than would be the case if the message contained data from every I/O device on the remote island.

**NOTE:** A change of state (versus cyclic) triggered real-time I/O message usually reduces network load. Configure the change of state message with a longer connection timeout value.

### RSTP and IGMP Messaging

RSTP and IGMP messages usually consume a very small amount of network bandwidth. Set up the IGMP query period based on your application requirements.

### Scheduling Certain Explicit Messages

Depending on your application requirements, you can also configure certain explicit messages to be transmitted either cyclically or upon the occurrence of a change of state event. For example, you can periodically monitor a device using SNMP query, Web pages, EtherNet/IP, and Modbus TCP. The cyclic period should be configured so that the total load consumed by explicit messaging does not exceed 10% of network capacity.

## Allocating Network Bandwidth

### Introduction

Maximum network bandwidth equals your network speed, for example 100 Mbps. When designing your control network, allocate network bandwidth among the control application messages required by your application.

**NOTE:** Schneider Electric recommends you reserve at least the following amounts for processing explicit messaging:

- 10% of network bandwidth
- 10% of CPU processing capacity for each network device

### Message Load and Message Bandwidth

*Message Load*—in packets per second (PPS)—represents the number of packets in a single message that are received and sent within one second. *Message Load* can be estimated as follows:

**Message Load =**

$$\text{(number of packets per connection) x (number of connections) / RPI}$$

The *number of packets per connection* value depends on the capacity of the device, and can be either:

- 1: for connections that support uni-directional communication
- 2: for connections that support input and output (for producer/consumer mode) or request and response (for client/server mode) per one time bi-directional exchange, or

The connection can be used for either explicit or implicit messaging. For UDP-based explicit messaging, assume that each client represents one connection, and that messages are transmitted cyclically.

*Message Bandwidth* (in bits) can be calculated as follows:

**Message Bandwidth = message packet size (bits) x Message Load**

Based on the portion of network bandwidth you want to allocate to a particular message, you can use the *Message Load* and *Message Bandwidth* formulae to calculate the fastest RPI for the message.

### Device Load and Device Bandwidth

*Device Load*—measured in number of packets—represents the load contributed by messages received and sent by a device within one second. *Device Load* is the sum of the *Message Load* values for every message handled by the device.

If the *Device Load* exceeds the device's processing capability, performance of both the device and the network is degraded.

**NOTE:** Schneider Electric recommends that *Device Load* not exceed 90% of CPU processing capacity of each device.

*Device Bandwidth*—measured in bits—is the sum of the *Message Bandwidth* values for messages handled by the device

In your control application design, determine whether the I/O scanner device can handle the load contributed by every I/O adapter device. To do this, perform the following steps:

- 1 Calculate the implicit messaging load and bandwidth for each remote device.
- 2 Sum the load and bandwidth estimates for every remote device.
- 3 Compare the total implicit messaging load and bandwidth against the maximum implicit messaging capacity of the device acting as I/O scanner.

If the projected total load or bandwidth for a communication module acting as an I/O scanner exceeds its implicit messaging load or bandwidth limits, consider one or more of the following corrective actions:

- If the I/O adapter supports rack optimized connections, and if a single rack of digital I/O uses multiple direct connections, replace the direct connections with a single rack optimized connection, if possible.
- Increase the RPI setting for a device where possible.
- Add another communication module to act as an I/O scanner, and re-design the network in order to share the load.

### Network Load and Network Bandwidth

*Network Load*—measured in number of packets—can be estimated as the sum of the *Device Load* of the adapter devices, or of the scanner devices.

*Network Bandwidth*—measured in bits—can be estimated as the sum of the *Device Bandwidth* of the adapter devices, or of the scanner devices.

**NOTE:** Schneider Electric recommends that *Network Load* not exceed 90% of maximum network bandwidth.

If necessary, you may need to optimize your control application design by:

- adjusting device RPI settings
- changing connection types (e.g., from direct to rack optimized)
- modify the configuration
- change the network topology

## Estimating Message Traverse and Response Times

### Message Traverse Time

*Message Traverse Time* is defined as the time required for a message to travel from its point of origin to its targeted destination over a network path. As the messages travels over the network path, it may pass through—and be forwarded by—a number of intermediate network devices, including switches and routers.

*Message Traverse Time* is impacted by several factors, including, for example, the following:

- the number of forwarding network devices
- the transmission delay of each forwarding device
- network load
- message priority

*Message Traverse Time* can be estimated by determining the transmission delay (the store and forward delay) of intermediate network devices and counting the number of such devices.

Assuming each forwarding device is a switch, and each switch presents the same transmission delay, the following formula can be used:

**Message Traverse Time =**

$$(\text{Switch Transmission Delay}) \times (\text{Number of Switches})$$

Schneider Electric recommends that you estimate a worst-case *Message Traverse Time*, as follows:

Step	Description
1	Determine the worst case network load.
2	Obtain switch performance information, under varying network loads, and use the worst case—i.e., the largest—transmission delay value.
3	Determine the logical network topology that yields the longest path—i.e. the greatest number of switches—through which a message passes.
4	Using the largest transmission delay value and the largest number of forwarding switches, use the formula (above) to calculate a worst-cast <i>Message Traverse Time</i> .

### Message Response Time

After calculating *Message Traverse Time* (above), you can next measure *Message Response Time*, which measures the total time required for:

- a message to travel from a client device over the network to a server
- the message to be processed by the server
- the server response to travel back to the client over the network

*Message Response Time* can be calculated as follows:

**Message Response Time =**

$$(2 \times (\text{Message Traverse Time})) + (\text{Server Processing Time})$$

In the above formula, '2' indicates a round trip required for client/server communication.

After *Message Response Time* is calculated, you can determine and configure the following parameters, both of which are found in the **Channel Properties** → **EtherNet/IP** page of the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool:

- **EM Request Timeout** value, and
- **EM Connection RPI**

## Section 5.3

### Projecting Ethernet Network Performance

---

#### Network Load and Bandwidth Calculation Example

##### Network Devices

This example estimates the performance for an Ethernet network composed of the following devices:

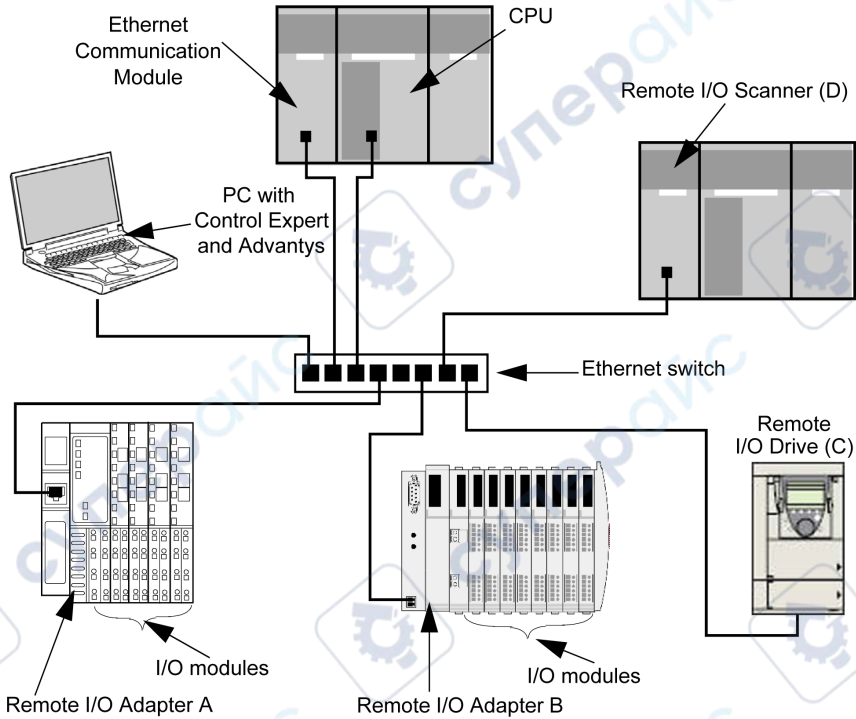
- a PLC that controls 3 remote I/O stations (A, B, and C)
- BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module, acting as the local I/O scanner, installed in the PLC rack
- an 8-port Ethernet managed switch
- a PC running used to obtain diagnostic data via explicit messages running the following software:
  - Control Expert
  - the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool
- 4 remote devices, acting as:
  - an I/O adapter (A) for a rack of I/O modules
  - a second I/O adapter (B) for a rack of I/O modules
  - a remote I/O drive (C)
  - a remote I/O scanner (D)

Control Expert software running in the PC is used to configure the CPU controller.

For programming purposes you need a connection to the PLC either through the CPU's Ethernet port or other supported programming paths.

## Network Diagram

The proposed network diagram looks like this:



## Network Load and Bandwidth Limits

When performing calculations, keep in mind that the Ethernet module and remote devices cannot exceed their implicit messaging and bandwidth limits:

Device	Load Limits	Bandwidth Limits
Ethernet Communication Module	12000 pps	80 Mbps
I/O Adapter (A)	8000 pps	70 Mbps
I/O Adapter (B)	8000 pps	70 Mbps
I/O Drive (C)	8000 pps	70 Mbps
I/O Scanner (D)	12000 pps	80 Mbps
Switch	16000 pps	90 Mbps



### Remote Device Connections and RPI

For the purpose of this example, it is assumed that the remote devices require the following numbers of CIP connections, and are configured for the stated requested packet interval (RPI) settings:

Device	CIP I/O Connections	RPI Setting	I/O Packet Size
I/O Adapter (A)	5	20 ms	8000 bits
I/O Adapter (B)	2	30 ms	4096 bits
I/O Drive (C)	2	30 ms	8000 bits
I/O Scanner (D)	2	50 ms	8000 bits

For the purposes of this example, it is also assumed that every connection is bi-directional.

### I/O Scanner Calculations

The Ethernet communication module, acting as local I/O scanner, has to handle the implicit messaging load contributed by the remote devices. Your task is to:

- 1 estimate the implicit messaging load and bandwidth contributed by each remote device
- 2 sum the load and bandwidth values for each remote device
- 3 compare the total load and bandwidth against the maximum implicit messaging capacity of the local I/O scanner

Recall that the implicit messaging load calculation formula for a single remote device is:

$$\text{Load} = (\text{number of packets per connection}) \times (\text{number of connections}) / \text{RPI}$$

Because every connection is assumed to be bi-directional, the *number of packets per connection* value is 2. Consequently, the estimated implicit messaging load contributed by each device, and the total implicit messaging load the local I/O scanner has to handle can be estimated as follows:

Load:

Device	Number of packets per connection	X	Number of connections	+	RPI	=	Load
I/O Adapter (A)	2	X	5	+	20 ms	=	500 pps
I/O Adapter (B)	2	X	2	+	30 ms	=	134 pps
I/O Drive (C)	2	X	2	+	30 ms	=	134 pps
I/O Scanner (D)	2	X	2	+	50 ms	=	80 pps
Total						=	848 pps
Switch						=	848 pps

Bandwidth:

Device	Packet size	X	Load	=	Bandwidth
I/O Adapter (A)	8000 bits	X	500 pps	=	4 Mbps
I/O Adapter (B)	4096 bits	X	134 pps	=	0.554 Mbps
I/O Drive (C)	8000 bits	X	134 pps	=	1.07 Mbps
I/O Scanner (D)	8000 bits	X	80 pps	=	0.64 Mbps
Total				=	6.26 Mbps
Switch				=	6.26 Mbps

### Conclusion

The projected total load for the module—848 pps—is within the device implicit messaging limit of 12000 data packets per second. The projected total bandwidth for the communication module—6.26 Mbps—is also within the device implicit messaging bandwidth limit of 80 Mbps. The projected total load and bandwidth for the remote devices (including the switch) are also within their 90% load and bandwidth limits:

Device	90% of Load Limit	90% of Bandwidth Limit
Ethernet Communication Module	10800 pps	72 Mbps
I/O Adapter (A)	7200 pps	63 Mbps
I/O Adapter (B)	7200 pps	63 Mbps
I/O Drive (C)	7200 pps	63 Mbps
I/O Scanner (D)	10800 pps	72 Mbps

**NOTE:** Although message load contributed by explicit messaging are not included in the above calculations, such load contributions are presumed to be less than 10% of the device load and bandwidth.

---

# Chapter 6

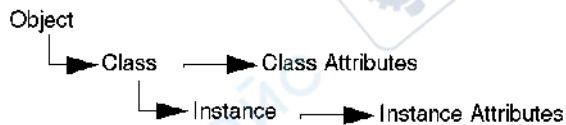
## CIP Objects

---

### Overview

The Ethernet communication module can access CIP data and services located in connected devices. The CIP objects and their content depends on the design of each device.

CIP object data and content are exposed—and accessed—hierarchically in the following nested levels:



**NOTE:** You can use explicit messaging to access either:

- a collection of instance attributes, by including in the explicit message address only the object's class and instance values, or
- a single attribute, by extending the explicit message address to include not only the object's class and instance values but also a specific attribute value

When the Ethernet communication module's local slave service is activated, remote devices can send explicit messages to the module's CIP object structure and:

- access module data, or
- execute module commands

This chapter describes the CIP objects the Ethernet communication module exposes to remote devices.

**What Is in This Chapter?**

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Identity Object	245
Assembly Object	247
Connection Manager Object	249
Modbus Object	251
Quality Of Service (QoS) Object	253
TCP/IP Interface Object	255
Ethernet Link Object	257
EtherNet/IP Interface Diagnostics Object	262
EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics Object	265
IO Connection Diagnostics Object	267
EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics Object	271
EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics List Object	273

## Identity Object

### Overview

The Identity object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

### Class ID

01

### Instance IDs

The Identity object presents two instances:

- 0: class
- 1: instance

### Attributes

Identity object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	GET	SET
01	Revision	X	—
02	Max Instance	X	—
X = supported — = not supported			

Instance ID = 1 (instance attributes):

Attribute ID		Description	Type	GET	SET
hex	dec				
01	01	Vendor ID	UINT	X	—
02	02	Device Type	UINT	X	—
03	03	Product Code	UINT	X	—
04	04	Revision	STRUCT	X	—
		Major	USINT		
		Minor	USINT		
X = supported — = not supported					

Attribute ID		Description	Type	GET	SET
hex	dec				
05	05	Status bit 2: 0x01=the module is configured bits 4-7: 0x03=no I/O connections established 0x06=at least 1 I/O connection in run mode 0x07=at least 1 I/O connection established, all in IDLE mode	Word	X	—
06	06	Serial Number	UDINT	X	—
07	07	Product Name	STRING	X	—
18	24	Modbus Identity	STRUCT	X	—
X = supported — = not supported					

### Services

The Identity object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

Service ID		Description	Class	Instance	Notes
hex	dec				
01	01	Get_Attributes_All	X	X	Returns: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>all class attributes (instance = 0)</li> <li>instance attributes 1 to 7 (instance = 1)</li> </ul>
0E	14	Get_Attribute_Single	X	X	Returns the value of the specified attribute.
X = supported — = not supported					

## Assembly Object

### Overview

The Assembly object consists of the attributes and services described below.

**NOTE:** You can send an explicit message to the Assembly object only when no other connections have been established that read from or write to this object. For example, you can send an explicit message to the Assembly object if a local slave instance is enabled, but no other module is scanning that local slave.

### Class ID

04

### Instance IDs

The Assembly object presents the following instance identifiers:

- 0: class
- 101, 102, 111, 112, 121, 122: instance

### Attributes

The Assembly object consists of the following attributes:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	GET	SET
01	Revision	X	—
02	Max Instance	X	—
03	Number of Instances	X	—
X = supported — = not supported			

Instance attributes:

Instance ID	Attribute ID	Description	Type	GET	SET
101	03	Local slave 1: T->O input data	Array of BYTE	X	—
102		Local slave 1: O>T	Array of BYTE	X	X
111		Local slave 2: T->O input data	Array of BYTE	X	—
112		Local slave 2: O>T	Array of BYTE	X	X
121		Local slave 3: T->O input data	Array of BYTE	X	—
122		Local slave 3: O>T	Array of BYTE	X	X
X = supported — = not supported					

## Services

The CIP Assembly object performs these services upon the listed object types:

Service ID		Description	Class	Instance	Notes
hex	dec				
0E	14	Get_Attribute_Single	X	X	Returns the value of the specified attribute
10	16	Set_Attribute_Single <sup>1</sup>	—	X	Returns these values: 0E=attribute not settable: assembly is not o->T type 0F=permission denied: assembly is being used by an active connection 13=config too small: the Set_Attribute_Single command contains partial data 15=data too big: the Set_Attribute_Single command contains too much data
X = supported — = not supported					
1. When valid, the size of the data written to the Assembly object using the Set_Attribute_Single service equals the size of the Assembly object as configured in the target module.					



## Connection Manager Object

### Overview

The Connection Manager object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

### Class ID

06

### Instance IDs

The Connection Manager object presents two instance values:

- 0: class
- 1: instance

### Attributes

Connection Manager object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	GET	SET
01	Revision	X	—
02	Max Instance	X	—
X = supported — = not supported			

Instance ID = 1 (instance attributes):

Attribute ID		Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
hex	dec					
01	01	Open Requests	UINT	X	X	Number of Forward Open service requests received
02	02	Open Format Rejects	UINT	X	X	Number of Forward Open service requests that were rejected due to bad format
03	03	Open Resource Rejects	UINT	X	X	Number of Forward Open service requests that were rejected due to lack of resources
X = supported — = not supported						

Attribute ID		Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
hex	dec					
04	04	Open Other Rejects	UINT	X	X	Number of Forward Open service requests that were rejected for reasons other than bad format or lack of resources
05	05	Close Requests	UINT	X	X	Number of Forward Close service requests received
06	06	Close Format Requests	UINT	X	X	Number of Forward Close service requests that were rejected due to bad format
07	07	Close Other Requests	UINT	X	X	Number of Forward Close service requests that were rejected for reasons other than bad format
08	08	Connection Timeouts	UINT	X	X	Total number of connection timeouts that occurred in connections controlled by this connections manager
09	09	Connection Entry List	STRUCT	X	—	0 (Unsupported optional item)
0B	11	CPU_Utilization	UINT	X	—	0 (Unsupported optional item)
0C	12	MaxBuffSize	UDINT	X	—	0 (Unsupported optional item)
0D	13	BufSize Remaining	UDINT	X	—	0 (Unsupported optional item)
X = supported — = not supported						

## Services

The Connection Manager object performs the following services on the listed object types:

Service ID		Description	Class	Instance	Notes
hex	dec				
01	01	Get_Attributes_All	X	X	Returns the value of all attributes.
0E	14	Get_Attribute_Single	X	X	Returns the value of the specified attribute.
X = supported — = not supported					

## Modbus Object

### Overview

The Modbus object converts EtherNet/IP service requests to Modbus functions, and Modbus exception codes to CIP General Status codes. It presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

### Class ID

44 (hex), 68 (decimal)

### Instance IDs

The Modbus object presents two instance values:

- 0: class
- 1: instance

### Attributes

The Modbus object consists of the following attributes:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	GET	SET
01	Revision	X	—
02	Max Instance	X	—
X = supported — = not supported			

Instance ID = 1 (instance attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	Type	GET	SET
—	No instance attributes are supported	—	—	—

## Services

The Modbus object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

Service ID		Description	Class	Instance
hex	dec			
0E	14	Get_Attribute_Single	X	X
4B	75	Read_Discrete_Inputs	—	X
4C	76	Read_Coils	—	X
4D	77	Read_Input_Registers	—	X
4E	78	Read_Holding_Registers	—	X
4F	79	Write_Coils	—	X
50	80	Write_Holding_Registers	—	X
51	81	Modbus_Passthrough	—	X
X = supported — = not supported				

## Quality Of Service (QoS) Object

### Overview

The QoS object implements Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP or *DiffServe*) values for the purpose of providing a method of prioritizing Ethernet messages. The QoS object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

### Class ID

48 (hex), 72 (decimal)

### Instance IDs

The QoS object presents two instance values:

- 0: class
- 1: instance

## Attributes

The QoS object consists of the following attributes:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	GET	SET
01	Revision	X	—
02	Max Instance	X	—
X = supported — = not supported			

Instance ID = 1 (instance attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
04	DSCP Urgent	USINT	X	X	For CIP transport class 0/1 Urgent priority messages, default value = 55.
05	DSCP Scheduled	USINT	X	X	For CIP transport class 0/1 Urgent priority messages, default value = 47.
06	DSCP High	USINT	X	X	For CIP transport class 0/1 Urgent priority messages, default value = 43.
07	DSCP Low	USINT	X	X	For CIP transport class 0/1 Urgent priority messages, default value = 31.
08	DSCP Explicit	USINT	X	X	For CIP explicit messages (transport class 2/3 and UCMM), default value = 27.
X = supported — = not supported					

**NOTE:** A change in the instance attribute value takes effect on device re-start, for configurations made from flash memory.

## Services

The QoS object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

Service ID		Description	Class	Instance
hex	dec			
0E	14	Get_Attribute_Single	X	X
10	16	Set_Attribute_Single	—	X
X = supported — = not supported				

## TCP/IP Interface Object

### Overview

The TCP/IP interface object presents the instances (per network), attributes and services described below.

### Class ID

F5 (hex), 245 (decimal)

### Instance IDs

The TCP/IP interface object presents 2 instance values:

- 0: class
- 1: instance

### Attributes

TCP/IP interface object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	GET	SET
01	Revision	X	—
02	Max Instance	X	—
X = supported — = not supported			

Instance ID = 1 (instance attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
01	Status	DWORD	X	—	0x01
02	Configuration Capability	DWORD	X	—	0x01 = from BootP 0x11 = from flash 0x00 = other
03	Configuration Control	DWORD	X	X	0x01 = out-of-box default
04	Physical Link Object	STRUCT	X	—	
	Path Size	UINT			
	Path	Padded EPATH			
X = supported — = not supported					

Attribute ID	Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
05	Interface Configuration	STRUCT	X	X	0x00 = out-of-box default
	IP Address	UDINT			
	Network Mask	UDINT			
	Gateway Address	UDINT			
	Name Server	UDINT			
	Name Server 2	UDINT			
	Domain Name	STRING			
06	Host Name	STRING	X	—	
X = supported — = not supported					

## Services

The TCP/IP interface object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

Service ID		Description	Class	Instance	Notes
hex	dec				
01	01	Get_Attributes_All	X	X	Returns the value of all attributes.
0E	14	Get_Attribute_Single	X	X	Returns the value of the specified attribute.
10	16	Set_Attribute_Single <sup>1</sup>	—	X	Sets the value of the specified attribute.
X = supported — = not supported					
1. The Set_Attribute_Single service can execute only when these preconditions are satisfied:					
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Configure the Ethernet communication module to obtain its IP address from flash memory.</li> <li>● Confirm that the PLC is in stop mode.</li> </ul>					



---

## Ethernet Link Object

### Overview

The Ethernet Link object consists of the instances, attributes and services described below.

### Class ID

F6 (hex), 246 (decimal)

### Instance IDs

The Ethernet Link object presents the following instance values:

- 0: class
- 1: port 1
- 2: port 2
- 3: port 3
- 4: port 4
- 5: internal port

## Attributes

The Ethernet Link object presents the following attributes:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	GET	SET
01	Revision	X	—
02	Max Instance	X	—
03	Number of Instances	X	—
X = supported — = not supported			

Instance ID = 1...5 (instance attributes):

Attribute ID		Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
hex	dec					
01	01	Interface Speed	UDINT	X	—	Valid values include: 0, 10000000, 100000000
02	02	Interface Flags	DWORD	X	—	Bit 0: Link Status 0 = Inactive 1 = Active  Bit 1: Duplex Mode 0 = half duplex 1 = full duplex  Bits 2—4: Negotiation Status 3 = successfully negotiated speed and duplex 4 = forced speed and link  Bit 5: Manual Setting Requires Reset 0 = automatic 1 = device need reset  Bit 6: Local Hardware Fault detected 0 = no event 1 = event detected
03	03	Physical Address	ARRAY of 6 USINT	X	—	Module MAC Address
X = supported — = not supported						

Attribute ID		Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
hex	dec					
04	04	Interface Counters	STRUCT	X	—	
		In octets	UDINT			Octets received on the interface
		In Ucast Packets	UDINT			Unicast packets received on the interface
		In NUcast Packets	UDINT			Non-unicast packets received on the interface
		In Discards	UDINT			Inbound packets received on the interface, but discarded
		In Errors	UDINT			Inbound packets that contain detected errors (does not include In Discards)
		In Unknown Protos	UDINT			Inbound packets with unknown protocol
		Out Octets	UDINT			Octets sent on the interface
		Out Ucast Packets	UDINT			Unicast packets sent on the interface
		Out NUcast Packets	UDINT			Non-unicast packets sent on the interface
		Out Discards	UDINT			Outbound packets discarded
		Out Errors	UDINT			Outbound packets that contain detected errors
X = supported — = not supported						

Attribute ID		Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
hex	dec					
05	05	Media Counters	STRUCT	X	—	
		Alignment Errors	UDINT			Frames that are not an integral number of octets in length
		FCS Errors	UDINT			CRC error detected—Frames received with a detected FCS checksum error
		Single Collisions	UDINT			Successfully transmitted frames that experienced exactly one collision
		Multiple Collisions	UDINT			Successfully transmitted frames that experienced more than one collision
		SQE Test Errors	UDINT			Number of times the SQE test error is detected
		Deferred Transmissions	UDINT			Frames for which first transmission attempt is delayed because the medium is busy
		Late Collisions	UDINT			Number of times a collision is detected later than 512 bittimes into the transmission of a packet
		Excessive Collisions	UDINT			Frames for which transmission is not successful due to excessive collisions
		MAC Transmit Errors	UDINT			Frames for which transmission is not successful due to internal MAC sublayer transmit detected error
		Carrier Sense Errors	UDINT			Times that the carrier sense condition was lost or not asserted when attempting to transmit a frame
		Frame Too Long	UDINT			Frames received that exceed the maximum permitted frame size
		MAC Receive Errors	UDINT			Frames for which reception on an interface is not successful due to an internal MAC sublayer receive detected error
X = supported — = not supported						

Attribute ID		Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
hex	dec					
06	06	Interface Control	STRUCT	X	X	API of the connection
		Control Bits	WORD			Bit 0: Auto-negotiation 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled <b>Note:</b> When auto-negotiation is enabled, the detected error 0x0C (Object State Conflict) is returned when attempting to set either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Forced Interface Speed, or</li> <li>• Forced Duplex Mode</li> </ul>
		Forced Interface Speed	UINT			Valid values include: 10000000, 100000000 <b>Note:</b> Attempting to set any other value returns the detected error 0x09 (Invalid Attribute Value)
10	16	Interface Label	SHORT_STRING	X	—	A fixed textual string identifying the interface, that should include 'internal' for internal interfaces. Maximum number of characters is 64.
X = supported — = not supported						

## Services

The Ethernet Link object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

Service ID		Description	Class	Instance
hex	dec			
01	01	Get_Attributes_All	X	X
10	16	Set_Attribute_Single	—	X
0E	14	Get_Attribute_Single	X	X
4C	76	Get_and_Clear	—	X
X = supported — = not supported				

## EtherNet/IP Interface Diagnostics Object

### Overview

The EtherNet/IP Interface Diagnostics object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

### Class ID

350 (hex), 848 (decimal)

### Instance IDs

The EtherNet/IP Interface object presents two instance values:

- 0: class
- 1: instance

## Attributes

EtherNet/IP Interface Diagnostics object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	GET	SET
01	Revision	X	—
02	Max Instance	X	—
X = supported — = not supported			

Instance ID = 1 (instance attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
01	Protocols Supported	UINT	X	—	
02	Connection Diagnostics	STRUCT	X	—	
	Max CIP IO Connections opened	UINT			Number of Class 1 connections opened since the last reset
	Current CIP IO Connections	UINT			Number of Class 1 connections currently opened
	Max CIP Explicit Connections opened	UINT			Number of Class 3 connections opened since the last reset
	Current CIP Explicit Connections	UINT			Number of Class 3 connections currently opened
	CIP Connections Opening Errors	UINT			Increments each time a Forward Open is not successful (Originator and Target)
	CIP Connections Timeout Errors	UINT			Increments when a connection times out (Originator and Target)
	Max EIP TCP Connections opened	UINT			Number of TCP connections (used for EIP, as client or server) opened since the last reset
	Current EIP TCP Connections	UINT			Number of TCP connections (used for EIP, as client or server) currently open
X = supported — = not supported					

Attribute ID	Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
03	IO Messaging Diagnostics	STRUCT	X	X	
	IO Production Counter	UDINT			Increments each time a Class 0/1 message is sent
	IO Consumption Counter	UDINT			Increments each time a Class 0/1 message is received
	IO Production Send Errors Counter	UINT			Increments each time a Class 0/1 message is not sent
	IO Consumption Receive Errors Counter	UINT			Increments each time a consumption is received with a detected error
04	Explicit Messaging Diagnostics	STRUCT	X	X	
	Class 3 Msg Send Counter	UDINT			Increments each time a Class 3 message is sent (client and server)
	Class 3 Msg Receive Counter	UDINT			Increments each time a Class 3 message is received (client and server)
	UCMM Msg Receive Counter	UDINT			Increments each time a UCMM message is sent (client and server)
	UCMM Msg Receive Counter	UDINT			Increments each time a UCMM message is received (client and server)
X = supported — = not supported					

## Services

The EtherNet/IP Interface Diagnostics object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

Service ID		Description	Class	Instance	Notes
hex	dec				
01	01	Get_Attributes_All	X	X	Returns the value of all attributes.
0E	14	Get_Attribute_Single	—	X	Returns the value of the specified attribute.
4C	76	Get_and_Clear	—	X	Returns and clears the values of all instance attributes.
X = supported — = not supported					



## EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics Object

### Overview

The EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

### Class ID

351 (hex), 849 (decimal)

### Instance IDs

The EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics object presents two instances:

- 0: class
- 1: instance

### Attributes

EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	GET	SET
01	Revision	X	—
02	Max Instance	X	—
X = supported — = not supported			

Instance ID = 1 (instance attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	Type	GET	SET
01	IO Status Table	STRUCT	X	—
	Size	UINT		
	Status	ARRAY of UNINT		
X = supported — = not supported				

## Services

The EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

Service ID		Description	Class	Instance	Notes
hex	dec				
01	01	Get_Attributes_All	X	X	Returns the value of all attributes.
0E	14	Get_Attribute_Single	X	X	Returns the value of the specified attribute.
X = supported — = not supported					

---

## IO Connection Diagnostics Object

### Overview

The IO Connection Diagnostics object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

### Class ID

352 (hex), 850 (decimal)

### Instance IDs

The IO Connection Diagnostics object presents two instance values:

- 0: class
- 1..256: instance (The instance number is the connection number in the configuration.)

## Attributes

IO Connection Diagnostics object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	GET	SET
01	Revision	X	—
02	Max Instance	X	—
X = supported — = not supported			

Instance ID = 1 to 256 (instance attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
01	IO Communication Diagnostics	STRUCT	X	X	
	IO Production Counter	UDINT			Increments at each production
	IO Consumption Counter	UDINT			Increments at each consumption
	IO Production Send Errors Counter	UINT			Increments each time a production is not sent
	IO Consumption Receive Errors Counter	UINT			Increments each time a consumption is received with a detected error
	CIP Connection Timeout Errors	UINT			Increments when a connection times out
	CIP Connection Opening Errors	UINT			Increments each time a connection is unable to open
	CIP Connection State	UINT			State of the Connection Bit
	CIP Last Error General Status	UINT			General status of the last error detected on the connection
	CIP Last Error Extended Status	UINT			Extended status of the last error detected on the connection
	Input Communication Status	UINT			Communication status of the inputs (see table, below)
	Output Communication Status	UINT			Communication status of the outputs (see table, below)
X = supported — = not supported					

Attribute ID	Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
02	Connection Diagnostics	STRUCT	X	X	
	Production Connection ID	UDINT			Connection ID for production
	Consumption Connection ID	UDINT			Connection ID for consumption
	Production RPI	UDINT			RPI for production
	Production API	UDINT			API for production
	Consumption RPI	UDINT			RPI for consumption
	Consumption API	UDINT			API for consumption
	Production Connection Parameters	UDINT			Connection parameters for production
	Consumption Connection Parameters	UDINT			Connection parameters for consumption
	Local IP	UDINT			—
	Local UDP Port	UINT			—
	Remote IP	UDINT			—
	Remote UDP Port	UINT			—
	Production Multicast IP	UDINT			Multicast IP used for production (or 0)
	Consumption Multicast IP	UDINT			Multicast IP used for consumption (or 0)
	Protocols Supported	UDINT			Protocol supported on the connection: 1 = EtherNet/IP
X = supported — = not supported					

The following values describe the structure of the instance attributes: *CIP Connection State*, *Input Communication Status*, and *Output Communication Status*:

Bit Number	Description	Values
15...3	<i>Reserved</i>	0
2	Idle	0 = no idle notification 1 = idle notification
1	Consumption inhibited	0 = consumption started 1 = no consumption
0	Production inhibited	0 = production started 1 = no production

## Services

The EtherNet/IP Interface Diagnostics object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

Service ID		Description	Class	Instance	Notes
hex	dec				
01	01	Get_Attributes_All	X	X	Returns the value of all attributes.
0E	14	Get_Attribute_Single	—	X	Returns the value of the specified attribute.
4C	76	Get_and_Clear	—	X	Returns and clears the values of all instance attributes.
X = supported — = not supported					

## EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics Object

### Overview

The EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

### Class ID

353 (hex), 851 (decimal)

### Instance IDs

The EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics object presents two instance values:

- 0: class
- 1... $N$ : instance ( $N$  = maximum concurrent number of explicit connections)

### Attributes

EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

Attribute ID hex	Description	Value	GET	SET
01	Revision	1	X	—
02	Max Instance	0... $N$	X	—
X = supported — = not supported				

Instance ID = 1 to  $N$  (instance attributes):

Attribute ID hex	Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
01	Originator connection ID	UDINT	X	—	Originator to target connection ID
02	Originator IP	UINT	X	—	
03	Originator TCP Port	UDINT	X	—	
04	Target connection ID	UDINT	X	—	Target to originator connection ID
05	Target IP	UDINT	X	—	
06	Target TCP Port	UDINT	X	—	
X = supported — = not supported					

Attribute ID hex	Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
07	Msg Send Counter	UDINT	X	—	Incremented each time a Class 3 CIP message is sent on the connection
08	Msg Receive counter	UDINT	X	—	Increments each time a Class 3 CIP message is received on the connection
X = supported — = not supported					

### Services

The EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics object performs the following services upon the listed object type:

Service ID		Description	Class	Instance	Notes
hex	dec				
01	01	Get_Attributes_All	X	X	Returns the value of all attributes.
X = supported — = not supported					



## EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics List Object

### Overview

The EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics List object presents the instances, attributes and services described below.

### Class ID

354 (hex), 852 (decimal)

### Instance IDs

The EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics List object presents two instance values:

- 0: class
- 1...*N*: instance

## Attributes

EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics List object attributes are associated with each instance, as follows:

Instance ID = 0 (class attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	GET	SET
01	Revision	X	—
02	Max Instance	X	—
X = supported — = not supported			

Instance ID = 1 to  $N$  (instance attributes):

Attribute ID	Description	Type	GET	SET	Value
01	Number of connections	UINT	X	—	Total number of opened explicit connections
02	Explicit Messaging Connections Diagnostic List	ARRAY of STRUCT	X	—	
	Originator connection ID	UDINT			O->T connection ID
	Originator IP	UINT			—
	Originator TCP port	UDINT			—
	Target connection ID	UDINT			T->O connection ID
	Target IP	UDINT			—
	Target TCP port	UDINT			—
	Msg Send counter	UDINT			Increments each time a Class 3 CIP message is sent on the connection
Msg Receive counter	UDINT			Increments each time a Class 3 CIP message is received on the connection	
X = supported — = not supported					

## Services

The EtherNet/IP Explicit Connection Diagnostics object performs the following services upon the listed object types:

Service ID		Description	Class	Instance	Notes
hex	dec				
01	01	Get_Attributes_All	X	—	Returns the value of all attributes.
08	08	Create	X	—	—
09	09	Delete	—	X	—
4B	75	Explicit_Connections_Diagnostic_Read	—	X	—

X = supported  
— = not supported

---

# Chapter 7

## Online Action

---

### Overview

The Ethernet communication module supports online actions that let you:

- display CIP objects for the communication module or a remote EtherNet/IP device
- view and edit port configuration parameters for the communication module or a remote EtherNet/IP device
- ping the communication module or a remote EtherNet/IP or Modbus TCP device to confirm it is active on the Ethernet network
- connect to a remote device and then:
  - view the remote device's default parameter settings
  - view the remote device's current parameter settings
  - edit and download to the remote device its editable parameter settings

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Accessing CIP Objects	278
Editing Port Configuration Properties for Remote EtherNet/IP Devices	280
Pinging a Network Device	282
Viewing and Editing Online Settings for a Remote Device	284

## Accessing CIP Objects

### Overview

Use the **Module Information** page of the **Online Action** window to:

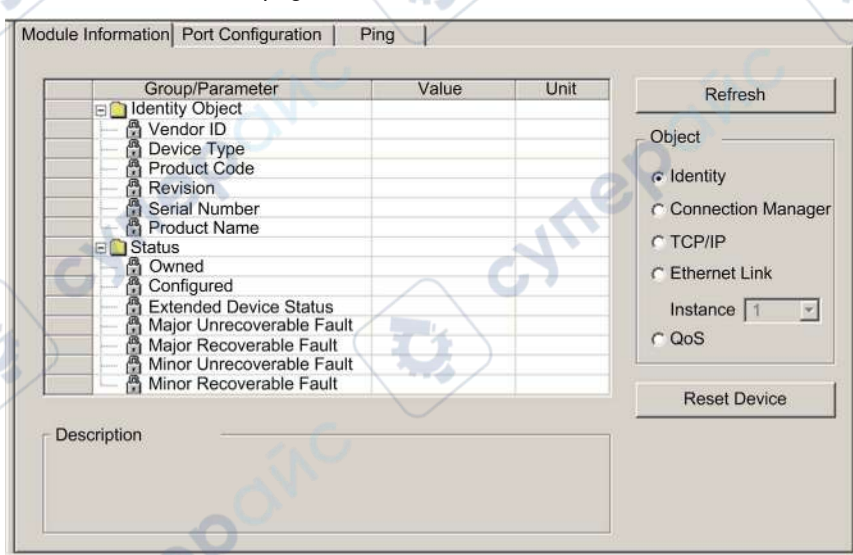
- retrieve and display current data describing the state of CIP objects for the selected communication module or remote EtherNet/IP device, and
- reset the selected communication module or remote EtherNet/IP device

**NOTE:** Before you can perform online actions for a communication module or remote device, connect its DTM to the physical module or device. To do this, select the module or device node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

The appearance of this page, and the CIP object information you can retrieve, depend upon the operating mode of the Control Expert software:

In this mode...	You can display data for these CIP objects...
Standard mode	Identity object ( <i>see page 245</i> )
Advanced mode ( <i>see page 50</i> )	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identity object</li> <li>• Connection Manager object (<i>see page 249</i>)</li> <li>• TCP/IP Interface object (<i>see page 255</i>)</li> <li>• Ethernet Link object (<i>see Quantum using EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet Communication Module, User Manual</i>)</li> <li>• QoS object (<i>see page 253</i>)</li> </ul>

The **Module Information** page looks like this:



### Retrieve and Display CIP Object Data

To display CIP object data for an EtherNet/IP communication module or remote device:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select a communication module.
2	Click the right mouse button, and in the pop-up menu select <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Online Action</b> . The <b>Online Action</b> window opens.
3	In the left pane of the <b>Online Action</b> window, select a communication module or EtherNet/IP device.
4	In the right pane, click on the <b>Module Information</b> tab to open that page.
5	<p>If Control Expert is operating in <b>Advanced Mode</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Select one of the following CIP objects: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Identity</li> <li>○ Connection Manager</li> <li>○ TCP/IP</li> <li>○ Ethernet Link</li> <li>○ QoS</li> </ul> </li> <li>● If you selected a multi-port module or device in step 3, above, select an <b>Interface</b>, or port, number</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If Control Expert is operating in Standard Mode, it will display data only for the CIP Identity object.</p>
6	Click the <b>Refresh</b> button to update the data displayed.

### Reset a Communication Module or Remote EtherNet/IP Device

To reset a communication module or remote EtherNet/IP device:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select a communication module.
2	Click the right mouse button, and in the pop-up menu select <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Online Action</b> . The <b>Online Action</b> window opens.
3	In the left pane of the <b>Online Action</b> window, select a communication module or EtherNet/IP device.
4	In the right pane, click on the <b>Module Information</b> tab to open that page.
5	Click the <b>Reset Device</b> button.

## Editing Port Configuration Properties for Remote EtherNet/IP Devices

### Overview

Use the **Port Configuration** page of the **Online Action** window to view and edit communication port properties for a remote EtherNet/IP device. Specifically, you can use this page to execute a:

- Get command to retrieve port configuration settings from a remote EtherNet/IP device
- Set command that writes all or selected edited values to the same remote EtherNet/IP device

Configuration edits transmitted from this page are sent as EtherNet/IP explicit messages and employ the **Address** and **Messaging** settings configured in the **EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging** window.

**NOTE:** Before you can perform online actions for a remote device, connect its DTM to the physical device. To do this, select the device node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit → Connect**.

The **Port Configuration** page looks like this:

Group/Parameter	Value	Unit
General		
▶ Startup Configuration		
▶ DNS Enable		
TCP/IP Parameters		
▶ Device IP Address		
▶ New IP Address		
▶ Gateway Address		
▶ Sub Network Mask		
▶ Primary DNS Server Address		
▶ Secondary DNS Server		
▶ Domain Name		
Host Name		
▶ Name		
Physical Interface		
▶ Get: Link Status		
▶ Get: Duplex Mode		
▶ Get: Negotiation Status		
▶ Get: Interface Speed		Mbps
▶ Set: 802.3 Link Auto-Negotiation	Disable	
▶ Set: Forced Duplex Mode	Half Duplex	
▶ Set: Forced Interface Speed	Indeterminate	Mbps

## Get Port Configuration Settings

To get settings from a remote EtherNet/IP device on the network:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the communication module upstream of the remote EtherNet/IP device.
2	Click the right mouse button, and in the pop-up menu select <b>Device menu → EtherNet/IP Explicit Message</b> . The <b>EtherNet/IP Explicit Message</b> window opens.
3	In the EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging page, complete the <b>Address</b> section. <b>Note:</b> Port configuration explicit messages are sent as unconnected messages.
4	Return to the <b>DTM Browser</b> and again select the communication module upstream of the remote EtherNet/IP device.
5	Click the right mouse button, and in the pop-up menu select <b>Device menu → Online Action</b> . The <b>Online Action</b> window opens.
6	In the left pane of the <b>Online Action</b> window, select a remote EtherNet/IP device.
7	In the right pane, click on the <b>Port Configuration</b> tab to open that page.
8	If the remote device consists of more than one port, select the port number in the <b>Physical Interface Instance</b> list.
9	In the <b>Port Configuration</b> page, click the <b>Get Values from Device</b> button. The table displays the returned values of the communication properties for the selected remote device and port.

## Edit and Set Port Configuration Settings

To edit and set port configuration settings that were retrieved using the above-described **Get Port Configuration Settings** process:

Step	Action
1	Double-click the left mouse button in the <b>Value</b> cell for the parameter you want to edit. The cell becomes editable. <b>Note:</b> The page also displays a <b>Description</b> of the selected parameter.
2	Type in, or select, the new value.
3	Repeat steps 1 - 2 for each parameter you want to edit.
4	Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Click the <b>Set All Values to Device</b> to write every value to the remote device - or -</li> <li>● if you edited parameters for only one part, or group, of the collection of remote device values, then: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ in the <b>Set Part of Values</b> area, select one property group, then</li> <li>○ click the <b>Set Values to Device</b> button</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Control Expert sends the property value edits to the remote device via an EtherNet/IP explicit message, and displays the results in the <b>Description</b> area.</p>



## Pinging a Network Device

### Overview

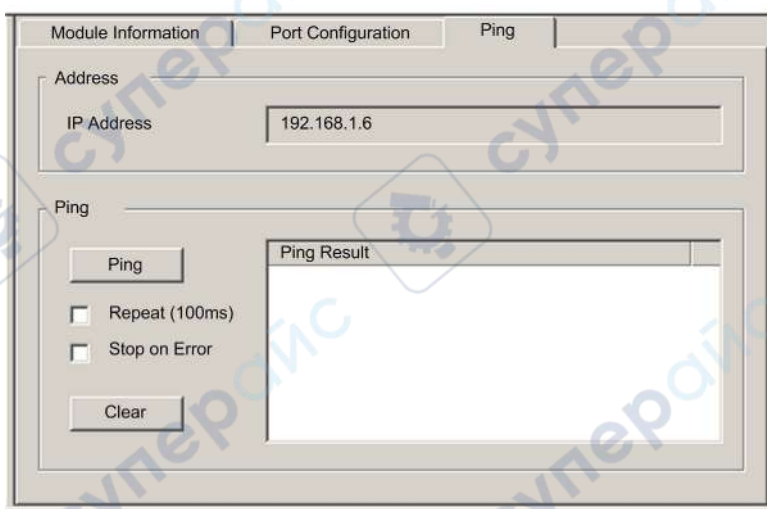
Use the Control Expert ping function to send an ICMP echo request to a target Ethernet device to determine:

- if the target device is present, and if so
- the elapsed time to receive an echo response from the target device

The target device is identified by its IP address setting. Control Expert will verify that the target address is not a:

- loopback address (127.000.000.000 to 127.255.255.255)
- multicast address (224.000.000.000 to 239.255.255.255)
- reserved address (240.000.000.000 to 255.255.255.255)
- broadcast address

The ping function can be performed in the **Ping** page of the **Online Action** window:



The screenshot shows the 'Online Action' window with the 'Ping' tab selected. The 'Address' section contains an 'IP Address' field with the value '192.168.1.6'. The 'Ping' section includes a 'Ping' button, two unchecked checkboxes for 'Repeat (100ms)' and 'Stop on Error', and a 'Clear' button. A 'Ping Result' text area is located to the right of the 'Ping' section.

## Pinging a Network Device

To ping a network device:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the communication module upstream of the remote EtherNet/IP device you want to ping.
2	Click the right mouse button and select <b>Device Menu &gt; → Online Action</b> in the pop-up menu. The <b>Online Action</b> window opens.
3	In the <b>Online Action</b> window, select the device you want to ping. The window displays pages containing online information for the selected device. <b>NOTE:</b> The specific collection of displayed pages depends on the type of device selected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the communication module</li> <li>• a remote EtherNet/IP device</li> <li>• a remote Modbus TCP device</li> </ul>
4	Select the <b>Ping</b> page. To send... <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a single ping, de-select the <b>Repeat</b> checkbox</li> <li>• a series of pings—1 every 100 ms—select <b>Repeat</b> checkbox</li> </ul>
5	(Optional) Select <b>Stop on Error</b> to stop pinging an unsuccessful communication.
6	Click <b>Ping</b> once to begin pinging.
7	Click <b>Ping</b> a second time to stop repeated pinging, where no error has been detected.
8	The <b>Ping Result</b> box displays the ping outcome. Click <b>Clear</b> to empty the <b>Ping Result</b> box.

## Viewing and Editing Online Settings for a Remote Device

### Introduction

Use the **Online Parameters** window to:

- view the remote device's default parameter settings
- view the remote device's current parameter settings
- edit and download to the remote device its editable parameter settings

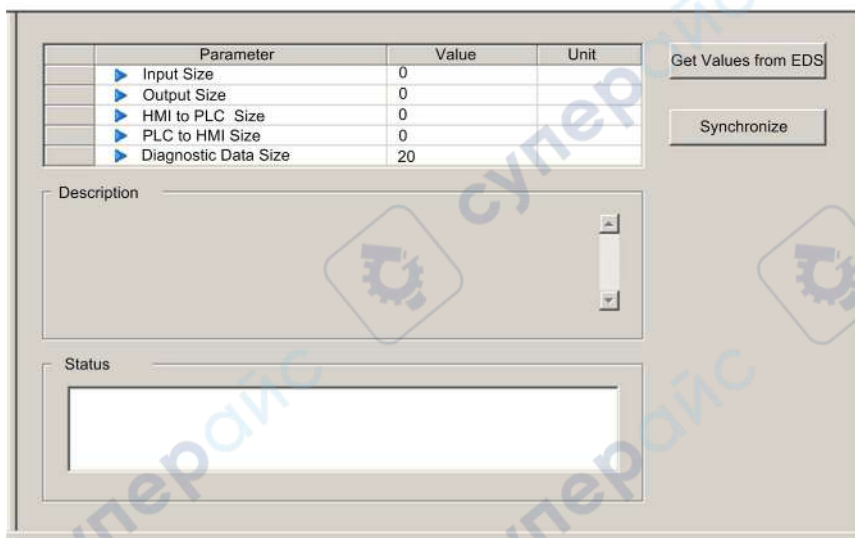
Parameter setting edits transmitted from this page are sent as EtherNet/IP explicit messages and employ the **Address** and **Messaging** settings configured in the **EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging** window.


**NOTE:** Before you can view and edit online settings for a remote device, connect its DTM file to the physical device. To do this, select the device node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

To open the **Online Parameters** window, follow these steps:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the node for a remote device.
2	Click the right mouse button, and in the pop-up menu select <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Online Parameters</b> . The <b>Online Parameters</b> window opens for the selected remote device.
3	In the left pane of the <b>Online Parameters</b> window, select a connection node. Control Expert displays the parameters relating to the selected connection in the right pane. <b>NOTE:</b> The list of parameters displayed in the <b>Online Parameters</b> window depends upon: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the device selected in the <b>DTM Browser</b>, and</li> <li>• the connection selected in the left pane of the <b>Online Parameters</b> window</li> </ul>

An example of the **Online Parameters** window—in this case for the STB NIC 2212 remote network interface device—looks like this:



Read-only parameters are identified by a locked icon  .

Editable parameters are identified by a blue arrowhead  .

### Displaying Default Parameter Settings

To view the default parameter settings for the remote device, click the **Get Values from EDS** button. Control Expert reads the default device values from its EDS file and displays them on-screen.

### Displaying Online Parameter Settings

To view the current parameter settings for the remote device, follow these steps:

Step	Action
1	With a connection selected in the left pane, click the <b>Synchronize</b> button. The <b>Synchronize Action</b> message box opens.
2	In the message box, select <b>Read values from the device</b> , then click <b>OK</b> . The message box closes. In the <b>Online Parameters</b> window: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the <b>Status</b> field displays the results of the read transaction</li> <li>the parameter list displays current values</li> </ul>

## Editing Online Parameter Settings

To edit parameter settings for the remote device, follow these steps:

Step	Action
1	With a connection selected in the left pane, display either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● default device settings, or</li><li>● current device settings</li></ul>
2	In the <b>Value</b> column, type in or select a new value for each setting you want to edit. <b>NOTE:</b> When you select a parameter, the <b>Description</b> area displays an explanation of the parameter and its available settings.
3	Click the <b>Synchronize</b> button. The <b>Synchronize Action</b> message box opens.
4	In the message box, select <b>Write data to the device</b> , then click <b>OK</b> . The message box closes. In the <b>Online Parameters</b> window, the <b>Status</b> field displays the results of the write transaction.

---

# Chapter 8

## Explicit Messaging

---

### Overview

The BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module supports explicit messaging by means of both the EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP protocols.

To create an explicit message for the EtherNet/IP protocol, use the `DATA_EXCH` function block in application logic.

To create an explicit message for the Modbus TCP protocol, use any one of the following function blocks in application logic: `DATA_EXCH`, `READ_VAR`, or `WRITE_VAR`.

**NOTE:** A single Control Expert application can contain more than 16 explicit messaging blocks, but only 16 explicit messaging blocks can be active at the same time.

This chapter describes how to configure both EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP explicit messages by using:

- the `DATA_EXCH` function block in application logic
- the Control Expert graphical user interface

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Topic	Page
8.1	Explicit Messaging Using the <code>DATA_EXCH</code> Block	288
8.2	EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging Using <code>DATA_EXCH</code>	293
8.3	Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Using <code>DATA_EXCH</code>	310
8.4	Explicit Messaging via the Control Expert GUI	319

## Section 8.1

### Explicit Messaging Using the DATA\_EXCH Block

#### Overview

This section introduces you to the `DATA_EXCH` function block, which you can use to configure both EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP explicit messages.

This section describes how to configure the `DATA_EXCH` function block's Management parameter, which is common to both Modbus TCP and EtherNet/IP explicit messaging.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Configuring Explicit Messaging Using <code>DATA_EXCH</code>	289
Configuring the <code>DATA_EXCH</code> Management Parameter	291

## Configuring Explicit Messaging Using DATA\_EXCH

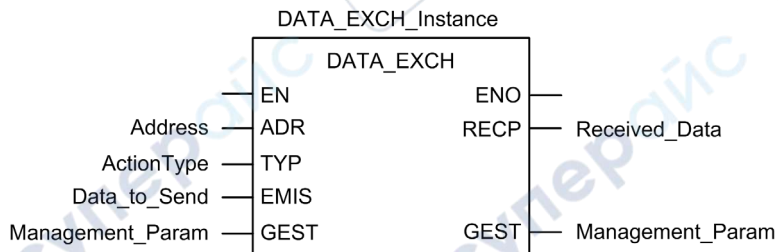
### Overview

Use the `DATA_EXCH` function block to configure both Modbus TCP explicit messages and connected and unconnected EtherNet/IP explicit messages.

The `Management_Param`, the `Data_to_Send`, and the `Received_Data` parameters define the operation.

`EN` and `ENO` can be configured as additional parameters.

### FBD Representation



### Input Parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
EN	BOOL	This parameter is optional. When this input is set to one, the block is activated and can solve the function blocks algorithm. When this input is set to zero, the block is deactivated and won't solve the function block algorithm.
Address	Array [0...7] of INT	The path to the destination device, the content of which can vary depending on the message protocol. Use the <code>Address</code> function as an input to the block parameter <code>ADR</code> . Refer to a description of the <code>Address</code> parameter for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EtherNet/IP messages (<a href="#">see page 296</a>)</li> <li>• Modbus TCP messages (<a href="#">see page 312</a>)</li> </ul>
ActionType	INT	The type of action to perform. For both the EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP protocols, this setting = 1 (transmission followed by await reception).
Data_to_Send	Array [n...m] of INT	The content of this parameter is specific to the protocol, either EtherNet/IP or Modbus TCP. For EtherNet/IP explicit messaging, refer to the topic <a href="#">Configuring the Data_To_Send Parameter (see page 296)</a> . For Modbus TCP explicit messaging, refer to <a href="#">Control Expert online help</a> .



## Input/Output Parameters

The Management\_Param array is local:

Parameter	Data type	Description
Management_Param	Array [0...3] of INT	The management parameter ( <i>see page 291</i> ), consisting of four words.

Do not copy this array during a switchover from a primary to a standby CPU in a Hot Standby system. Uncheck the **Exchange On STBY** variable in Control Expert when you configure a Hot Standby system.

**NOTE:** Refer to the description of Hot Standby system data management and the T\_M\_ECPU\_HSBY DDT (*see Modicon M580 Hot Standby, System Planning Guide for, Frequently Used Architectures*) in the M580 Hot Standby System Planning Guide (*see Modicon M580 Hot Standby, System Planning Guide for, Frequently Used Architectures*).

## Output Parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
ENO	BOOL	This parameter is optional. When you select this output you also get the EN input. ENO output is activated upon successful execution of the function block.
Received_Data	Array [n...m] of INT	The EtherNet/IP (CIP) response ( <i>see page 297</i> ) or the Modbus TCP response ( <i>see page 313</i> ). The structure and content depends upon the specific protocol.

## Configuring the DATA\_EXCH Management Parameter

### Introduction

The structure and content of the management parameter of the DATA\_EXCH block is common to both EtherNet/IP and Modbus TCP explicit messaging.

### Configuring the Management Parameter

The management parameter consists of four contiguous words:

Data source	Register	Description	
		High Byte (MSB)	Low Byte (LSB)
Data managed by the system	Management_Param[0]	Exchange number	Two read-only bits: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Bit 0 = Activity bit (<i>see page 292</i>)</li> <li>● Bit 1 = Cancel bit</li> </ul>
	Management_Param[1]	Operation report ( <i>see page 424</i> )	Communication report ( <i>see page 423</i> )
Data managed by the user	Management_Param[2]	Block timeout. Values include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● 0 = infinite wait</li> <li>● other values = timeout x 100 ms, for example:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ 1 = 100 ms</li> <li>○ 2 = 200 ms</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
	Management_Param[3]	Length of data sent or received: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Input (before sending the request): length of data in the Data_to_Send parameter, in bytes</li> <li>● Output (after response): length of data in the Received_Data parameter, in bytes</li> </ul>	

### Activity Bit

The activity bit is the first bit of the first element in the table. The value of this bit indicates the execution status of the communication function:

- **1**: The bit is set to 1 when the function launches.
- **0**: The bit returns to 0 upon the completion of the execution. (The transition from 1 to 0 increments the exchange number. If an error is detected during the execution, search for the corresponding code in the operation and communication report (*see page 423*).

For example, you can make this declaration in the management table:

```
Management_Param[0] ARRAY [0..3] OF INT
```

For that declaration, the activity bit corresponds to this notation:

```
Management_Param[0].0
```

**NOTE:** The notation previously used requires configuration of the project properties in such a way as to authorize the extraction of bits on integer types. If this is not the case, `Management_Param[0].0` cannot be accessed in this manner.

## Section 8.2

### EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging Using DATA\_EXCH

#### Overview

This section shows you how to configure the DATA\_EXCH function block for EtherNet/IP explicit messages.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Explicit Messaging Services	294
Configuring EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging Using DATA_EXCH	296
EtherNet/IP Explicit Message Example: Get_Attribute_Single	298
EtherNet/IP Explicit Message Example: Read Modbus Object	302
EtherNet/IP Explicit Message Example: Write Modbus Object	306

## Explicit Messaging Services

### Overview

Every explicit message performs a service. Each service is associated with a service code (or number). You will need to identify the explicit messaging service by its name, decimal number, or hexadecimal number.

You can execute explicit messages using either the `DATA_EXCH` function block in Control Expert, or the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool.

### Services

The services available in Control Expert include, but are not limited to, the services listed below:

Service Code		Description	Available in...	
Hex	Dec		DATA_EXCH block	Control Expert GUI
0	0	<i>(Reserved)</i>	—	—
1	1	Get_Attributes_All	X	X
2	2	Set_Attributes_All	X	X
3	3	Get_Attribute_List	X	—
4	4	Set_Attribute_List	X	—
5	5	Reset	X	X
6	6	Start	X	X
7	7	Stop	X	X
8	8	Create	X	X
9	9	Delete	X	X
A	10	Multiple_Service_Packet	X	—
B-C	11-12	<i>(Reserved)</i>	—	—
D	13	Apply_Attributes	X	X
E	14	Get_Attribute_Single	X	X
F	15	<i>(Reserved)</i>	—	—
10	16	Set_Attribute_Single	X	X
11	17	Find_Next_Object_Instance	X	X
12-13	18-19	<i>(Reserved)</i>	—	—
14	20	Error Response (DeviceNet only)	—	—
15	21	Restore	X	X
16	22	Save	X	X
17	23	No Operation (NOP)	X	X

"X" indicates the service is available. "—" indicates the service is not available.

Service Code		Description	Available in...	
Hex	Dec		DATA_EXCH block	Control Expert GUI
18	24	Get_Member	X	X
19	25	Set_Member	X	X
1A	26	Insert_Member	X	X
1B	27	Remove_Member	X	X
1C	28	GroupSync	X	—
1D-31	29-49	(Reserved)	—	—

"X" indicates the service is available. "—" indicates the service is not available.

## Configuring EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging Using DATA\_EXCH

### Configuring the Address Parameter

To configure the Address parameter, use the `ADDM` function to convert the character string, described below, to an address that is input into the `ADR` parameter of the `DATA_EXCH` block: `ADDM('rack.slot.channel{ip_address}message_type.protocol')`, where:

This field...	Represents...
rack	the number assigned to the rack containing the communication module
slot	the position of the communication module in the rack
channel	the communication channel—set to a value of <b>0</b>
ip_address	the IP address of the remote device, for example 193.168.1.6
message_type	the type of message, presented as a three character string—either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>UNC</b> (indicating an unconnected message), or</li> <li>● <b>CON</b> (indicating a connected message)</li> </ul>
protocol	the protocol type—the three character string <b>CIP</b>

### Configuring the Data\_to\_Send Parameter

The `Data_to_Send` parameter varies in size. It consists of contiguous registers that include—in sequence—both the message type and the CIP request:

Offset (words)	Length (bytes)	Data Type	Description
0	2 bytes	Bytes	Message type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● High byte = size of the request in words</li> <li>● Low byte = EtherNet/IP service code</li> </ul>
1	Management_Param[3] (size of Data_to_Send) minus 2	Bytes	The CIP request <sup>1</sup> . <b>NOTE:</b> The structure and size of the CIP request depends on the EtherNet/IP service.
<b>1</b> Structure the CIP request in little endian order.			

### Contents of the Received\_Data Parameter

The `Received_Data` parameter contains only the CIP response. The length of the CIP response varies, and is reported by `Management_Param[3]` after the response is received. The format of the CIP response is described, below:

Offset (words)	Length (bytes)	Data Type	Description
0	2	Byte	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte (MSB) = reserved</li> <li>Low byte (LSB): reply service</li> </ul>
1	2	Byte	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte (MSB): length of additional status</li> <li>Low byte (LSB): EtherNet/IP general status (<i>see page 427</i>)</li> </ul>
2	length of additional status	Byte array	Additional Status <sup>1</sup>
...	<code>Management_Param[3]</code> (size of <code>Received_Data</code> ) minus 4, and minus the additional status length	Byte array	Response data

1. Refer to *The CIP Networks Library, Volume 1, Common Industrial Protocol* at section 3-5.6 *Connection Manager Object Instance Error Codes*.

**NOTE:** The response is structured in little endian order.

### Checking the Received\_Data Response for System and CIP Status

Use the contents of the `Received_Data` parameter to check both the system status and the CIP status of the Ethernet communication module when handling the explicit message.

**First:** Check the value of the high byte (MSB) of the first response word, positioned at offset 0. If the value of this byte is:

- equal to 0: the system properly handled the explicit message
- not equal to 0: a system-based event occurred

Refer to the list of EtherNet/IP Explicit Messaging Event Codes (*see page 420*) for an explanation of the system-based event code contained in the second response word, positioned at offset 1.

**Next:** If the system properly handled the explicit message, and the high byte of the first response word equals 0, check the value of the second response word, positioned at offset 1. If the value of this word is:

- equal to 0: the explicit message was properly handled by the CIP protocol
- not equal to 0: a CIP protocol-based event occurred

Refer to your CIP documentation for an explanation of the CIP status displayed in this word.



## EtherNet/IP Explicit Message Example: Get\_Attribute\_Single

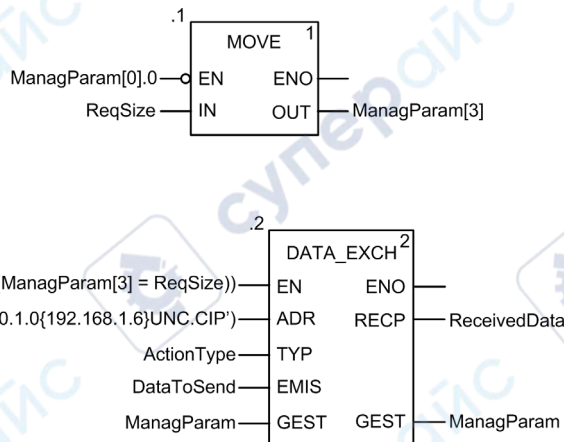
### Overview

The following unconnected explicit messaging example shows you how to use the `DATA_EXCH` function block to retrieve diagnostic data from a remote device—in this case an STB NIC 2212 network interface module at IP address 192.168.1.6—using the `Get_Attribute_Single` service.

You can perform the same explicit messaging service using the **EtherNet/IP Explicit Message** window of the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool (*see page 320*).

### Implementing the `DATA_EXCH` Function Block

To implement the `DATA_EXCH` function block, you need to create and assign variables for the following blocks:



## Declaring Variables

In this example, the following variables were defined. You can, of course, use different variable names in your explicit messaging configurations.

In this example, the following variables were defined. You can, of course, use different variable names in your explicit messaging configurations.

Name	Type	Value	Comment	Used
ActionType	INT	16#01	Transmission followed by await reception	1
DataToSend	ARRAY[0...3] OF INT			2
DataToSend[0]	INT	16#030E	Request size in words; Get_Attribute_Single	
DataToSend[1]	INT	16#0420	Class and Class Segment	
DataToSend[2]	INT	16#6424	Instance and Instance Segment	
DataToSend[3]	INT	16#0330	Attribute and Attribute Segment	6
ManagParam	ARRAY[0...3] OF INT			
ManagParam[0]	INT		MSB:Exchange #; LSB:bit 1=activity, bit 2=cancel	
ManagParam[1]	INT		Operation Report, Communication Report	
ManagParam[2]	INT	2	Function block timeout = 2 (200 ms)	
ManagParam[3]	INT	8	Length of DataToSend parameter, in bytes	2
ReceivedData	ARRAY[0...49] OF INT			2
ReqSize	INT	8		3

## Configuring the Address Variable

The Address variable identifies the explicit message originating device (in this example, the communication module) and the target device. Note that the Address variable does not include the Xway address elements {Network.Station} because we are not bridging through another PLC station. Use the `ADDM` function to convert the following character string to an address:

`ADDM('0.1.0{192.168.1.6}UNC.CIP')`, where:

- rack = 0
- module (slot number) = 1
- channel = 0
- remote device IP address = 192.168.1.6
- message type = unconnected
- protocol = CIP

## Configuring the ActionType Variable

The ActionType variable identifies the function type for the `DATA_EXCH` function block:

Variable	Description	Value (hex)
ActionType	Transmission followed by wait for response	16#01

## Configuring the DataToSend Variable

The DataToSend variable identifies the type of explicit message and the CIP request:

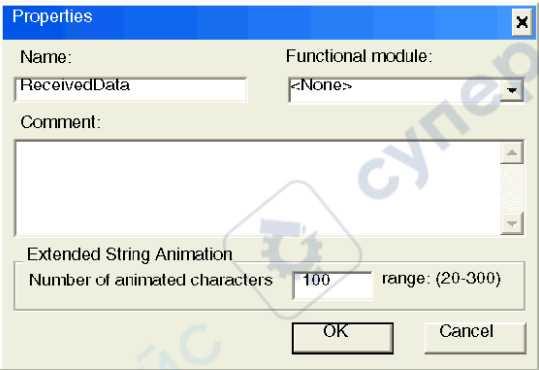
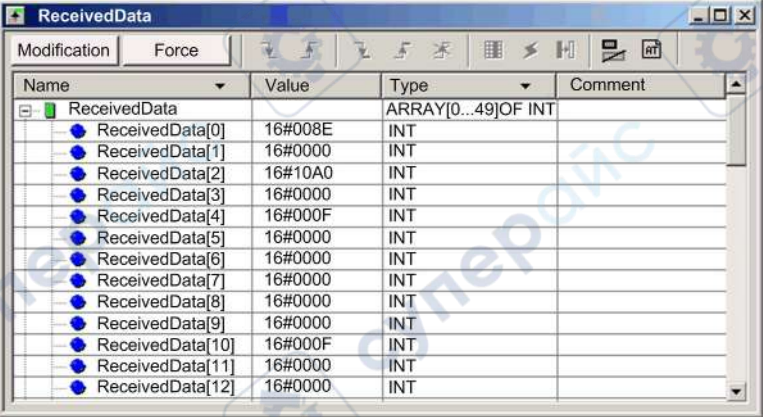
Variable	Description	Value (hex)
DataToSend[0]	CIP request service information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte = request size in words: 16#03 (3 decimal)</li> <li>Low byte = service code: 16#0E (14 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#030E
DataToSend[1]	CIP request class information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte = class: 16#04 (4 decimal)</li> <li>Low byte = class segment: 16#20 (32 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#0420
DataToSend[2]	CIP request instance information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte = instance: 16#64 (100 decimal)</li> <li>Low byte = instance segment: 16#24 (36 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#6424
DataToSend[3]	CIP request attribute information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte = attribute: 16#03 (3 decimal)</li> <li>Low byte = attribute segment: 16#30 (48 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#0330

## Viewing the Response

Use a Control Expert Animation table to display the ReceivedData variable array. Note that the ReceivedData variable array consists of the entire data buffer.

To display the CIP response, follow these steps:

Step	Action								
1	In Control Expert, select <b>Tools</b> → <b>Project Browser</b> to open the Project Browser.								
2	In the Project Browser, select the <b>Animation Tables</b> folder, then click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu appears.								
3	Select <b>New Animation Table</b> in the pop-up menu. A new animation table and its properties dialog both open.								
4	In the Properties dialog, edit the following values: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td><b>Name</b></td> <td>Type in a table name. For this example: <b>ReceivedData</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Functional module</b></td> <td>Accept the default <b>&lt;None&gt;</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Comment</b></td> <td>(Optional) Type your comment here.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Number of animated characters</b></td> <td>Type in <b>100</b>, representing the size of the data buffer in words.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	<b>Name</b>	Type in a table name. For this example: <b>ReceivedData</b> .	<b>Functional module</b>	Accept the default <b>&lt;None&gt;</b> .	<b>Comment</b>	(Optional) Type your comment here.	<b>Number of animated characters</b>	Type in <b>100</b> , representing the size of the data buffer in words.
<b>Name</b>	Type in a table name. For this example: <b>ReceivedData</b> .								
<b>Functional module</b>	Accept the default <b>&lt;None&gt;</b> .								
<b>Comment</b>	(Optional) Type your comment here.								
<b>Number of animated characters</b>	Type in <b>100</b> , representing the size of the data buffer in words.								

Step	Action
5	<p>The completed <b>Properties</b> dialog looks like this:</p>  <p>Click <b>OK</b> to close the dialog.</p>
6	<p>In the animation table's <b>Name</b> column, type in the name of the variable assigned to the RECP pin: <b>ReceivedData</b> and hit <b>Enter</b>. The animation table displays the ReceivedData variable.</p>
7	<p>Expand the ReceivedData variable to display its word array, where you can view the CIP response contained in the ReceivedData variable:</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> Each array entry presents 2 bytes of data in little endian format, where the least significant byte is stored in the smallest memory address. For example, '8E' in word[0] is the lower byte, and '00' is the upper byte.</p>

## EtherNet/IP Explicit Message Example: Read Modbus Object

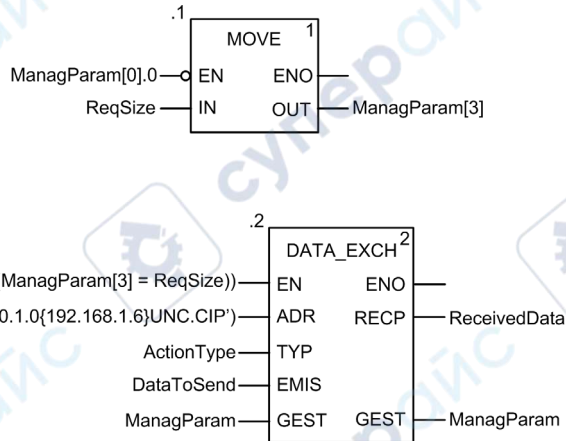
### Overview

The following unconnected explicit messaging example shows you how to use the `DATA_EXCH` function block to read data from a remote device—in this case an STB NIC 2212 network interface module at IP address 192.168.1.6—using the Read\_Holding\_Registers service of the Modbus Object.

You can perform the same explicit messaging service using the **EtherNet/IP Explicit Message** window of the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool (*see page 320*).

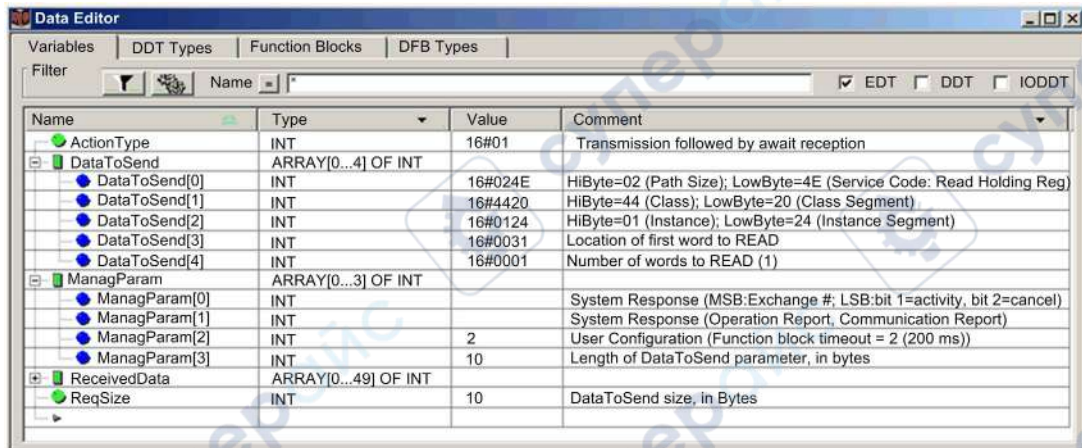
### Implementing the `DATA_EXCH` Function Block

To implement the `DATA_EXCH` function block, you need to create and assign variables for the following blocks:



## Declaring Variables

In this example, the following variables were defined. You can, of course, use different variable names in your explicit messaging configurations.



Name	Type	Value	Comment
ActionType	INT	16#01	Transmission followed by await reception
DataToSend	ARRAY[0...4] OF INT		
DataToSend[0]	INT	16#024E	HiByte=02 (Path Size); LowByte=4E (Service Code: Read Holding Reg)
DataToSend[1]	INT	16#4420	HiByte=44 (Class); LowByte=20 (Class Segment)
DataToSend[2]	INT	16#0124	HiByte=01 (Instance); LowByte=24 (Instance Segment)
DataToSend[3]	INT	16#0031	Location of first word to READ
DataToSend[4]	INT	16#0001	Number of words to READ (1)
ManagParam	ARRAY[0...3] OF INT		
ManagParam[0]	INT		System Response (MSB:Exchange #; LSB:bit 1=activity, bit 2=cancel)
ManagParam[1]	INT		System Response (Operation Report, Communication Report)
ManagParam[2]	INT	2	User Configuration (Function block timeout = 2 (200 ms))
ManagParam[3]	INT	10	Length of DataToSend parameter, in bytes
ReceivedData	ARRAY[0...49] OF INT		
ReqSize	INT	10	DataToSend size, in Bytes

## Configuring the Address Variable

The Address variable identifies the explicit message originating device (in this example, the Ethernet communication module) and the target device. Note that the Address variable does not include the Xway address elements {Network.Station} because we are not bridging through another PLC station. Use the `ADDM` function to convert the following character string to an address:

`ADDM('0.1.0{192.168.1.6}UNC.CIP')`, where:

- rack = 0
- module (slot number) = 1
- channel = 0
- remote device IP address = 192.168.1.6
- message type = unconnected
- protocol = CIP

## Configuring the ActionType Variable

The ActionType variable identifies the function type for the `DATA_EXCH` function block:

Variable	Description	Value (hex)
ActionType	Transmission followed by wait for response	16#01



## Configuring the DataToSend Variable

The DataToSend variable identifies the type of explicit message and the CIP request:

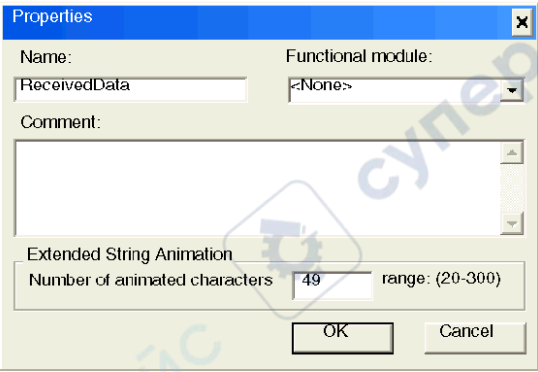
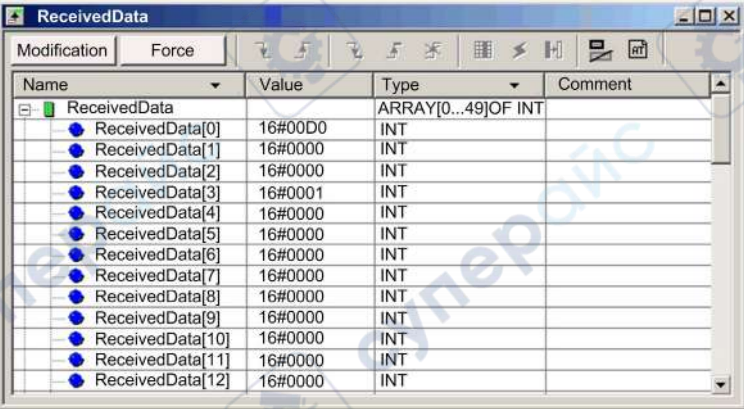
Variable	Description	Value (hex)
DataToSend[0]	CIP request service information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte = request size in words: 16#02 (2 decimal)</li> <li>Low byte = service code: 16#4E (78 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#024E
DataToSend[1]	CIP request class information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte = class: 16#44 (68 decimal)</li> <li>Low byte = class segment: 16#20 (32 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#4420
DataToSend[2]	CIP request instance information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte = instance: 16#01 (1 decimal)</li> <li>Low byte = instance segment: 16#24 (36 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#0124
DataToSend[3]	Location of first word to be read: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte = 16#00 (0 decimal)</li> <li>Low byte = 16#31 (49 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#0031
DataToSend[4]	Number of words to read: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte = attribute: 16#00 (0 decimal)</li> <li>Low byte = attribute segment: 16#01 (1 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#0001

## Viewing the Response

Use a Control Expert Animation table to display the ReceivedData variable array. Note that the ReceivedData variable array consists of the entire data buffer.

To display the CIP response, follow these steps:

Step	Action								
1	In Control Expert, select <b>Tools</b> → <b>Project Browser</b> to open the Project Browser.								
2	In the Project Browser, select the <b>Animation Tables</b> folder, then click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu appears.								
3	Select <b>New Animation Table</b> in the pop-up menu. A new animation table and its properties dialog both open.								
4	In the Properties dialog, edit the following values: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td><b>Name</b></td> <td>Type in a table name. For this example: <b>ReceivedData</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Functional module</b></td> <td>Accept the default <b>&lt;None&gt;</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Comment</b></td> <td>(Optional) Type your comment here.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Number of animated characters</b></td> <td>Type in <b>49</b>, representing the size of the data buffer in words.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	<b>Name</b>	Type in a table name. For this example: <b>ReceivedData</b> .	<b>Functional module</b>	Accept the default <b>&lt;None&gt;</b> .	<b>Comment</b>	(Optional) Type your comment here.	<b>Number of animated characters</b>	Type in <b>49</b> , representing the size of the data buffer in words.
<b>Name</b>	Type in a table name. For this example: <b>ReceivedData</b> .								
<b>Functional module</b>	Accept the default <b>&lt;None&gt;</b> .								
<b>Comment</b>	(Optional) Type your comment here.								
<b>Number of animated characters</b>	Type in <b>49</b> , representing the size of the data buffer in words.								

Step	Action
5	<p>The completed <b>Properties</b> dialog looks like this:</p>  <p>Click <b>OK</b> to close the dialog.</p>
6	<p>In the animation table's <b>Name</b> column, type in the name of the variable assigned to the RECP pin: <b>ReceivedData</b> and hit <b>Enter</b>. The animation table displays the ReceivedData variable.</p>
7	<p>Expand the ReceivedData variable to display its word array, where you can view the CIP response contained in the ReceivedData variable:</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> Each array entry presents 2 bytes of data in little endian format, where the least significant byte is stored in the smallest memory address. For example, 'CE' in word[0] is the lower byte, and '00' is the upper byte.</p>



## EtherNet/IP Explicit Message Example: Write Modbus Object

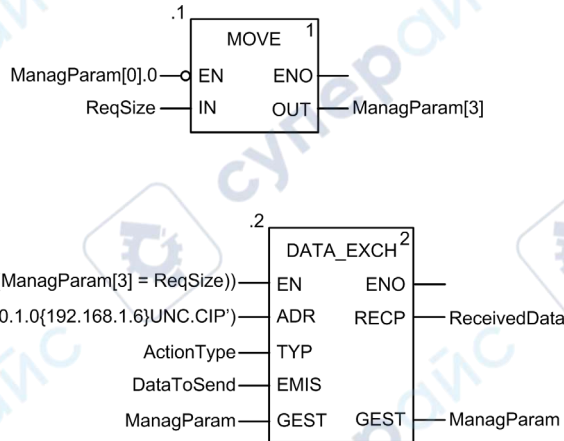
### Overview

The following unconnected explicit messaging example shows you how to use the `DATA_EXCH` function block to write data to a remote device—in this case an STB NIC 2212 network interface module at IP address 192.168.1.6—using the Write\_Holding\_Registers service of the Modbus Object.

You can perform the same explicit messaging service using the **EtherNet/IP Explicit Message** window of the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool (*see page 320*).

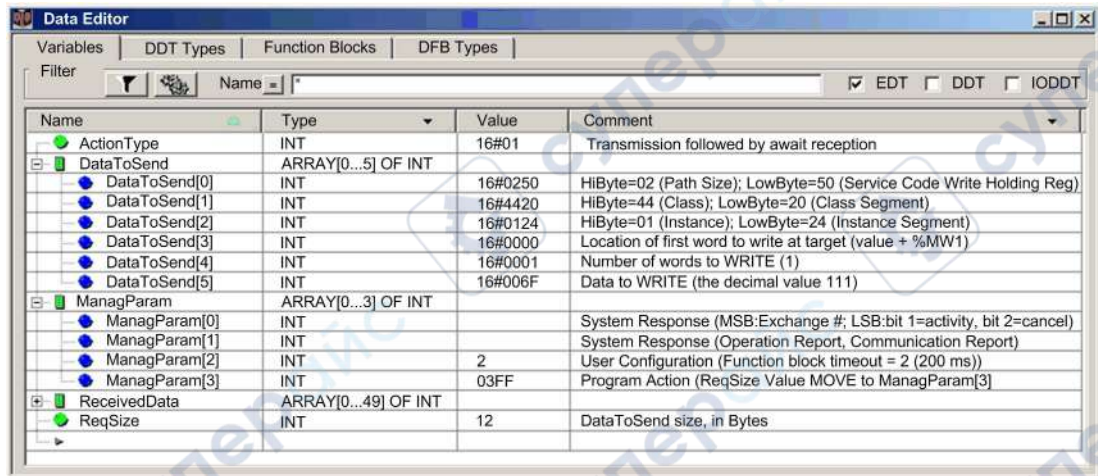
### Implementing the `DATA_EXCH` Function Block

To implement the `DATA_EXCH` function block, you need to create and assign variables for the following blocks:



## Declaring Variables

In this example, the following variables were defined. You can, of course, use different variable names in your explicit messaging configurations.



Name	Type	Value	Comment
ActionType	INT	16#01	Transmission followed by await reception
DataToSend	ARRAY[0...5] OF INT		
DataToSend[0]	INT	16#0250	HiByte=02 (Path Size); LowByte=50 (Service Code Write Holding Reg)
DataToSend[1]	INT	16#4420	HiByte=44 (Class); LowByte=20 (Class Segment)
DataToSend[2]	INT	16#0124	HiByte=01 (Instance); LowByte=24 (Instance Segment)
DataToSend[3]	INT	16#0000	Location of first word to write at target (value + %MW1)
DataToSend[4]	INT	16#0001	Number of words to WRITE (1)
DataToSend[5]	INT	16#006F	Data to WRITE (the decimal value 111)
ManagParam	ARRAY[0...3] OF INT		
ManagParam[0]	INT		System Response (MSB:Exchange #; LSB:bit 1=activity, bit 2=cancel)
ManagParam[1]	INT		System Response (Operation Report, Communication Report)
ManagParam[2]	INT	2	User Configuration (Function block timeout = 2 (200 ms))
ManagParam[3]	INT	03FF	Program Action (ReqSize Value MOVE to ManagParam[3])
ReceivedData	ARRAY[0...49] OF INT		
ReqSize	INT	12	DataToSend size, in Bytes

## Configuring the Address Variable

The Address variable identifies the explicit message originating device (in this example, the communication module) and the target device. Note that the Address variable does not include the Xway address elements {Network.Station} because we are not bridging through another PLC station. Use the `ADDMM` function to convert the following character string to an address:

`ADDMM('0.1.0{192.168.1.6}UNC.CIP')`, where:

- rack = 0
- module (slot number) = 1
- channel = 0
- remote device IP address = 192.168.1.6
- message type = unconnected
- protocol = CIP

## Configuring the ActionType Variable

The ActionType variable identifies the function type for the `DATA_EXCH` function block:

Variable	Description	Value (hex)
ActionType	Transmission followed by wait for response	16#01

## Configuring the DataToSend Variable

The DataToSend variable identifies the type of explicit message and the CIP request:

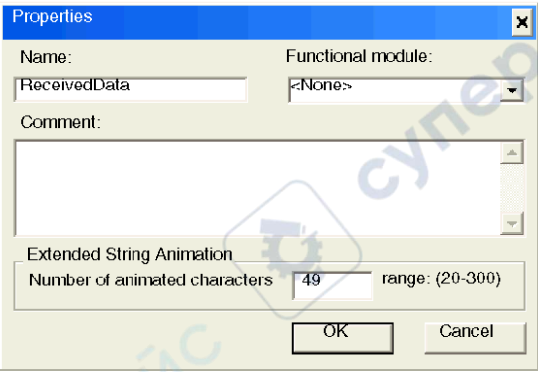
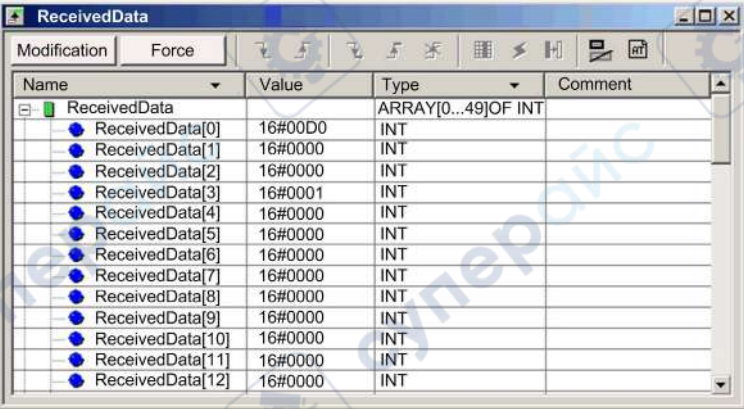
Variable	Description	Value (hex)
DataToSend[0]	CIP request service information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte = request size in words: 16#02 (2 decimal)</li> <li>Low byte = service code: 16#50 (80 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#0250
DataToSend[1]	CIP request class information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte = class: 16#44 (68 decimal)</li> <li>Low byte = class segment: 16#20 (32 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#4420
DataToSend[2]	CIP request instance information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte = instance: 16#01 (1 decimal)</li> <li>Low byte = instance segment: 16#24 (36 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#0124
DataToSend[3]	Location of first word to write (+ %MW1): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte = 16#00 (0 decimal)</li> <li>Low byte = 16#00 (0 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#0000
DataToSend[4]	Number of words to write: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte = attribute: 16#00 (0 decimal)</li> <li>Low byte = attribute segment: 16#01 (1 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#0001
DataToSend[5]	Data to write: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High byte = attribute: 16#00 (0 decimal)</li> <li>Low byte = attribute segment: 16#6F (111 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#006F

## Viewing the Response

Use a Control Expert Animation table to display the ReceivedData variable array. Note that the ReceivedData variable array consists of the entire data buffer.

To display the CIP response, follow these steps:

Step	Action								
1	In Control Expert, select <b>Tools</b> → <b>Project Browser</b> to open the Project Browser.								
2	In the Project Browser, select the <b>Animation Tables</b> folder, then click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu appears.								
3	Select <b>New Animation Table</b> in the pop-up menu. A new animation table and its properties dialog both open.								
4	In the Properties dialog, edit the following values: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td><b>Name</b></td> <td>Type in a table name. For this example: <b>ReceivedData</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Functional module</b></td> <td>Accept the default <b>&lt;None&gt;</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Comment</b></td> <td>(Optional) Type your comment here.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Number of animated characters</b></td> <td>Type in <b>49</b>, representing the size of the data buffer in words.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	<b>Name</b>	Type in a table name. For this example: <b>ReceivedData</b> .	<b>Functional module</b>	Accept the default <b>&lt;None&gt;</b> .	<b>Comment</b>	(Optional) Type your comment here.	<b>Number of animated characters</b>	Type in <b>49</b> , representing the size of the data buffer in words.
<b>Name</b>	Type in a table name. For this example: <b>ReceivedData</b> .								
<b>Functional module</b>	Accept the default <b>&lt;None&gt;</b> .								
<b>Comment</b>	(Optional) Type your comment here.								
<b>Number of animated characters</b>	Type in <b>49</b> , representing the size of the data buffer in words.								

Step	Action
5	<p>The completed <b>Properties</b> dialog looks like this:</p>  <p>Click <b>OK</b> to close the dialog.</p>
6	<p>In the animation table's <b>Name</b> column, type in the name of the variable assigned to the RECP pin: <b>ReceivedData</b> and hit <b>Enter</b>. The animation table displays the ReceivedData variable.</p>
7	<p>Expand the ReceivedData variable to display its word array, where you can view the CIP response contained in the ReceivedData variable:</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> Each array entry presents 2 bytes of data in little endian format, where the least significant byte is stored in the smallest memory address. For example, 'D0' in word[0] is the lower byte, and '00' is the upper byte.</p>

## Section 8.3

### Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Using DATA\_EXCH

#### Overview

This section shows you how to configure `DATA_EXCH` function block parameters for Modbus TCP explicit messages.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Function Codes	311
Configuring Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Using <code>DATA_EXCH</code>	312
Modbus TCP Explicit Message Example: Read Register Request	314

## Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Function Codes

### Overview

You can execute Modbus TCP explicit messages using either a Control Expert `DATA_EXCH` function block or the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool's **Modbus Explicit Message Window**.

**NOTE:** Configuration edits made to an Ethernet communication module from the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool are not saved to the operating parameters stored in the CPU and, therefore, are not sent by the CPU to the module on startup.

### Function Codes

The function codes supported by the Control Expert graphical user interface include the following standard explicit messaging functions:

Function Code (dec)	Description
1	Read bits (%M)
2	Read input bits (%I)
3	Read words (%MW)
4	Read input words (%IW)
15	Write bits (%M)
16	Write words (%MW)

**NOTE:** You can use the `DATA_EXCH` function block to execute any Modbus function, via program logic. Because the available function codes are too numerous to list here, refer instead to the Modbus IDA website for more information about these Modbus functions, at: <http://www.Modbus.org>.

## Configuring Modbus TCP Explicit Messaging Using DATA\_EXCH

### Introduction

When you use the `DATA_EXCH` block to create an explicit message for a Modbus TCP device, configure this block the same way you would configure it for any other Modbus communication. Refer to the Control Expert online help for instructions on how to configure the `DATA_EXCH` block.

### Configuring ADDM Block Unit ID Settings

When you configure the `DATA_EXCH` block, use the `ADDM` block to set the `DATA_EXCH` block's Address parameter. The `ADDM` block presents the configuration format `ADDM('rack.slot.channel[ip_address]UnitID.message_type.protocol')` where:

The parameter...	Represents...
rack	the number assigned to the rack containing the communication module
slot	the position of the communication module in the rack
channel	the communication channel—set to a value of 0
ip_address	the IP address of the remote device, for example, 192.168.1.7
Unit ID	the destination node address, also known as the Modbus Plus on Ethernet Transporter (MET) mapping index value
message_type	the three character string <b>TCP</b>
protocol	the three character string <b>MBS</b>

The Unit ID value in a Modbus message indicates the destination of the message. The manner in which the communication module handles the Unit ID value depends upon its role as either a server or a client. When the communication module acts as a:

- **server:** a message with Unit ID value of 255 is directed to and processed by the communication module itself. Other messages are passed to the CPU.
- **client:** a message with Unit ID value of 255 is directed to and handled by the communication module itself. Other values are passed to the CPU.

Modbus function code 3 provides easy access to a variety of diagnostic functions, including basic network diagnostics, Ethernet port diagnostics, and Modbus port 502 diagnostics.

To access the function code 3 diagnostics (see *Quantum EIO, Distributed I/O Network, Installation and Configuration Guide*) from the local device, set the Unit ID to 255.



### Contents of the Received\_Data Parameter

The `Received_Data` parameter contains the Modbus response. The length of the response varies, and is reported by `Management_Param[3]` after the response is received. The format of the Modbus response is described, below:

Offset (words)	Length (bytes)	Description
0	2	First word of the Modbus response: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● High byte (MSB):               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ if successful: Modbus Function Code</li> <li>○ if not: Modbus function code + 16#80</li> </ul> </li> <li>● Low byte (LSB):               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ if successful: depends on the request</li> <li>○ if not: Modbus exception code (<i>see page 431</i>)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
1	Length of the <code>Received_Data</code> parameter – 2	Remainder of the Modbus response: depends on the specific Modbus request)

**NOTE:** Structure the response in little endian order.



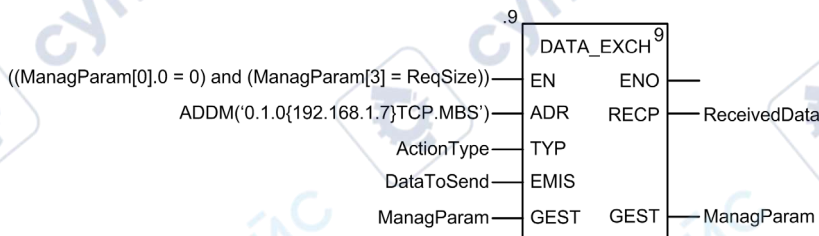
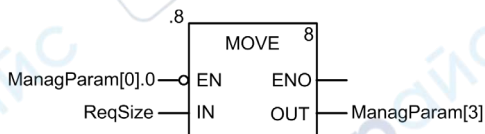
## Modbus TCP Explicit Message Example: Read Register Request

### Overview

The following example shows you how to use the `DATA_EXCH` function block to send an explicit messaging Modbus TCP request to a remote device—in this case an STB NIP 2212 network interface module at IP address 192.168.1.7—to read a single word located in the remote device at register 5391.

### Implementing the `DATA_EXCH` Function Block

To implement the `DATA_EXCH` function block, you need to create and assign variables for the following blocks:



## Declaring Variables

In this example, the following variables were defined. You can, of course, use different variable names in your explicit messaging configurations.

In this example, the following variables were defined. You can, of course, use different variable names in your explicit messaging configurations.

The screenshot shows the 'Data Editor' window with a table of declared variables. The table has columns for Name, Type, Value, Comment, and Used. The variables are:

Name	Type	Value	Comment	Used
ActionType	INT	16#01	Transmission followed by await reception	1
DataToSend	ARRAY[0...2] OF INT			2
DataToSend[0]	INT	16#1503	High byte of register address; Function Code	
DataToSend[1]	INT	16#000F	High byte of number of registers to read; Low byte of register address	
DataToSend[2]	INT	16#0001	Not used; Low byte of number of registers to read	
ManagParam	ARRAY[0...3] OF INT			6
ManagParam[0]	INT		High byte: Exchange #; Low byte: bit 1 = activity, bit 2 = cancel	
ManagParam[1]	INT		Operation Report; Communication Report	
ManagParam[2]	INT	2	Function block timeout = 2 (200 ms)	
ManagParam[3]	INT	5	Length of DataToSend parameter, in bytes	2
ReceivedData	ARRAY[0...1] OF INT			2
ReqSize	INT	5		3

## Configuring the Address Variable

The Address variable identifies the explicit message originating device (in this example, the communication module) and the target device. Note that the Address variable does not include the Unit ID element. Use the `ADDMM` function to convert the following character string to an address:

`ADDMM('0.1.0{192.168.1.7}TCP.MBS')`, where:

- rack = 0
- module (slot number) = 1
- channel = 0
- remote device IP address = 192.168.1.7
- message type = TCP
- protocol = Modbus

**NOTE:** As indicated above, the configuration of the ADDM function in this example does not include a Unit ID element, which – if included – would be inserted after the “}” following the remote device IP address and would be followed by a “.” (e.g., `ADDM('0.1.0{192.168.1.7}0.TCP.MBS')`, where 0 is the Unit ID). The configuration of the ADDM function, as set forth above, will work for most Modbus TCP devices. However, there may be some exceptions, as noted below:

- Unit ID = 255: The absence of an express Unit ID value will be interpreted as Unit ID = 255. For some devices, a Unit ID of 255 is used to access Ethernet diagnostic data through Modbus TCP (via Modbus FC03 “Read Holding Registers”). Refer to the Quantum platform topic Supported Diagnostic Codes (*see Quantum EIO, Control Network, Installation and Configuration Guide*) for diagnostics available to Modbus TCP devices.
- Unit ID 100: For other Modbus TCP devices, Unit ID = 100 is used for the same purpose as Unit ID = 255, as described above. Refer to the Modicon M580 platform topic Diagnostics Available through Modbus/TCP (*see Modicon M580, Hardware, Reference Manual*) for additional information.

### Configuring the ActionType Variable

The ActionType variable identifies the function type for the DATA\_EXCH function block:

Variable	Description	Value (hex)
ActionType	Transmission followed by wait for response	16#01

### Configuring the DataToSend Variable

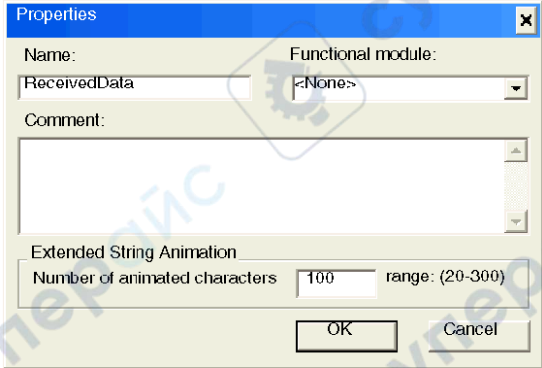
The DataToSend variable contains the target register address and the number of registers to read:

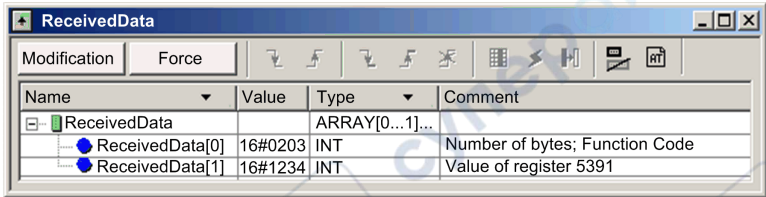
Variable	Description	Value (hex)
DataToSend[0]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● High byte = Most significant byte (MSB) of register address 16#15 (21 decimal)</li> <li>● Low byte = function code: 16#03 (03 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#1503
DataToSend[1]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● High byte = Most significant byte (MSB) of the number of registers to read: 16#00 (0 decimal)</li> <li>● Low byte = Least significant byte (LSB) of register address: 16#0F (15 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#000F
DataToSend[2]	CIP request instance information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● High byte = not used: 16#00 (0 decimal)</li> <li>● Low byte = Least significant byte (LSB) of the number of registers to read: 16#01 (1 decimal)</li> </ul>	16#0001

## Viewing the Response

Use a Control Expert Animation table to display the ReceivedData variable array. Note that the ReceivedData variable array consists of the entire data buffer.

To display the Modbus TCP response, follow these steps:

Step	Action								
1	In Control Expert, select <b>Tools</b> → <b>Project Browser</b> to open the Project Browser.								
2	In the Project Browser, select the <b>Animation Tables</b> folder, then click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu appears.								
3	Select <b>New Animation Table</b> in the pop-up menu. A new animation table and its properties dialog both open.								
4	In the Properties dialog, edit the following values: <table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Name</b></td> <td>Type in a table name. For this example: <b>ReceivedData</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Functional module</b></td> <td>Accept the default <b>&lt;None&gt;</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Comment</b></td> <td>(Optional) Type your comment here.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Number of animated characters</b></td> <td>Type in <b>100</b>, representing the size of the data buffer in words.</td> </tr> </table>	<b>Name</b>	Type in a table name. For this example: <b>ReceivedData</b> .	<b>Functional module</b>	Accept the default <b>&lt;None&gt;</b> .	<b>Comment</b>	(Optional) Type your comment here.	<b>Number of animated characters</b>	Type in <b>100</b> , representing the size of the data buffer in words.
<b>Name</b>	Type in a table name. For this example: <b>ReceivedData</b> .								
<b>Functional module</b>	Accept the default <b>&lt;None&gt;</b> .								
<b>Comment</b>	(Optional) Type your comment here.								
<b>Number of animated characters</b>	Type in <b>100</b> , representing the size of the data buffer in words.								
5	The completed <b>Properties</b> dialog looks like this:  <p>Click <b>OK</b> to close the dialog.</p>								
6	In the animation table's <b>Name</b> column, type in the name of the variable assigned to the databuffer: <b>ReceivedData</b> and hit <b>Enter</b> . The animation table displays the ReceivedData variable.								

Step	Action
7	<p>Expand the ReceivedData variable to display its word array, where you can view the CIP response contained in the ReceivedData variable:</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> Each array entry presents 2 bytes of data in little endian format. For example, '03' in word[0] is the low byte, and '02' is the high byte.</p>

---

## Section 8.4

### Explicit Messaging via the Control Expert GUI

---

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Sending Explicit Messages to EtherNet/IP Devices	320
Sending Explicit Messages to Modbus TCP Devices	323

## Sending Explicit Messages to EtherNet/IP Devices

### Overview

Use the **EtherNet/IP Explicit Message** window to send an explicit message from Control Expert to an EtherNet/IP module or device on the network.

An explicit message can be sent as either a connected, or an unconnected message:

- an unconnected message requires path — or addressing — information identifying the destination device and, optionally, device attributes
- a connected explicit message contains both path information and a connection identifier to the target device

You can use explicit messaging to perform many different services. Not every EtherNet/IP device supports every service.

**NOTE:** Before you can perform explicit messaging, connect the DTM for the upstream communication module to the module itself. To do this, select the module node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

The **EtherNet/IP Explicit Message** window, below, presents an example of both the configuration of an EtherNet/IP explicit message and the response. The explicit message is addressed to a remote STB NIC 2212 network interface module to obtain diagnostic information.

The screenshot shows the 'EtherNet/IP Explicit Message' configuration window. It is organized into several panels:

- Address:** IP Address: 192 . 168 . 1 . 6; Class: 4; Instance: 100; Attribute:  Attribute 3.
- Service:** Number: 14; Name: Get\_Attribute\_Single; Enter Path (hex):  Enter Path (hex) 20 04 24 64 30 03.
- Data(hex):** An empty text area for entering hex data.
- Messaging:** Radio buttons for Connected and Unconnected. Unconnected is selected. There is a 'Send to Device' button and a 'Repeat (500ms)' checkbox.
- Response(hex):** A text area showing the received hex response:
 

```
A0 10 00 00 0F 00 00 00; .....
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00; .....
0F 00 00 00; .....
```
- Status:** Status = 0(0x00), Status EtherNet/IP = 0(0x00).

## Sending Explicit Messages

The following steps explain how to execute the EtherNet/IP explicit message, depicted above:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the communication module that is upstream of the target device.
2	Click the right mouse button, and in the pop-up menu select <b>Device menu → EtherNet/IP Explicit Message</b> . <b>Result:</b> The <b>EtherNet/IP Explicit Message</b> window opens.
3	Configure the explicit message using the following fields:
IP Address	The IP address of the target device, used to identify the target of the explicit message. In the above example: <b>192.168.1.6</b> .
Class	The class identifier of the target device, used in the construction of the message path. An integer from 1 to 65535. In this example: <b>4</b> .
Instance	The class instance of the target device, used in the construction of the message path. An integer from 0 to 65535. In this example: <b>100</b> .
Attribute	(Optional) The specific device attribute — or property — that is the target of the explicit message, used in the construction of the message path. An integer from 0 to 65535. In this example: <b>3</b> <b>NOTE:</b> Select the check box to enable this field.
<b>NOTE:</b> Refer to your EtherNet/IP device user manual for class, instance and attribute values.	
Number	The integer associated with the service to be performed by the explicit message. An integer from 1 to 127. <b>NOTE:</b> If you select <b>Custom Service</b> as the named service, type in a service number. This field is read-only for all other services.
Name	Select the service the explicit message is intended to perform. In this example: <b>Get_Attribute_Single</b> .
Enter Path	(Optional) Select this check box to enable the message path field, where you can manually enter the entire path to the target device. In this example, the path is not manually entered. <b>NOTE:</b> Displayed only when <b>Advanced Mode</b> is enabled.
Data	The data to be sent to the target device, for services that send data. In this example, leave blank.
Messaging	Select the type of explicit message to send: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Connected</b></li> <li>● <b>Unconnected</b></li> </ul> In this example, select <b>Unconnected</b> .
Repeat 500 ms	Select this check box to re-send the explicit message every 500 ms. In this example, leave this blank.



Step	Action
4	After your explicit message is configured, click <b>Send to Device</b> . The <b>Response</b> area displays the data sent to the configuration tool by the target device in hexadecimal format. The <b>Status</b> area displays messages indicating whether or not the explicit message has succeeded.
5	Click <b>Close</b> to close the window.

## Sending Explicit Messages to Modbus TCP Devices

### Overview

Use the **Modbus Explicit Message** window to send an explicit message from Control Expert to a Modbus TCP module or device on the network.

You can use explicit messaging to perform many different services. Not all Modbus TCP devices support all services.

**NOTE:** Before you can perform explicit messaging, connect the DTM for the upstream communication module to the module itself. To do this, select the module node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

The **Modbus TCP Explicit Message** window, below, presents an example of both the configuration of a Modbus TCP explicit message, and the response. In this example, the explicit message is used to read 2 registers in the remote STB NIP 2212 network interface module, starting at offset 5391.

The screenshot shows the 'Modbus TCP Explicit Message' configuration window. It is organized into several sections:

- Address:** IP Address (192.168.1.7), Start Address (5391), Quantity (2), Read Device Id Code (Basic Device Identity), Object Id (0), Unit ID (255).
- Service:** Number (3), Name (ReadHoldingRegisters).
- Data:** An empty text area for the data payload.
- Response:** A text area showing the received response: 00 06 00 00.
- Status:** Status = 0(0x0), description:ModbusNoError.

Additional controls include a 'Send to Device' button and a 'Repeat (500ms)' checkbox.

## Sending Explicit Messages

To send an explicit message to a target Modbus TCP device:

Step	Action																				
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the communication module that is upstream of the target device.																				
2	Click the right mouse button, and in the pop-up menu select <b>Device menu → Modbus Explicit Message</b> . <b>Result:</b> The <b>Modbus Explicit Message</b> window opens.																				
3	Configure the explicit message using the following fields: <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%;">IP Address</td> <td>The IP address of the target device, used to identify the target of the explicit message. In this example: <b>192.168.1.7</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Start Address</td> <td>A component of the addressing path. In this example <b>5391</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Quantity</td> <td>A component of the addressing path. In this example <b>2</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Read Device Id Code</td> <td>(read-only) The service the explicit message is intended to perform. In this example <b>Basic Device Identify</b>. Not used in this example.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Object Id</td> <td>(read-only) Specify the object the explicit message is intended to access. In this example <b>0</b>. Not used in this example.</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">Refer to your Modbus TCP device user manual for Start Address, Quantity, Read Device Id Code, and Object Id values.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Unit Id</td> <td>The number of the device, or module, that is the target of the connection. A value of:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● 255 (the default) used to access the Ethernet communication module itself</li> <li>● 0...254 identifies the device number of the target device, behind a Modbus TCP to Modbus gateway</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Number</td> <td>(read-only) The integer associated with the service to be performed by the explicit message. An integer from 0...255.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Name</td> <td>Select the service the explicit message is intended to perform. In this example <b>ReadHoldingRegisters</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Repeat 500ms</td> <td>Select this check box to re-send the explicit message every 500 ms. Leave this check box de-selected.</td> </tr> </table>	IP Address	The IP address of the target device, used to identify the target of the explicit message. In this example: <b>192.168.1.7</b> .	Start Address	A component of the addressing path. In this example <b>5391</b> .	Quantity	A component of the addressing path. In this example <b>2</b> .	Read Device Id Code	(read-only) The service the explicit message is intended to perform. In this example <b>Basic Device Identify</b> . Not used in this example.	Object Id	(read-only) Specify the object the explicit message is intended to access. In this example <b>0</b> . Not used in this example.	Refer to your Modbus TCP device user manual for Start Address, Quantity, Read Device Id Code, and Object Id values.		Unit Id	The number of the device, or module, that is the target of the connection. A value of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● 255 (the default) used to access the Ethernet communication module itself</li> <li>● 0...254 identifies the device number of the target device, behind a Modbus TCP to Modbus gateway</li> </ul>	Number	(read-only) The integer associated with the service to be performed by the explicit message. An integer from 0...255.	Name	Select the service the explicit message is intended to perform. In this example <b>ReadHoldingRegisters</b>	Repeat 500ms	Select this check box to re-send the explicit message every 500 ms. Leave this check box de-selected.
IP Address	The IP address of the target device, used to identify the target of the explicit message. In this example: <b>192.168.1.7</b> .																				
Start Address	A component of the addressing path. In this example <b>5391</b> .																				
Quantity	A component of the addressing path. In this example <b>2</b> .																				
Read Device Id Code	(read-only) The service the explicit message is intended to perform. In this example <b>Basic Device Identify</b> . Not used in this example.																				
Object Id	(read-only) Specify the object the explicit message is intended to access. In this example <b>0</b> . Not used in this example.																				
Refer to your Modbus TCP device user manual for Start Address, Quantity, Read Device Id Code, and Object Id values.																					
Unit Id	The number of the device, or module, that is the target of the connection. A value of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● 255 (the default) used to access the Ethernet communication module itself</li> <li>● 0...254 identifies the device number of the target device, behind a Modbus TCP to Modbus gateway</li> </ul>																				
Number	(read-only) The integer associated with the service to be performed by the explicit message. An integer from 0...255.																				
Name	Select the service the explicit message is intended to perform. In this example <b>ReadHoldingRegisters</b>																				
Repeat 500ms	Select this check box to re-send the explicit message every 500 ms. Leave this check box de-selected.																				
4	After your explicit message is configured, click <b>Send to Device</b> . The <b>Response</b> area displays any data sent to the configuration tool by the target device in hexadecimal format. The <b>Status</b> area displays messages indicating whether or not the explicit message has succeeded.																				
5	Click <b>Close</b> to close the window.																				

---

# Chapter 9

## Diagnostics

---

### Overview

This chapter describes methods of diagnosing the condition of the Ethernet communication module provided by the:

- Ethernet communication module hardware, and
- Control Expert configuration software

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Topic	Page
9.1	Module Hardware Diagnostics	326
9.2	Control Expert Software Diagnostics	328
9.3	CPU I/O Block Diagnostics	355

## Section 9.1

### Module Hardware Diagnostics

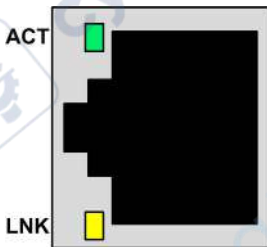
#### LED Indicators for the BMX NOC 0401

##### LED Indicators

The BMX NOC 0401 module displays the following indicators in the LED display area:



The module also displays the following LED indicators next to each Ethernet port connector:



## LED Descriptions

Use the LED display to diagnose the state of the module, as follows:

LED	Color	Description
RUN	Green	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Off:</b> Indicates that the module is not communicating with the CPU over the backplane.</li> <li>● <b>Steady Green:</b> Indicates that the module: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ has just been turned on and has not yet started the LED power-up test, or</li> <li>○ is communicating with the CPU over the backplane</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
ERR	Red	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Off:</b> The module is operating normally.</li> <li>● <b>Blinking Red:</b> The module is not configured (or the configuration is in progress), or backplane communication has stopped.</li> <li>● <b>Steady Red:</b> The module has detected an event.</li> </ul>
MS (Module Status)	Green/ Red	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Off:</b> Power is not being supplied to the module.</li> <li>● <b>Steady Green:</b> The module is operating normally.</li> <li>● <b>Blinking Green:</b> The module has not been configured.</li> <li>● <b>Steady Red:</b> The module has detected a major event.</li> <li>● <b>Blinking Red:</b> The module has detected a recoverable event.</li> </ul>
NS (Network Status)	Green/ Red	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Off:</b> Power is not being supplied to the module, or the module has not been assigned an IP address.</li> <li>● <b>Steady Green:</b> The module has established at least one CIP connection.</li> <li>● <b>Blinking Green:</b> The module has obtained an IP address but has not established any CIP connections.</li> <li>● <b>Steady Red:</b> The module has detected that its IP address is a duplicate IP address.</li> <li>● <b>Blinking Red:</b> One or more CIP connection (with the module as target) have timed out.</li> </ul>
ETH STS (Ethernet Status)	Amber	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Off:</b> No power is supplied to the module.</li> <li>● <b>Steady Amber:</b> Indicates that the module is operating normally.</li> <li>● <b>Four flashes:</b> The module has detected a duplicate IP address.</li> <li>● <b>Five flashes:</b> The module is waiting for a served IP address.</li> <li>● <b>Six flashes:</b> The module is using its default IP address.</li> <li>● <b>Seven flashes:</b> The module has detected a configuration error.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If more than one diagnostic condition exists simultaneously, the Ready LED displays the shortest flash sequence.</p>
LNK (Link)	Yellow/ Green	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Off:</b> An Ethernet link has not been established.</li> <li>● <b>Yellow:</b> A 10 Mbit Ethernet link has been established</li> <li>● <b>Green:</b> A 100 Mbit Ethernet link has been established</li> </ul>
ACT (Activity)	Green	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Off:</b> There is no receive or transmit activity.</li> <li>● <b>Flashes Green:</b> Indicates activity.</li> </ul>

## Section 9.2

### Control Expert Software Diagnostics

#### Overview

This section describes the diagnostic tools, provided by the Control Expert configuration software, that you can use to monitor the condition of the Ethernet communication module.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Using the Diagnostic Window	329
Ethernet Port Diagnostics	332
Bandwidth Diagnostics	336
Email Diagnostics	339
Network Time Service Diagnostics	341
Communication Module RSTP Diagnostics	344
Local Slave / Connection Diagnostics	347
Local Slave or Connection I/O Value Diagnostics	351
Logging	353

## Using the Diagnostic Window

### Introduction

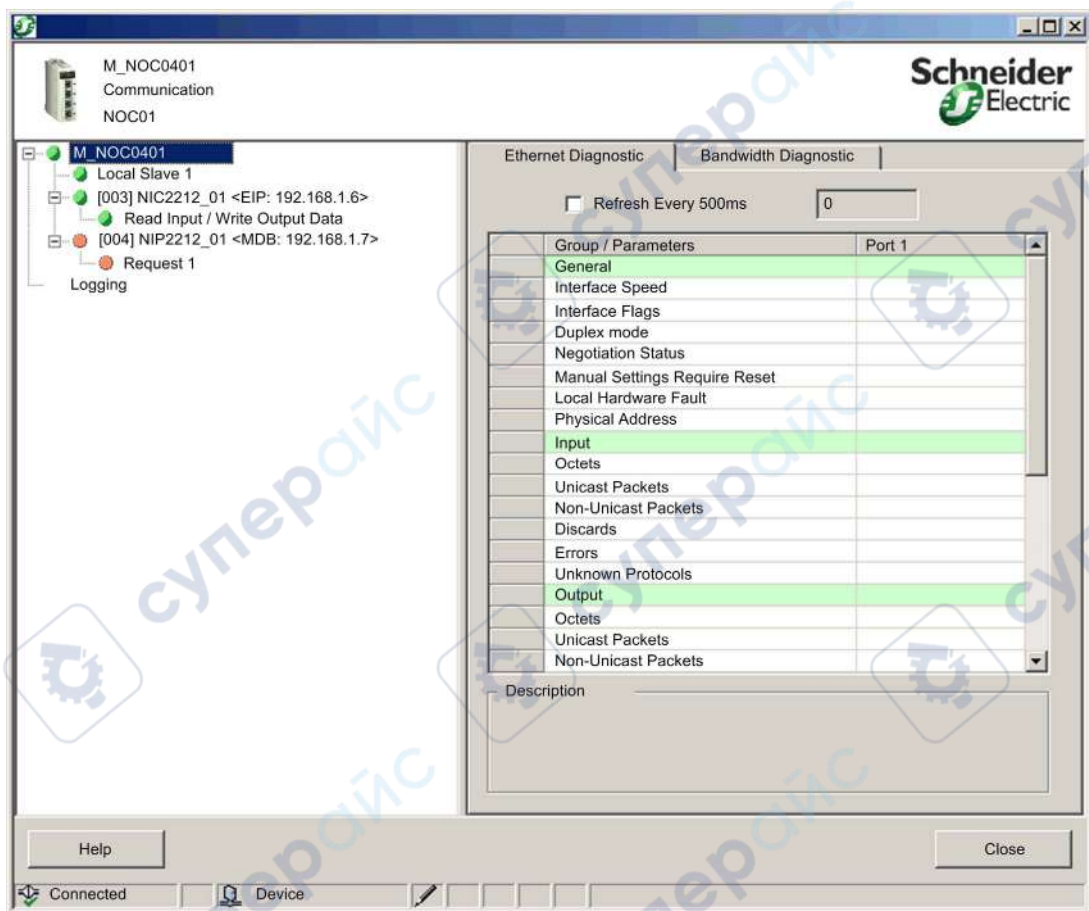
Use the **Diagnostic** window to display:

- LED icons (in the left pane of the window) that indicate the operating status of modules, devices and connections
- pages (in the right pane of the window) that present diagnostic data for the following:
  - the communication module
  - local slave nodes activated for the communication module
  - EtherNet/IP connections between the communication module and a remote EtherNet/IP device

**NOTE:** Before you can open the **Diagnostic** window, connect the DTM for the target communication module to the physical module itself. To do this, select the module node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.



The **Diagnostic** window looks like this:





To open the **Diagnostic** window:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the communication module and click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens.
2	In the menu, select <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Diagnostic</b> .

### Diagnostic LED Icons

During the time that a communication module DTM is connected to the physical communication module, Control Expert sends an explicit message request once per second to detect the state of the communication module and the states of the remote devices and EtherNet/IP connections linked to that module.

Control Expert places one of the following status icons over the module, device or connection nodes in the left pane of the **Diagnostic** window to indicate its current status:

This icon...	Indicates the following state for a...	
	Communication module	Connection to a remote device
	Run state	The health bit for every EtherNet/IP connection and Modbus TCP request, to a remote device or to a sub-device or module, is set to active (1).
	One of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● unknown</li> <li>● started</li> <li>● stopped</li> <li>● not connected</li> </ul>	The health bit for at least one EtherNet/IP connection or Modbus TCP request, to a remote device or to a sub-device or module, is set to inactive (0).

## Ethernet Port Diagnostics

### Introduction

Use the **Ethernet Diagnostic** page to display either dynamically generated or static data for the communication module's Ethernet port(s). The page displays five columns of data, as follows:

- one column for an module's Internal Port, and
- up to four columns for the enabled external Ethernet ports (ports 1, 2, 3 and 4)

Use the **Refresh Every 500ms** checkbox to display static or dynamic data, as follows:

When the checkbox is...	This page...
Selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Displays data that is dynamically updated every 500 ms, and</li><li>● Increments the number at the top of the table each time data is refreshed</li></ul>
De-selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Displays static data, and</li><li>● Does not Increment the number at the top of the table, which instead displays a constant value</li></ul>

**NOTE:** Before you can open the **Diagnostic** window, connect the DTM for the target communication module to the physical module itself. To do this, select the module node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

The **Ethernet Diagnostic** page looks like this:

The screenshot shows the 'Ethernet Diagnostic' tab selected. At the top, there is a 'Refresh Every 500ms' checkbox which is checked, and a refresh interval of '112' is displayed. Below this is a table with the following data:

Group / Parameters	Port 1	Port 2	Port 3	Port 4	Internal Port
<b>General</b>					
Interface Speed	100	100	100	100	100
Interface Flags	Active link	Active link	Inactive link	Inactive link	Active link
Duplex mode	Full duplex	Full duplex	Indetermined	Indetermined	Full duplex
Negotiation Status	Successfully n	Successfully n	Auto-negotiat	Auto-negotia	Successfully n
Manual Settings Require Reset	Interface can a	Interface can a	Interface can a	Interface ca	Interface can
Local Hardware Fault	No	No	No	No	No
Physical Address	08-80-F4-01-FC	08-80-F4-01-F	08-80-F4-01-F	08-80-F4-01-	08-80-F4-01-
<b>Input</b>					
Octets	11620142	17820149	24183465	23657898	6687904
Unicast Packets	52909	72907	654879	8994	546756
Non-Unicast Packets	103124	33	36	37180	658112
Discards	0	0	3680	0	0
Errors	0	0	0	0	0
Unknown Protocols	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Output</b>					
Octets	41311209	5467812	6454123	4131129	7181139
Unicast Packets	53514	67345	75698	96123	73575
Non-Unicast Packets	40	125	215	23546	3122

Below the table is a 'Description' field which is currently empty.

To open this page:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the communication module and click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens.
2	In the menu, select <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Diagnostic</b> .
3	In the left pane of the <b>Diagnostic</b> window, select the communication module node.
4	Click on the <b>Ethernet Diagnostic</b> tab to open that page.

## Ethernet Diagnostic Parameters

The **Ethernet Diagnostic** page displays the following parameters for each communication module port:

Parameter	Description
General parameters:	
Interface Speed	Valid values include: 0, 10, 100 Mbits/second
Interface Flags	Bit 0—Link Status: 0 = Inactive; 1 = Active
	Bit 1—Duplex Mode (see below)
	Bits 2...4—Negotiation Status (see below)
	Bit 5—Manual Setting Requires Reset (see below)
	Bit 6—Local Hardware Fault detected (see below)
Duplex Mode	0 = half duplex; 1 = full duplex
Negotiation Status	3 = successfully negotiated speed and duplex 4 = forced speed and link
Manual Setting Requires Reset	0 = automatic; 1 = device requires reset
Local Hardware Fault	0 = no event; 1 = event detected
Physical Address	Module MAC Address
Input parameters:	
Octets	Octets received on the interface
Unicast Packets	Unicast packets received on the interface
Non-Unicast Packets	Non-unicast packets received on the interface
Discards	Inbound packets received on the interface, but discarded
Errors	Inbound packets that contain detected errors (does not include In Discards)
Unknown Protocols	Inbound packets with unknown protocol
Output parameters:	
Octets	Octets received on the interface
Unicast Packets	Unicast packets received on the interface
Non-Unicast Packets	Non-unicast packets received on the interface
Discards	Inbound packets received on the interface, but discarded
Errors	Outbound packets that contain detected errors (does not include In Discards)
Unknown Protocols	Outbound packets with unknown protocol
Error counter parameters:	
Alignment Errors	Frames that are not an integral number of octets in length
FCS Errors	Frames received with a detected FCS checksum error
Single Collisions	Successfully transmitted frames that experienced exactly one collision

Parameter	Description
Multiple Collisions	Successfully transmitted frames that experienced more than one collision
SQE Test Errors	Number of times the SQE test error is detected
Deferred Transmissions	Frames for which first transmission attempt is delayed because the medium is busy
Late Collisions	Number of times a collision is detected later than 512 bittimes into the transmission of a packet
Excessive Collisions	Frames for which transmission is not successful due to excessive collisions
MAC Transmit Errors	Frames for which transmission is not successful due to internal MAC sublayer transmit error
Carrier Sense Errors	Times that the carrier sense condition was lost or not asserted when attempting to transmit a frame
Frame Too Long	Frames received that exceed the maximum permitted frame size
MAC Receive Errors	Frames for which reception on an interface is not successful due to an internal MAC sublayer receive detected error

## Bandwidth Diagnostics

### Introduction

Use the **Bandwidth Diagnostic** page to display either dynamically generated or static data for the communication module's bandwidth usage.

Use the **Refresh Every 500ms** checkbox to display static or dynamic data, as follows:

When the checkbox is...	This page...
Selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Displays data that is dynamically updated every 500 ms, and</li> <li>Increments the number at the top of the table each time data is refreshed</li> </ul>
De-selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Displays static data, and</li> <li>Does not Increment the number at the top of the table, which instead displays a constant value</li> </ul>

**NOTE:** Before you can open the **Diagnostic** window, connect the DTM for the target communication module to the physical module itself. To do this, select the module node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit → Connect**.

The **Bandwidth Diagnostic** page looks like this:

The screenshot shows the 'Bandwidth Diagnostic' window. At the top, there are two tabs: 'Ethernet Diagnostic' and 'Bandwidth Diagnostic'. Below the tabs, there is a checkbox labeled 'Refresh Every 500ms' which is checked, and a text box containing the number '112'. The main area is a table with the following columns: 'Group / Parameter', 'Value', and 'Unit'. The table is divided into several sections, each with a green header row. The data rows are as follows:

Group / Parameter	Value	Unit
<b>I/O - Scanner</b>		
EtherNet/IP Sent	0	Packets/s
EtherNet/IP Received	0	Packets/s
Modbus/TCP Sent	16	Packets/s
Modbus/TCP Received	16	Packets/s
<b>I/O - Adapter</b>		
EtherNet/IP Sent	0	Packets/s
EtherNet/IP Received	0	Packets/s
<b>I/O - Module</b>		
Module Capacity	12000	Packets/s
Module Utilization	0	%
<b>Messaging - Client</b>		
EtherNet/IP Activity	0	Packets/s
Modbus/TCP Activity	0	Packets/s
<b>Messaging - Server</b>		
EtherNet/IP Activity	7	Packets/s
Modbus/TCP Activity	1	Packets/s
<b>Module</b>		
Processor Utilization	14	%

Below the table is a 'Description' field, which is currently empty.



To open this page:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the communication module and click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens.
2	In the menu, select <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Diagnostic</b> . The <b>Diagnostic</b> window opens.
3	In the left pane of the <b>Diagnostic</b> window, select the communication module node.
4	Click on the <b>Bandwidth Diagnostic</b> tab to open that page.

### Bandwidth Diagnostic Parameters

The **Bandwidth Diagnostic** page displays the following parameters for the communication module:

Parameter	Description
I/O - Scanner:	
EtherNet/IP Sent	The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has sent, since the last reset, in packets/second.
EtherNet/IP Received	The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has received, since the last reset, in packets/second.
Modbus TCP Requests	The number of Modbus TCP requests the module has sent, since the last reset, in packets/second.
Modbus TCP Responses	The number of Modbus TCP responses the module has received, since the last reset, in packets/second.
I/O - Adapter:	
EtherNet/IP Sent	The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has sent—in the role of a local slave—since the last reset, in packets/second.
EtherNet/IP Received	The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has received—in the role of a local slave—since the last reset, in packets/second.
I/O - Module	
Module Capacity	The maximum number of packets that the module can process, in packets per second.
Module Utilization	The percentage of communication module capacity being used by the application.
Messaging - Client:	
EtherNet/IP Activity	The number of I/O messages sent by the module—using the EtherNet/IP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second.
Modbus TCP Activity	The number of I/O messages sent by the module—using the Modbus TCP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second.



Parameter	Description
Messaging - Server:	
EtherNet/IP Activity	The number of I/O messages received by the module—using the EtherNet/IP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second.
Modbus TCP Activity	The number of I/O messages received by the module—using the Modbus TCP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second.
Module:	
Processor Utilization	The percent of Ethernet communication module processor capacity used by the present level of communication activity.

## Email Diagnostics

### Diagnosing SMTP Transmissions

Use the **Email Diagnostic** page to display dynamically generated data describing the communication module's Email message transmissions.

**NOTE:** Before you can open the **Diagnostic** window, connect the DTM for the target communication module to the physical module itself. To do this, select the module node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

The **Email Diagnostic** page looks like this:

The screenshot displays the 'Email Diagnostic' page with the following elements:

- Navigation tabs: Ethernet Diagnostic, Bandwidth Diagnostic, RSTP Diagnostic, **Email Diagnostic**, Network Time Service Diagnostic.
- Refresh settings:  Refresh Every 500ms, with a value of 192 in a text box.
- Status indicators: 'Email Service' and 'Remote Email Server Status' both show green checkmarks.
- Configuration: 'SMTP Server IP Address' is set to 192 . 168 . 1 . 10.
- Last Email Header Used:
  - Sender: operator1@company.com
  - Receivers: merle@mainoffice.com
  - Subject: Pump#1 pumping mud, Merle, shut her down
- Statistics:
  - Number of Emails Sent: 2
  - Number of Errors: 0
  - Time Since Last Email: 280 Secs
  - Email Server Not Reachable: 0 Times
  - Last Error: 16#5104
- Buttons: A 'Reset Counter' button is located at the bottom right.

Click the **Reset Counter** button to reset the counting statistics on this page to 0.

To open this page:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the communication module and click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens.
2	In the menu, select <b>Device menu → Diagnostic</b> . The <b>Diagnostic</b> window opens.
3	In the left pane of the <b>Diagnostic</b> window, select the communication module node.
4	Click on the <b>Email Diagnostic</b> tab to open that page.

### Email diagnostic Parameters

Email service parameters include the following:

Parameter	Description
Refresh Every 500ms	Select this to dynamically update this page every 500ms. The number of times this page has been refreshed appears immediately to the right (in this example, 192).
Email Service	The status of this service in the Ethernet communication module: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● green = operational (OK)</li> <li>● orange = not operational (NOK)</li> </ul>
Remote Email Server Status	The connection status between Ethernet communication module and the SMTP server: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● green = operational (OK)</li> <li>● red = not operational (NOK)</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Status is checked at start-up and at least every 30 minutes after start-up.</p>
SMTP Server IP Address	IP address of the SMTP server
Sender	The three header fields of the last Email message sent.
Receivers	
Subject	
Number of Emails Sent	Total number of emails sent and successfully acknowledged by the SMTP server.
Time Since Last Email	Counts the number of seconds since the last email was successfully sent.
Last Error	Hexadecimal code describing the reason for the last unsuccessful Email transmission ( <i>see page 433</i> ). The value "0" indicates no unsuccessful transmissions.
Time Since Last Email	Counts the number of seconds since the last email was successfully sent.
Number of Errors	Total number of emails that either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● could not be sent</li> <li>● were sent but were not successfully acknowledged by the SMTP server</li> </ul>
Email Service Not Reachable	Number of times the SMTP server could not be reached. (Link checked every 30 minutes.)

## Network Time Service Diagnostics

### Diagnosing the Network Time Service

Use the **Network Time Service Diagnostic** page to display dynamically generated data describing the operation of the network time protocol (NTP) service that you configured in the Network Time Service page (*see page 105*) in Control Expert.

**NOTE:** Before you can open the **Diagnostic** window, connect the DTM for the target communication module to the physical module itself. To do this, select the module node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

The **Network Time Service Diagnostic** page looks like this:

The screenshot displays the 'Network Time Service Diagnostic' window with the following fields and values:

- Refresh Every:**  Refresh Every 500ms,
- Status:**
  - Network Time Service: ● Last Update:  Seconds
  - Network Time Server Status: ●
  - Current Date:  Current Time:
  - DST Status:  Quality:  Microseconds/Second
  - Requests:  Responses:
  - Errors:  Last Error:
- Server Information:**
  - Primary NTP Server IP:  ●
  - Secondary NTP Server IP:  Polling Period:  Seconds
- Daylight Saving Settings:**
  - DST Start: Month:  Day of Week:  Week#:
  - DST End: Month:  Day of Week:  Week#:
  - Time Zone:
  - Offset:  Mins Auto Adjust Clock for Daylight Savings:

Click the **Reset Counter** button to reset the counting statistics on this page to 0.

To open this page:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the communication module and click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens.
2	In the menu, select <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Diagnostic</b> . The <b>Diagnostic</b> window opens.
3	In the left pane of the <b>Diagnostic</b> window, select the communication module node.
4	Click on the <b>NTP Diagnostic</b> tab to open that page.

### Network Time Service Diagnostic Parameters

Time synchronization service parameters are in the table:

Parameter	Description
Refresh Every 500ms	Select this to dynamically update this page every 500ms. The number of times this page has been refreshed appears immediately to the right (in this example, 785).
Network Time Service	Operational status of the service in the module: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● green = operational</li> <li>● orange = not operational</li> </ul>
Network Time Server Status	Communication status of the NTP server: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● green = the NTP server is reachable</li> <li>● red = the NTP server is not reachable</li> </ul>
Last Update	Elapsed time, in seconds, since the most recent NTP server update.
Current Date	System date
Current Time	System time in hh:mm:ss format
DST Status	The actual working status of the automatic daylight savings service: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● ON = automatic adjustment of daylight savings is enabled and the current date and time reflect the daylight savings time adjustment</li> <li>● OFF = automatic adjustment of daylight savings is disabled; or automatic adjustment of daylight savings is enabled, but the current date and time may not reflect the daylight savings time adjustment</li> </ul>
Quality	The correction, in seconds, applied to the local counter at every NTP server update. Numbers greater than 0 indicate increasingly excessive traffic condition or NTP server overload.
Requests	Total number of client requests sent to the NTP server
Responses	Total number of server responses sent from the NTP server
Errors	Total number of unanswered NTP requests

Parameter	Description	
Last Error	Last detected error code received from the NTP client: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● 0: good NTP configuration</li> <li>● 1: late NTP server response (can be caused by excessive network traffic or server overload)</li> <li>● 2: NTP not configured</li> <li>● 3: invalid NTP parameter setting</li> <li>● 4: NTP component disabled</li> <li>● 7: unrecoverable NTP transmission</li> <li>● 9: invalid NTP server IP address</li> <li>● 15: invalid syntax in the custom time zone rules file</li> </ul>	
Primary / Secondary NTP Server IP	The IP address of the primary and the secondary NTP server <b>NOTE:</b> A green LED to the right of the primary or secondary NTP server IP address identifies the currently active server.	
Auto Adjust Clock for Daylight Savings	The configuration setting of the daylight savings adjustment service: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● enabled</li> <li>● disabled</li> </ul>	
DST Start / DST End	Specifies the day that daylight savings time begins and ends:	
	Month	The month daylight savings time starts or ends
	Day of Week	The day of the week daylight savings time starts or ends
	Week#	The occurrence of the specified day within the specified month.
Time Zone	Time zone plus or minus Universal Time, Coordinated (UTC)	
Offset	The time, in minutes, to be combined with the selected Time Zone selection to produce the system time.	
Polling Period	The frequency the NTP client requests time updates from the NTP server	

## Communication Module RSTP Diagnostics

### Introduction

Use the **RSTP Diagnostic** page to display either dynamically generated or static data for a BMX NOC 0401 (M340) communication module's RSTP service.

Use the **Refresh Every 500ms** checkbox to display static or dynamic data, as follows:

When the checkbox is...	This page...
Selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Displays data that is dynamically updated every 500 ms, and</li><li>• Increments the number at the top of the table each time data is refreshed</li></ul>
De-selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Displays static data, and</li><li>• Does not Increment the number at the top of the table, which instead displays a constant value</li></ul>

**NOTE:** Before you can open the **Diagnostic** window, connect the DTM for the target communication module to the physical module. To do this, select the module node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

The **RSTP Diagnostic** page looks like this:

Group / Parameter	Value	Unit
<b>Bridge RSTP Diagnostic</b>		
Bridge ID	0	
MAC Address	00-00-00-00-00-00	
Designated Root ID	0	
Root Path Cost	0	
Default Hello Time	2	sec
Learned Hello Time	0	sec
Configured Max Age	40	sec
Learned Max Age	0	sec
Total Topology Changes	0	
<b>Port 3 RSTP Statistics</b>		
Status	Disabled	
Role	Unknown (0)	
Cost	0	
STP Packets	0	
<b>Port 3 RSTP Statistics</b>		
Status	Disabled	
Role	Unknown (0)	
Cost	0	

Description

To open this page:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the communication module and click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens.
2	In the menu, select <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Diagnostic</b> .
3	In the left pane of the <b>Diagnostic</b> window, select the communication module node.
4	Click on the <b>RSTP Diagnostic</b> tab to open that page.



## RSTP Diagnostic Parameters

The **RSTP Diagnostic** page displays the following parameters for each communication module port:

Parameter	Description
Bridge RSTP Diagnostic:	
Bridge ID	An 8-byte bridge identification field is comprised of a 2 sub-fields: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bridge Priority: a 2-byte value from 0 to 65535—with a default of 32768—assigned to the module's embedded Ethernet switch</li> <li>• MAC Address (see below)</li> </ul>
MAC Address	The Media Access Control address of a device, found on the front of the module.
Designated Root ID	The Bridge ID of the root switch.
Root Path Cost	The aggregate cost of port costs from this switch back to the root switch.
Default Hello Time	The interval at which Configuration BPDU messages will be transmitted during a network convergence. For RSTP this is a fixed value of 2 seconds.
Learned Hello Time	The current Hello Time value learned from the root switch.
Configured Max Age	The value that other switches use for MaxAge when this switch is acting as the root. Valid range: 6 to 40
Learned Max Age	The maximum age learned from the root switch. This is the actual value currently used by this switch.
Total Topology Changes	The total number of topology changes detected by this switch since the management entity was last reset or initialized.
Ports 3 and 4 RSTP Statistics:	
Status	The port's current state as defined by RSTP Protocol. This state controls the action the port takes when it receives a frame. Possible values are: disabled, discarding, learning, forwarding.
Role:	The port's current role per RSTP protocol. Possible values are: root port, designated port, alternate port, backup port, disabled port.
Cost	The logical cost of this port as a path to the root switch. If this port is configured for AUTO then the cost is determined based on the connection speed of the port.
STP Packets	A value in this field indicates that a device on the network has the STP protocol enabled. <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Other devices, with STP enabled, can severely affect the network convergence times. Schneider Electric recommends the STP protocol (but not the RSTP protocol) be disabled on every network device capable of supporting it.</li> <li>• The communication module does not support the STP protocol. The module's embedded switch ignores ignore STP packets.</li> </ul>

## Local Slave / Connection Diagnostics

### Introduction

The **Local Slave Diagnostic** page and the **EIP Connection Diagnostic** page present common information. Use the:

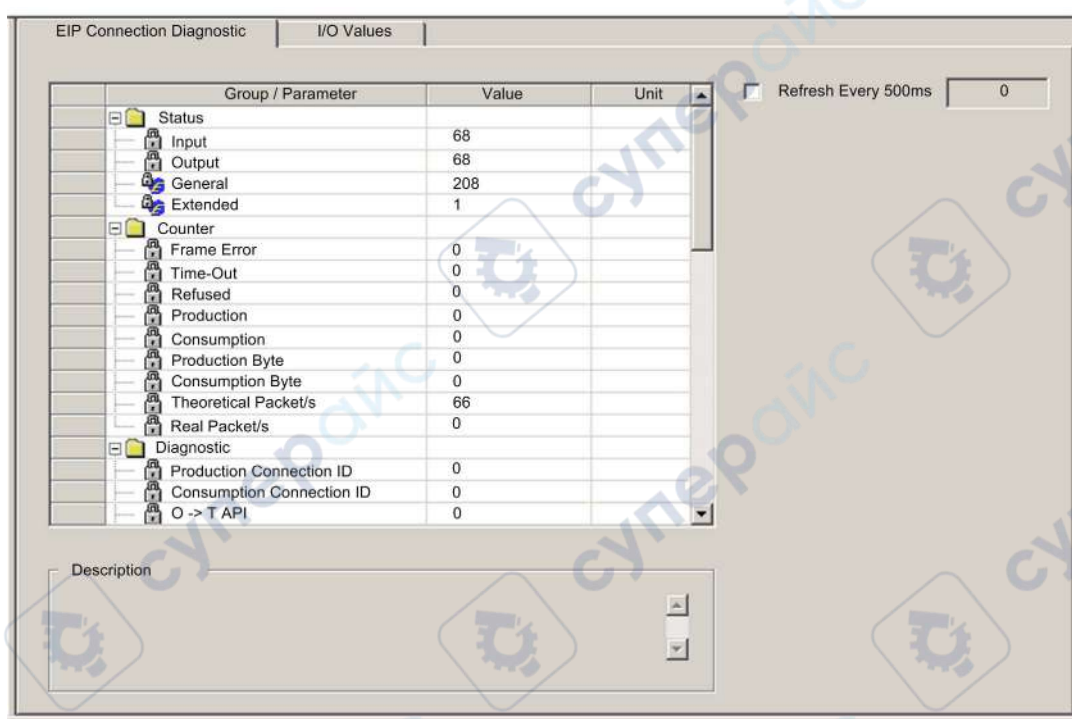
- **Local Slave Diagnostic** page to display I/O status and production/consumption information for a selected local slave
- **EIP Connection Diagnostic** page to display I/O status and production/consumption information for a connection of a remote EtherNet/IP device

Use the **Refresh Every 500ms** checkbox to display static or dynamic data, as follows:

When the checkbox is...	This page...
Selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Displays data that is dynamically updated every 500 ms, and</li> <li>• Increments the number at the top of the table each time data is refreshed</li> </ul>
De-selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Displays static data, and</li> <li>• Does not increment the number at the top of the table, which instead displays a constant value</li> </ul>

**NOTE:** Before you can open the **Diagnostic** window, connect the communication module or remote device DTM to the physical module or device. To do this, select the appropriate node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

The following figure presents an example of the **EIP Connection Diagnostic** page. (Except for the title, the **Local Slave Diagnostic** page is the same.)



To open this page:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the communication module and click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens.
2	In the menu, select <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Diagnostic</b> .
3	In the left pane of the <b>Diagnostic</b> window, click on one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• for local slave diagnostics, select the communication module node</li> <li>• for remote device connection diagnostics, select a remote device connection</li> </ul>
4	Depending upon you selection in step 3, above, click on either the <b>Local Slave Diagnostic</b> tab or the <b>EIP Connection Diagnostic</b> tab to open that page.

## Diagnostic Parameters

This page displays the following diagnostic parameters for the selected local slave or connection:

Parameter	Description
Status ( <i>see page 350</i> ):	
Input	An integer representing input status.
Output	An integer representing output status.
General	An integer representing basic connection status.
Extended	An integer representing extended connection status.
Counter:	
Frame Error	Increments each time a frame is not sent by missing resources or is impossible to send.
Time-Out	Increments each time a connection times out.
Refused	Increments when connection is refused by the remote station.
Production	Increments each time a message is produced.
Consumption	Increments each time a message is consumed.
Production Byte	Total of produced messages, in bytes, since the communication module was last reset.
Consumption Byte	Total of consumed messages, in bytes, since the communication module was last reset.
Theoretical Packets per second	Packets per second calculated using current configuration value.
Real Packets per second	Actual number of packets per second generated by this connection.
Diagnostic:	
Production Connection ID	The connection ID.
Consumption Connection ID	The connection ID.
O -> T API	Accepted packet interval (API) of the output connection.
T -> O API	Accepted packet interval (API) of the input connection.
O -> T RPI	Requested packet interval (RPI) of the output connection.
T -> O RPI	Requested packet interval (RPI) of the input connection.
Socket Diagnostics:	
Socket ID	Internal Identification of the socket.
Remote IP Address	IP address of the remote station, for this connection.
Remote Port	Port number of the remote station, for this connection.
Local IP Address	IP address of the communication module, for this connection.
Local Port	Port number of the communication module, for this connection.

### Connection Status Codes

The Input and Output Status diagnostic parameters (*see page 349*), in the preceding table, can present the following values:

Input/Output Status (dec)	Description
0	OK
33	Time-out
53	IDLE
54	Connection established
58	Not connected (TCP)
65	Not connected (CIP)
68	Connection establishing
70	Not connected (EPIC)
77	Scanner stopped

## Local Slave or Connection I/O Value Diagnostics

### Introduction

Use the **I/O Values** page to display both the input data image and output data image for the selected local slave or connection.

Use the **Refresh Every 500ms** checkbox to display static or dynamic data, as follows:

When the checkbox is...	This page...
Selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Displays data that is dynamically updated every 500 ms, and</li> <li>• Increments the number at the top of the table each time data is refreshed</li> </ul>
De-selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Displays static data, and</li> <li>• Does not Increment the number at the top of the table, which instead displays a constant value</li> </ul>

**NOTE:** Before you can open the **Diagnostic** window, connect the communication module or remote device DTM to the physical module or device. To do this, select the appropriate node in the **DTM Browser**, then select **Edit** → **Connect**.

To open this page:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>DTM Browser</b> , select the communication module and click the right mouse button. A pop-up menu opens.
2	In the menu, select <b>Device menu</b> → <b>Diagnostic</b> .
3	In the left pane of the <b>Diagnostic</b> window, click on one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the communication module node, or</li> <li>• a connection node</li> </ul>
4	Click on the <b>I/O Values</b> tab to open that page.

The following example depicts the **I/O Values** page for a remote device connection:

### Local Slave / Connection I/O Values

This page displays the following parameters for either a local slave or a remote device connection input and output values:

Parameter	Description
Input/Output data display	A display of the local slave or remote device input or output data image.
Length	The number of bytes in the input or output data image.
Status	The Scanner Diagnostic object's scanner status ( <i>see page 265</i> ), with respect to the read of the input or output data image.

## Logging

### Description

Control Expert maintains a log of events for:

- the Control Expert embedded FDT container
- each Ethernet communication module DTM, and
- each EtherNet/IP remote device DTM

Events relating to the Control Expert FDT container are displayed in the **FDT log event** page of the **Output Window**.

Events relating to a communication module or remote EtherNet/IP device are displayed:

- in configuration mode: in the **Device Editor**, by selecting the **Logging** node in the left pane
- in diagnostic mode: in the **Diagnostics** window, by selecting the **Logging** node in the left pane

The following is a sample of the events log displayed in the **Diagnostics** window:

Date / Time	Log Level	Message	Detail Message
2009-09-25 08:57:23	Error	Communication error occurred.	Unknown status!
2009-09-25 08:56:45	Information	The FDT Frame Application has ...	
2009-09-25 08:55:14	Information	IP Address of slave device succe...	192.168.1.1 -> 192...
2009-09-25 08:52:56	Information	The FDT Frame Application has ...	
2009-09-25 08:52:17	Information	DTM is offline.	
2009-09-25 08:50:44	Information	DTM is offline.	
2009-09-25 08:49:12	Information	The FDT Frame Application has ...	
2009-09-25 08:48:52	Information	The FDT Frame Application has ...	
2009-09-25 08:46:56	Information	The FDT Frame Application has ...	
2009-09-25 08:45:17	Warning	The persisted network interface c...	
2009-09-25 08:43:44	Information	DTM is offline.	
2009-09-25 08:42:12	Information	The FDT Frame Application has ...	
2009-09-25 08:40:52	Information	The FDT Frame Application has ...	



## Logging Attributes

The **Logging** window displays the result of an operation or function performed by Control Expert. Each log entry includes the following attributes:

Attribute	Description	
Date/Time	The time the event occurred, displayed in the format: yyyy-mm--dd hh:mm:ss	
Log Level	The level of event importance. Values include:	
	Information	A successfully completed operation.
	Warning	An operation that Control Expert completed, but which may lead to a subsequent detected error.
Error	An operation that Control Expert was unable to complete.	
Message	A brief description of the core meaning of the event.	
Detail Message	A more detailed description of the event, which may include parameter names, location paths, etc.	

## Section 9.3

### CPU I/O Block Diagnostics

#### Overview

The CPU's I/O Block contains diagnostic information relating to the operation of the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module. This information can be accessed in Control Expert at runtime. This section describes the available I/O Block data, and how to access it.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Accessing the Control Expert Diagnostic Tools	356
Communication Channel Diagnostics in Control Expert	358
Communication Module Diagnostics in Control Expert	360

## Accessing the Control Expert Diagnostic Tools

### Overview

The Control Expert software provides diagnostic tools that let you view the:

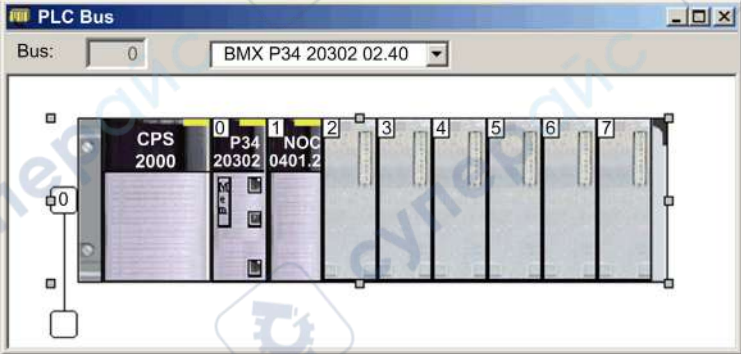
- communication module status
- communication module's:
  - detected faults
  - I/O objects
- communication channel's:
  - MAC Address
  - IP Address settings
  - detected faults

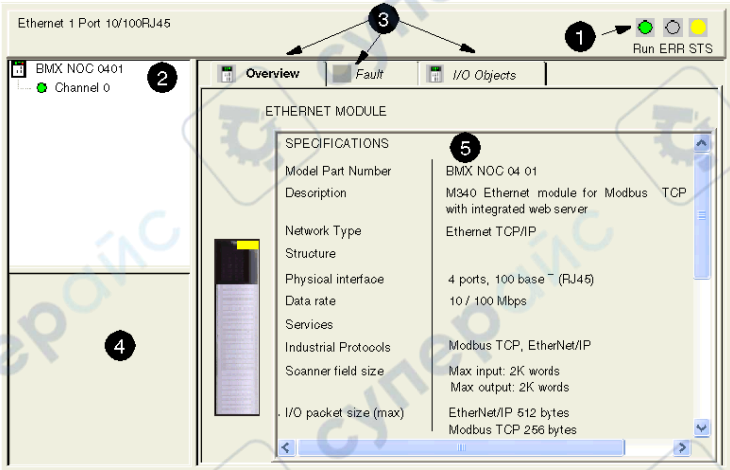
These Control Expert diagnostic tools are available in the BMX NOC 0401 **Module Properties** window, only when Control Expert is operating online.

**NOTE:** If the module and software are disconnected, use the Master DTM diagnostic screen in Control Expert to check the I/O status.

### Accessing Control Expert Diagnostic Tools

To access diagnostic tools for the Ethernet communication module:

Step	Action
1	<p>Open the Control Expert project backplane diagram, below:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a software window titled 'PLC Bus'. At the top, there is a 'Bus:' field with the value '0' and a dropdown menu showing 'BMX P34 20302 02.40'. Below this is a diagram of a backplane with eight slots numbered 0 to 7. Slot 0 contains a 'CPS 2000' module. Slot 1 contains a 'P34 20302' module. Slot 2 contains a 'NOC 0401.2' module. Slots 3 through 7 are empty. A power supply symbol is connected to slot 0.</p>

Step	Action										
2	<p>Do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● double click the left mouse button on the communication module in the window above, or</li> <li>● click the right mouse button on the communication module, then select <b>Open Module...</b> in the popup menu</li> </ul> <p>The Ethernet Module window opens:</p> 										
3	<p>Navigate the Ethernet Module window using the following features:</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>1 Module status icons</td> <td>These three indicators display the module's status in online mode.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 Channel area</td> <td>           Select a node to display parameters for either:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● the communication module, or</li> <li>● a communication channel</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 Page tabs</td> <td>           Select a page to display module or channel properties:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● for the communication module:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Overview</li> <li>○ Fault</li> <li>○ I/O Objects</li> </ul> </li> <li>● for a communication channel:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Configuration</li> <li>○ Debug</li> <li>○ Fault</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 General parameters</td> <td>           View communication channel parameters:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Function</b> displays the configured communication function and is read-only.</li> <li>● <b>Task</b> displays the task (configured <b>MAST</b>) and is read-only.</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 Mode parameters</td> <td>Displays parameters for the mode you select by opening a page.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	1 Module status icons	These three indicators display the module's status in online mode.	2 Channel area	Select a node to display parameters for either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● the communication module, or</li> <li>● a communication channel</li> </ul>	3 Page tabs	Select a page to display module or channel properties: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● for the communication module:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Overview</li> <li>○ Fault</li> <li>○ I/O Objects</li> </ul> </li> <li>● for a communication channel:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Configuration</li> <li>○ Debug</li> <li>○ Fault</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	4 General parameters	View communication channel parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Function</b> displays the configured communication function and is read-only.</li> <li>● <b>Task</b> displays the task (configured <b>MAST</b>) and is read-only.</li> </ul>	5 Mode parameters	Displays parameters for the mode you select by opening a page.
1 Module status icons	These three indicators display the module's status in online mode.										
2 Channel area	Select a node to display parameters for either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● the communication module, or</li> <li>● a communication channel</li> </ul>										
3 Page tabs	Select a page to display module or channel properties: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● for the communication module:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Overview</li> <li>○ Fault</li> <li>○ I/O Objects</li> </ul> </li> <li>● for a communication channel:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Configuration</li> <li>○ Debug</li> <li>○ Fault</li> </ul> </li> </ul>										
4 General parameters	View communication channel parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Function</b> displays the configured communication function and is read-only.</li> <li>● <b>Task</b> displays the task (configured <b>MAST</b>) and is read-only.</li> </ul>										
5 Mode parameters	Displays parameters for the mode you select by opening a page.										

## Communication Channel Diagnostics in Control Expert

### Overview

Select a communication channel in the **Channel area** to access the:

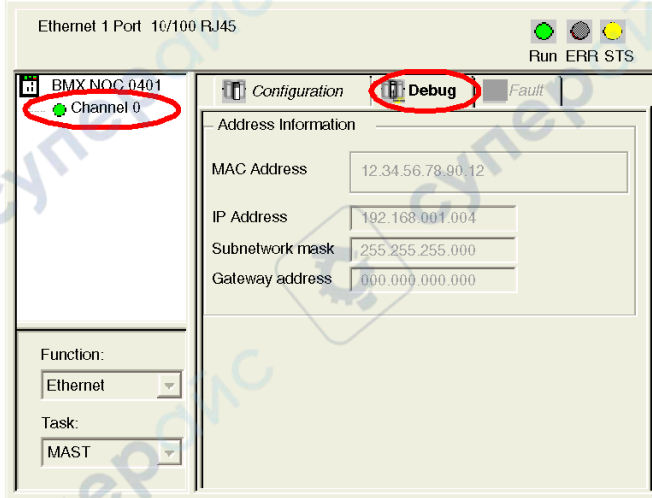
- **Configuration** page, where you can:
  - edit the EtherNet/IP Module name
  - edit input and output data size and location settings
  - launch the Control Expert EtherNet/IP configuration tool

Refer to the description of the **Configuration** page (*see page 38*) for more information.

- **Debug** page, which displays the communication module's:
  - MAC Address
  - IP Address settings
- **Fault** page, which displays active detected faults for the communication channel

### MAC Address

To display the MAC Address of the communication module:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Channel area</b> , select the communication channel. The following pages are displayed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Configuration</li> <li>● Debug</li> <li>● Default</li> </ul>
2	To display the communication module's MAC Address and IP Address settings, click on the <b>Debug</b> page: <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p>Ethernet 1 Port 16/100 RJ45</p> <p>Run ERR STS</p> <p>BMX NOC 0401 Channel 0</p> <p>Configuration Debug Fault</p> <p>Address Information</p> <p>MAC Address 12.34.56.78.90.12</p> <p>IP Address 192.168.001.004</p> <p>Subnetwork mask 255.255.255.000</p> <p>Gateway address 000.000.000.000</p> <p>Function: Ethernet</p> <p>Task: MAST</p> </div>

## Channel Detected Faults

To display the active faults detected on the communication channel:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Channel area</b> , select the communication channel.
2	To display the communication module's detected active faults, click on the <b>Fault</b> page:

Ethernet 1 Port 10/100 RJ45

Run ERR STS

BMX NOC 0401

Channel 0

Configuration Debug **Fault**

Internal fault: External fault: Other fault:  
Hardware config fault

Function:  
Ethernet

Task:  
MAST

**NOTE:** You can also access the channel detected error bit (CH\_ERROR) by using the Control Expert **Animation Table** to display the `%lr.m.ch.ERR` object.

## Communication Module Diagnostics in Control Expert

### Overview

Use the Ethernet Module window in Control Expert to diagnose the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module. In this window, you can access:

- three icons that reflect the current status of selected LEDs
- the **Overview** page, where you can view a description of the module
- **Fault** page, which displays detected active faults for the communication module
- **I/O Objects** page, where you can view and manage I/O objects for the module

### Module Status Icons

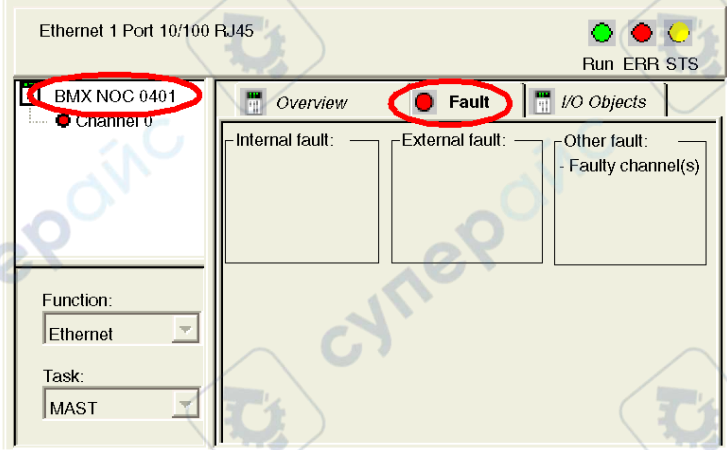
The Ethernet Module window displays three icons that reflect the current status of the following LEDs:

- Run
- ERR
- STS

Refer to the description of LED indicators ([see page 326](#)) for information on how to use these icons.

## Accessing Module Detected Faults

To display the detected active faults on the communication module:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Channel area</b> , select the communication module. The following pages are displayed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Overview</li> <li>• Fault</li> <li>• I/O Objects</li> </ul>
2	To display the communication module's active detected faults, click on the <b>Fault</b> page: 

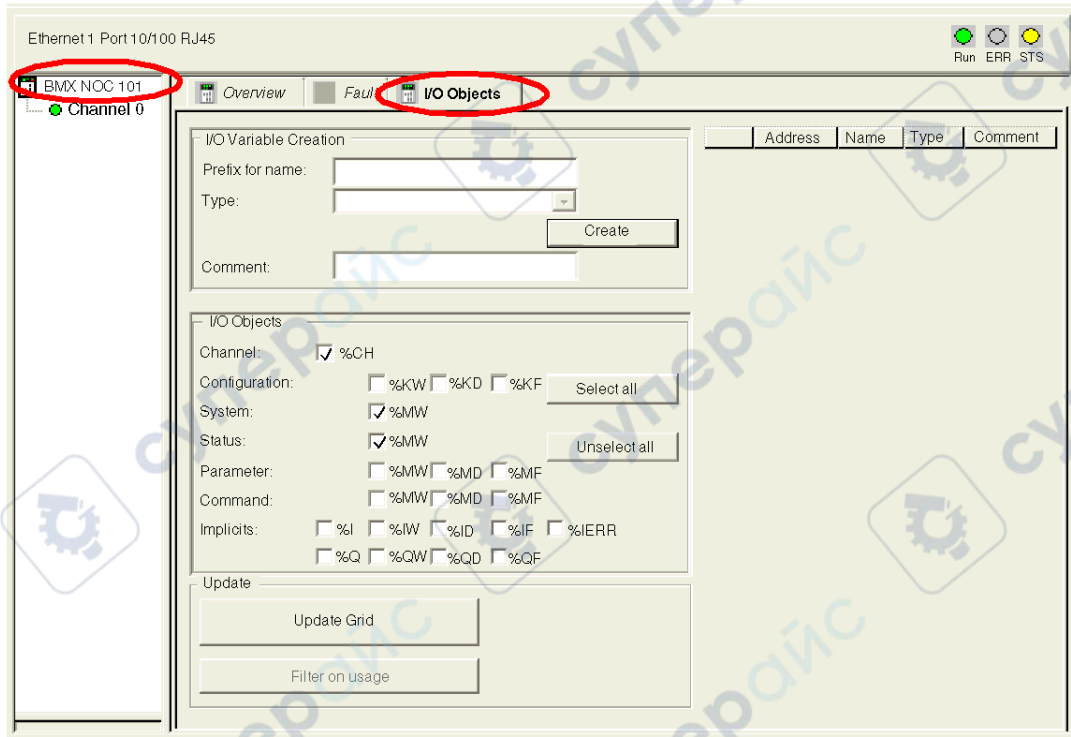
**NOTE:** You can also access the module detected error bit by using the Control Expert Animation Table to display the %I.r.m.MOD.ERR object.



## Managing I/O Objects

Use the I/O Objects page to view module I/O objects, and to manage the association of these objects with variables.

Open the **I/O Objects** page by selecting the **I/O Objects** tab, after the communication module has been selected in the **Channel area**:



### NOTE:

- The BMX NOC 0401 communication module supports only Channel, System, and Status I/O Objects. Not every bit is used.
- Refer to the Control Expert help for instructions on how to use the **I/O Objects** page.


## Reading I/O Objects

Use a `READ_STS` function block in Control Expert to update each of the following types of data:

- module data
- channel data

### Updating module data:

To display module information, follow these steps:

Step	Action																	
1	<p>Configure the <code>READ_STS</code> function block, as follows:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <pre> graph LR     subgraph READ_STS [READ_STS]         CH[CH]     end     MOD["%Chr.m.MOD"] --- CH           </pre> </div> <p>Where:</p> <p>r = rack or station number</p> <p>m = module or slot number</p> <p>MOD = a constant indicating module data</p>																	
2	<p>To view the data updated by the <code>READ_STS</code> function block, enter the corresponding direct addresses in the Control Expert Animation table, or use them in your program logic:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Object</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><code>%lr.m.MOD.ERR</code></td> <td>Module detected error bit <code>%lr.m.MOD.ERR</code> is implicitly updated based on <code>%lr.m.0.ERR</code></td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>%MWr.m.MOD.0</code></td> <td>Exchange Status: Bit 0: reading of module status in progress</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>%MWr.m.MOD.1</code></td> <td>Exchange Report: Bit 0: detected error while reading module status</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="8"><code>%MWr.m.MOD.2</code></td> <td>Bit 0: internal fault detected</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bit 1: operational fault detected</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bit 2: not used</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bit 3: self test</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bit 4: not used</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bit 5: configuration fault detected</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bit 6: missing module or off</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bit 7: not used</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Object	Description	<code>%lr.m.MOD.ERR</code>	Module detected error bit <code>%lr.m.MOD.ERR</code> is implicitly updated based on <code>%lr.m.0.ERR</code>	<code>%MWr.m.MOD.0</code>	Exchange Status: Bit 0: reading of module status in progress	<code>%MWr.m.MOD.1</code>	Exchange Report: Bit 0: detected error while reading module status	<code>%MWr.m.MOD.2</code>	Bit 0: internal fault detected	Bit 1: operational fault detected	Bit 2: not used	Bit 3: self test	Bit 4: not used	Bit 5: configuration fault detected	Bit 6: missing module or off	Bit 7: not used
Object	Description																	
<code>%lr.m.MOD.ERR</code>	Module detected error bit <code>%lr.m.MOD.ERR</code> is implicitly updated based on <code>%lr.m.0.ERR</code>																	
<code>%MWr.m.MOD.0</code>	Exchange Status: Bit 0: reading of module status in progress																	
<code>%MWr.m.MOD.1</code>	Exchange Report: Bit 0: detected error while reading module status																	
<code>%MWr.m.MOD.2</code>	Bit 0: internal fault detected																	
	Bit 1: operational fault detected																	
	Bit 2: not used																	
	Bit 3: self test																	
	Bit 4: not used																	
	Bit 5: configuration fault detected																	
	Bit 6: missing module or off																	
	Bit 7: not used																	

**Updating channel data:**

To display channel information, follow these steps:

Step	Action																																																									
1	<p>Configure the <code>READ_STS</code> function block, as follows:</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <pre> graph LR     subgraph READ_STS         CH[CH]     end     CH --- IN[%CHr.m.ch]           </pre> </div> <p>Where:</p> <p>r = rack, or station, number</p> <p>m = module, or slot, number</p> <p>ch = channel number—set to 0 for ETC transactions</p>																																																									
2	<p>To view the data updated by the <code>READ_STS</code> function block, enter the corresponding direct addresses in the Control Expert Animation table, or use them in your program logic:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Object</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Standard Symbol</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><code>%I.r.m.ch.ERR</code></td> <td>Channel detected error bit</td> <td><code>CH_ERROR</code></td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>%I.r.m.ch.0</code></td> <td>Status of Ethernet services:</td> <td>—</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Bit 0: EIP Scanner (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)</td> <td>—</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Bit 1: EIP Adapter (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)</td> <td>—</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Bit 2: EIP Client (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)</td> <td>—</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Bit 3: EIP Server (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)</td> <td>—</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Bit 4: Modbus scanner (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)</td> <td>—</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Bit 5: Modbus TCP Client (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)</td> <td>—</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Bit 6: Modbus TCP Server (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)</td> <td>—</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Bit 7: FDR Server (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)</td> <td>—</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Bit 8: RSTP (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)</td> <td>—</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Bit 9–Bit 15: reserved</td> <td>—</td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>%MWr.m.ch.0</code></td> <td>Exchange Status:</td> <td><code>EXCH_STS</code></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Bit 0: reading of status words of the channel in progress</td> <td><code>STS_IN_PROG</code></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Bit 1: command write in progress</td> <td><code>CMD_IN_PROG</code></td> </tr> <tr> <td><code>%MWr.m.ch.1</code></td> <td>Exchange Report:</td> <td><code>EXCH_RPT</code></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Bit 0: detected error while reading channel status</td> <td><code>STS_ERR</code></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Bit 1: detected error while writing a command to the channel</td> <td><code>CMD_ERR</code></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Object	Description	Standard Symbol	<code>%I.r.m.ch.ERR</code>	Channel detected error bit	<code>CH_ERROR</code>	<code>%I.r.m.ch.0</code>	Status of Ethernet services:	—		Bit 0: EIP Scanner (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—		Bit 1: EIP Adapter (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—		Bit 2: EIP Client (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—		Bit 3: EIP Server (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—		Bit 4: Modbus scanner (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—		Bit 5: Modbus TCP Client (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—		Bit 6: Modbus TCP Server (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—		Bit 7: FDR Server (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—		Bit 8: RSTP (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—		Bit 9–Bit 15: reserved	—	<code>%MWr.m.ch.0</code>	Exchange Status:	<code>EXCH_STS</code>		Bit 0: reading of status words of the channel in progress	<code>STS_IN_PROG</code>		Bit 1: command write in progress	<code>CMD_IN_PROG</code>	<code>%MWr.m.ch.1</code>	Exchange Report:	<code>EXCH_RPT</code>		Bit 0: detected error while reading channel status	<code>STS_ERR</code>		Bit 1: detected error while writing a command to the channel	<code>CMD_ERR</code>
Object	Description	Standard Symbol																																																								
<code>%I.r.m.ch.ERR</code>	Channel detected error bit	<code>CH_ERROR</code>																																																								
<code>%I.r.m.ch.0</code>	Status of Ethernet services:	—																																																								
	Bit 0: EIP Scanner (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—																																																								
	Bit 1: EIP Adapter (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—																																																								
	Bit 2: EIP Client (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—																																																								
	Bit 3: EIP Server (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—																																																								
	Bit 4: Modbus scanner (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—																																																								
	Bit 5: Modbus TCP Client (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—																																																								
	Bit 6: Modbus TCP Server (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—																																																								
	Bit 7: FDR Server (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—																																																								
	Bit 8: RSTP (0 = OK, 1 = NOK)	—																																																								
	Bit 9–Bit 15: reserved	—																																																								
<code>%MWr.m.ch.0</code>	Exchange Status:	<code>EXCH_STS</code>																																																								
	Bit 0: reading of status words of the channel in progress	<code>STS_IN_PROG</code>																																																								
	Bit 1: command write in progress	<code>CMD_IN_PROG</code>																																																								
<code>%MWr.m.ch.1</code>	Exchange Report:	<code>EXCH_RPT</code>																																																								
	Bit 0: detected error while reading channel status	<code>STS_ERR</code>																																																								
	Bit 1: detected error while writing a command to the channel	<code>CMD_ERR</code>																																																								

Step	Action		
2 cont'd	%MWr.m.ch.2	Standard channel status (low byte):	—
		Bits 0...3: reserved (0)	—
		Bit 4: internal fault detected	—
		Bit 5: not used (0)	—
		Bit 6: X-Bus communication fault detected	—
		Bit 7: application fault detected (conf fault detected)	—
		High byte:	—
		Bits 0...7: reserved (0)	—
	%MWr.m.ch.3	Ethernet Port Global Status:	ETH_PORT_STATUS
		Bit 0: detected configuration error	—
		Bit 1: the Ethernet interface is disabled	—
		Bit 2: duplicate IP address detected	—
		Bit 3: configuration mismatch	—
		Bit 4: reserved	—
		Bit 5: the module is in the process of obtaining an IP address	—
		Bits 6...15: reserved	—
	%MWr.m.ch.4	IP address (IP_ADDR):	IP_ADDR
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During normal operation, the double word %MDr.m.c.4 contains the IP address configured or served to the module.</li> </ul>	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In No Configuration state, the double word %MDr.m.c.4 contains the default IP address of the module.</li> </ul>	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Configuration Error detected state, the double word %MDr.m.c.4 contains the default IP address of the module.</li> </ul>	—
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When a duplicate IP address is detected, the double word %MDr.m.c.4 contains the served or configured duplicate IP address.</li> </ul>		—	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the module is waiting for a BOOTP response, the double word %MDr.m.c.4 contains the IP address 0.0.0.0.</li> </ul>		—	

---

# Chapter 10

## Replacing the Ethernet Communication Module

---

### Replacing the Ethernet Communication Module

#### Overview

Replacing The module involves removing the old module and mounting a new one in its place

#### When to Replace

You can replace the communication module at any time using another module with compatible firmware. A module can be replaced when power to the module is either:

- off (cold swap), or
- on (hot swap)

The replacement module obtains its operating parameters over the backplane connection from the CPU. The transfer occurs either immediately (hot swap) or when power is next cycled to the device (cold swap).

**NOTE:** Operating parameters, that were added to the configuration using explicit messaging “SET” commands, are not included in the parameters that the CPU sends to a replacement module.

To install the replacement module, follow the instructions in the module mounting procedure (*see page 24*).

---

# Chapter 11

## Embedded Web Pages

---

### Overview

This chapter describes the embedded web pages for the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module.

The communication module includes a Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) server. The server transmits web pages for the purpose of monitoring, diagnosing, and controlling remote access to the communication module. The server provides easy access to the communication module from standard internet browsers, including—but not limited to—Internet Explorer.

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Topic	Page
11.1	Accessing the Embedded Web Server	370
11.2	Monitoring the Control Expert Application	378
11.3	Diagnostics	391

# Section 11.1

## Accessing the Embedded Web Server

---

### Introduction

This section introduces the BMX NOC 0401 communication module's embedded web server, and describes how to access—and to control access to—the web pages.

### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Introducing the Embedded Web Pages	371
Accessing the Home Page	372
Using and Editing a Username and Passwords	373
Configuring Port Mirroring	376

## Introducing the Embedded Web Pages

### Introduction

Use the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module's embedded web server pages to:

- display real-time diagnostic data for both the module and other networked devices
- read the values of—and write values to—Control Expert application variables
- manage and control access to the embedded web pages by assigning separate passwords for:
  - viewing the diagnostic web pages, and
  - using the Data Editor to write values to Control Expert application variables

### Requirements

The embedded web server presents module data in the form of standard HTML web pages.

Access the embedded web pages using Internet Explorer version 4.0 or higher, running the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) version 1.6 or higher.



## Accessing the Home Page

### On First Use

Before you begin to use the BMX NOC 0401 communication module's embedded web pages, you need to:

- navigate to the web server
- access web page content by inputting the default username and password (*see page 373*) combination
- change passwords (*see page 374*) that are required for:
  - accessing web pages, and
  - writing data values using the **Data Editor**

### Navigating to the Web Server

To access the embedded web server, open an Internet browser, then enter the IP address (*see page 70*) of the Ethernet communication module in the format: *http://IP address*, then click **Enter**.

**NOTE:** If a DNS name has been assigned to the module, the DNS name can be used instead of the IP address.

The web server opens, displaying the **Home** page:



Use the **Home** page as the point of entry to the communication module's embedded web server. From here, you can navigate to every other web page.

## Using and Editing a Username and Passwords

### Inputting the Username and Web Page Access Password

A username and password are required to access web page content and edit application data. All username and password settings are case sensitive.


The embedded web pages support the use of a single, editable username for both web page access and data editing. The factory-default username setting is **USER**.

The embedded web pages require two different passwords, as follows:

- an HTTP access password, which grants read-only access to web page content
- a data editor write password, which permits the editing of data values using the **Data Editor**


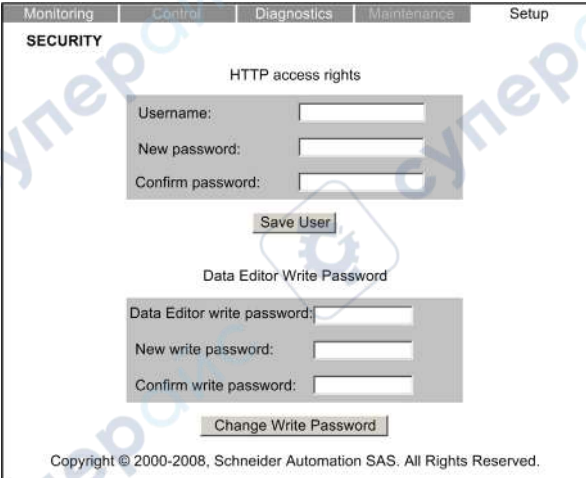
Each password can be edited. The factory default setting for each password is **USER**.

To input a username and password combination

Step	Description
1	After navigating to the embedded web server ( <i>see page 372</i> ), select one of the main menu selections (for example, <b>Setup</b> ).
2	Select a page name from the list of pages on the left side of the page (for example, <b>Security</b> ). The following dialog opens: 
3	Type in the required <b>Username</b> and <b>Password</b> combination, then click <b>OK</b> . <b>NOTE:</b> In the above example, the settings for both the Username and Password remain set to the default setting of <b>USER</b> .

### Editing the Username and Passwords

The single username and both passwords can be edited in the **Security** web page. To edit username and passwords, follow these steps:

Step	Description
1	Navigate to and open the web server, ( <i>see page 372</i> ) using the IP address of the communication module. The <b>Home</b> page opens.
2	<p>From the <b>Home</b> page, click on the <b>Setup</b> main menu item. If required, input the username and web page password (<i>see page 373</i>). The <b>Setup</b> page opens:</p> 
3	<p>On the left side of the page, click on the <b>Security</b> node. (If required, input the <b>Username</b> and web page access <b>Password</b>.) The <b>Security</b> page opens:</p> 

Step	Description						
4	To change the username and password combination used for web page access, in the <b>HTTP access rights</b> section of the page, enter values for the following fields:						
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Username:</td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the username: type in a new username</li> <li>To retain the current username (for example, if you are changing only the password): type in the current username</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>New password:</td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the password: type in a new password</li> <li>To keep the current password (for example, if you are changing only the username): type in the current password</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Confirm password:</td> <td>Type in the same password entered in the <b>New password</b> field, above.</td> </tr> </table>	Username:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the username: type in a new username</li> <li>To retain the current username (for example, if you are changing only the password): type in the current username</li> </ul>	New password:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the password: type in a new password</li> <li>To keep the current password (for example, if you are changing only the username): type in the current password</li> </ul>	Confirm password:	Type in the same password entered in the <b>New password</b> field, above.
	Username:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the username: type in a new username</li> <li>To retain the current username (for example, if you are changing only the password): type in the current username</li> </ul>					
	New password:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the password: type in a new password</li> <li>To keep the current password (for example, if you are changing only the username): type in the current password</li> </ul>					
Confirm password:	Type in the same password entered in the <b>New password</b> field, above.						
5	Click the <b>Save User</b> button.						
6	To change the password used for writing data values in the <b>Data Editor</b> , in the <b>Data Editor Write Password</b> section of the page, enter values for the following fields:						
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Data Editor write password:</td> <td>Type in the current password that is required to write data using the <b>Data Editor</b>.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>New write password:</td> <td>Type in the new <b>Data Editor</b> password.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Confirm write password:</td> <td>Type in the same password entered in the <b>New write password</b> field, above.</td> </tr> </table>	Data Editor write password:	Type in the current password that is required to write data using the <b>Data Editor</b> .	New write password:	Type in the new <b>Data Editor</b> password.	Confirm write password:	Type in the same password entered in the <b>New write password</b> field, above.
	Data Editor write password:	Type in the current password that is required to write data using the <b>Data Editor</b> .					
	New write password:	Type in the new <b>Data Editor</b> password.					
Confirm write password:	Type in the same password entered in the <b>New write password</b> field, above.						
7	Click the <b>Change Write Password</b> button.						

## Configuring Port Mirroring

### Enabling Port Mirroring in Control Expert


You can use the port mirroring service to duplicate the traffic entering and exiting any one of the four Ethernet ports (the source port) onto another one of the ports (the destination port), for the purpose of diagnosing the source port.


**NOTE:**

- Verify that the port mirroring service is enabled in Control Expert (*see page 78*) before configuring it in the web pages.
- You can designate only non-RSTP enabled ports as the destination port.
- The port mirroring configuration settings are transient, and are cleared when you reboot the Ethernet communication module.

### Configuring Port Mirroring in the Web Pages

To configure port mirroring, follow these steps:

Step	Description
1	In Control Expert, enable the port mirroring service ( <i>see page 78</i> ) to globally enable port mirroring.
2	Navigate to and open the web server, ( <i>see page 372</i> ) using the IP address of the communication module. The <b>Home</b> page opens.
3	From the <b>Home</b> page, click on the <b>Setup</b> main menu item. If required, input the username and web page password ( <i>see page 373</i> ). The <b>Setup</b> page opens: 

Step	Description						
4	<p>On the left side of the page, click on the <b>Port Mirroring</b> node. The <b>Port Mirroring</b> page opens:</p> 						
5	<p>Configure the following fields:</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Enable:</td> <td>Place a check mark in this field to enable port mirroring. (Default = de-selected.)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Source:</td> <td>Select a port (1..4). The traffic from this port will be duplicated and sent to the destination port for diagnosis.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Destination:</td> <td>Select a port—other than the source port—to receive the duplicated traffic of the source port. Only ports with RSTP disabled can be selected.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Enable:	Place a check mark in this field to enable port mirroring. (Default = de-selected.)	Source:	Select a port (1..4). The traffic from this port will be duplicated and sent to the destination port for diagnosis.	Destination:	Select a port—other than the source port—to receive the duplicated traffic of the source port. Only ports with RSTP disabled can be selected.
Enable:	Place a check mark in this field to enable port mirroring. (Default = de-selected.)						
Source:	Select a port (1..4). The traffic from this port will be duplicated and sent to the destination port for diagnosis.						
Destination:	Select a port—other than the source port—to receive the duplicated traffic of the source port. Only ports with RSTP disabled can be selected.						
6	Click the <b>Save</b> button.						

## Section 11.2

### Monitoring the Control Expert Application

---

#### Overview

This section describes how to use the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module's embedded web pages to monitor the Control Expert application.

#### What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Using the Monitoring Page	379
Data Editor (Standard)	380
Working With Data Templates	385
Data Editor (Lite)	389

## Using the Monitoring Page

### Monitoring Page

Select the **Monitoring** tab at the top of the window to display the **Monitoring** page:



To access a monitoring service, click on either of the following links:

- **Data Editor Lite**
- **Data Editor Standard**

**NOTE:** The Data Editor web page for the BMXP3420•0 CPU modules uses located memory addresses only; they are not FactoryCast compatible. Only FactoryCast modules, like the BMXNOE0110 or BMENOC0311 modules, can be included in a Web Designer project that uses Control Expert symbols.




## Data Editor (Standard)

### Overview

The **Data Editor** is a Java applet that dynamically displays run-time application data. Use the **Data Editor** to create and edit data monitoring tables that provide read/write access to application data and device registers.

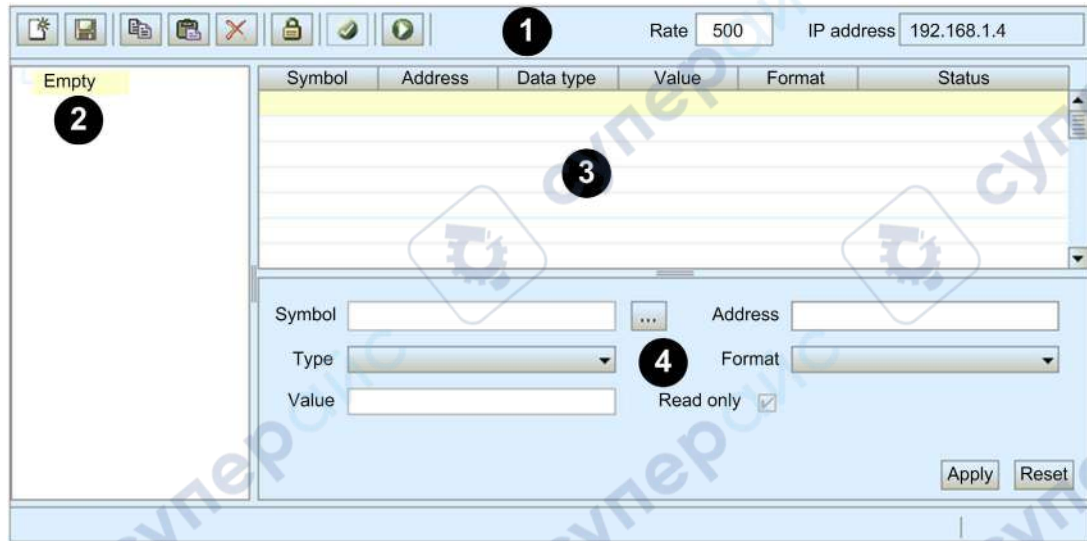
**NOTE:** Write access is password protected.

 <b>WARNING</b>
<b>Unintended Equipment Operation</b> The data editor makes it possible to write to application variables and change application data values. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use passwords to strictly limit access to write data functionality.</li><li>• Do not use weak passwords, including the default password and other obvious passwords.</li><li>• Limit access to trained personnel.</li></ul> <b>Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.</b>

This topic describes the **Data Editor** user interface.

## Data Editor

The **Data Editor** presents the following controls:









- 1 Toolbar
- 2 Data template list
- 3 Data template
- 4 Configuration Area

## Toolbar

The **Data Editor** toolbar presents the following features:

Command or Field	Icon	Description
New		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If a node in the data template list is selected, this command opens the <b>New table</b> dialog for the creation of a new data template. The new data template is inserted below the selected node.</li> <li>If a row in the currently open data template is selected, this command inserts a new row below the selected row.</li> </ul>
Save		Saves changes made to both the data template list and each data template.
Copy		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If a node in the data template list is selected, this command copies the selected data template.</li> <li>If an item (or row) in the currently open data template is selected, this command to copies the selected item.</li> </ul>

Command or Field	Icon	Description
Paste		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the root, or Empty, node is selected in the data template list, this command pastes a previously copied data template into the list.</li> <li>• If an empty item (or row) in the currently open data template is selected, this command pastes a previously copied item into the data template item at the selected row.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When adding a copied item, or row, to a data template, the paste command will overwrite item data in the selected row. To insert a copied row between existing rows, first use the <b>New</b> command to create an empty row, then paste the copied data into the new row.</p>
Delete		Deletes the selected data template from the list, or the selected item from the data template.
Change password		Opens the <b>Change password</b> dialog, where you can change the Data Editor Write ( <i>see page 374</i> ) password.  <b>NOTE:</b> The Data Editor Write password can also be changed in the <b>Setup → Security</b> web page.
Read PLC symbols		Loads the existing Control Expert symbol—or variable—names into the <b>Lookup Variable</b> dialog. Variables that have been loaded into this dialog can be added to the currently open data template.
Start animation		Starts the dynamic display of value and status for the items contained in the selected data template.  <b>NOTE:</b> The Start animation icon is visible only when animation is turned OFF.
Stop animation		Stops the dynamic display of value and status for the items contained in the selected data template.  <b>NOTE:</b> The Stop animation icon is visible only when animation is turned ON.
Rate	—	The refresh rate of the dynamic display of data template items, in milliseconds.
IP address	—	The IP address of the Ethernet communication module and its embedded web server.

### Data Template List

The data template list displays a node for each data template that was either:

- previously saved, or
- created after the **Data Editor** was opened, but not yet saved

Select a data template in this list to view or edit its contents.

**NOTE:** If you create a new data template, then navigate away from the **Data Editor** before clicking the **Save** button, the new data template will be lost.

## Data Template

Use the data template—when animation is turned ON—to monitor the status and values of items for the template that is currently selected in the data template list.

Each data template item (or row) is defined in the configuration area. A data template item can contain the following fields:

Field	Description	
Symbol	Contains the names of Control Expert symbols (variables).	
Address	Contains direct addresses and the addresses of Control Expert symbols (variables). Any direct address can be viewed by entering its reference in this field. Valid direct addresses include:	
	%Mi	same as for 0X coils
	%Ii	same as 1x for discreet inputs
	%IWi	same as 3x for input registers
	%MWi, %MDi, %MFi	same as 4x for holding registers
	<p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A single bit of any word address (for example, %MWi, %IWi) can be specified by appending ".j" to the address, where "j" is a bit index in the range of 0 (LSB) to 15 (MSB). For example, bit 4 of the value at %MW101 would be specified as %MW101.4.</li> <li>• A direct address can include an index specification that allows it to be treated as an array variable. Indexed addressing can be used with a %Mi, %MWi, %MDi, or %MFi address by appending "[j]" to the address of the beginning of the array, where "j" is an unsigned integer value. For example, the third value of an array of float values starting at %MF201 would be specified as %MF201[2].</li> </ul>	
Data type	Contains the data type of the symbol (variable) or direct address. Symbol (variable) data types appear automatically when the symbol (variable) is located. Select direct address data types from a drop-down list. The following data types are valid:	
	INT	16-bit signed integer
	UINT	16-bit unsigned integer
	DINT	32-bit signed integer
	UDINT	32-bit unsigned integer
	REAL	32-bit IEEE floating point
	TIME	32-bit unsigned integer (in ms)
	DATE	Date (32-bit BCD)
	TOD	Time of day (32-bit BCD)
	BOOL	1 bit discrete (Boolean)
Value	When animation has started, this field displays the value of the symbol (variable) or direct address. This field is updated continuously.	

Field	Description	
Format	Contains the format type for displaying the value of the symbol (variable) or direct address. The following formats are available:	
	bool	Boolean
	dec	Decimal
	hex	Hexadecimal
	binary	Binary
	ASCII	bytes displayed as ASCII characters
	time	day_hr_min_sec_ms
	date	YYYY-MM-DD or HH:MM:SS
Status	Contains messages describing the status of communication with the direct address:	
	if communication is normal	The status message reads <b>OK</b>
	if communication is interrupted	The status field displays a system message describing the interruption

### Configuration Area

Open and close the configuration area by double-clicking on a row in the data template. The configuration area will display the configuration settings for the selected row. Use the up and down arrows on your keyboard to move between rows in the data template and display their settings in the configuration area.

Use the configuration area—when data template animation is turned OFF—to:

- create a new data template (*see page 385*)
- display the items contained in an existing data template (*see page 387*)
- add a direct address (*see page 387*) to a data template

Use the configuration area—when data template animation is turned ON—to write data to read/write application variables.



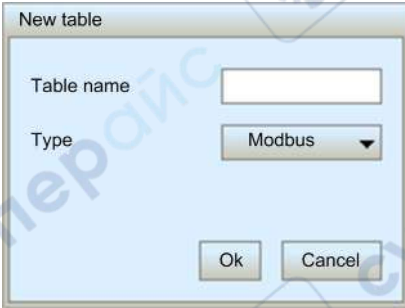
Refer to the topic Working With Data Templates for more information on how to use the controls in the configuration area.

## Working With Data Templates

### Creating a Data Template

To display and access application data, first create a data template.

To create a new data template, follow these steps:

Step	Description
1	Confirm that <b>Data Editor</b> animation is OFF. If necessary, click the <b>Stop animation</b>  toolbar button.
2	Click the <b>New table</b>  toolbar button. The <b>New table</b> dialog opens: 
3	In the <b>Table name</b> field, type in the name of the new data template.
4	Click <b>OK</b> . The new data template appears as a node in the data template list.

**NOTE:** Save the new data template before performing any other task in the **Data Editor**. Moving to another page—or creating a new data template in the current page—before saving your work deletes the new data template.



### Saving a Data Template

After you save a new data template, you can re-use it to view or modify its contents.

**NOTE:**

- Be careful when you modify and save a data template. The last saved modification overwrites the pre-existing data template, even if the data template was originally created by someone other than yourself.
- If a data template is open for viewing by someone else, your edits to that data template will be seen only when that person next accesses the **Data Editor**.

To save a new data template, follow these steps:

Step	Description
1	<p>Click the <b>Save</b>  toolbar button.                      The <b>Save application</b> dialog opens:</p> 
2	<p>In the <b>Password</b> field, type in the <b>Web Page (HTTP) Access</b> password.  <b>NOTE:</b> The default password is <b>USER</b>.</p>
3	<p>Click <b>Ok</b>.                      The new data template is saved.</p>

## Displaying an Existing Data Template

When you open a saved data template, you can use it to:

- edit its contents by inserting a direct address
- monitor the value and status of data items
- write data values to a read/write variables

The data template list, located on the left side of the **Data Editor**, displays the saved data templates. Select a data template node from the list to display that template's data items in the spreadsheet on the right:



## Inserting a Direct Address Into a Data Template

You can add Control Expert direct address items—also called located registers—into a data template. After a direct address item is added, you can view or modify its value.

To add a direct address item to a data template, follow these steps:

Step	Description
1	In the data template spreadsheet, double-click on an empty row. The <b>Data Editor</b> configuration area opens.
2	In the <b>Address</b> field of the configuration area, type in the item's direct address.
3	In the configuration area, click <b>Apply</b> . The selected row is updated.
4	<b>Save</b> your edits.




### Modifying Data Values Using a Data Template

You can use the **Data Editor** to write data values to a direct address item, and send the new value to the controller.

For example, suppose that you have programmed a pushbutton object to jog a motor when the button is depressed and to stop jogging when the button is released. If communications are lost while the button is depressed, the motor will continue to jog even when the button is released. Graphic objects are not designed to be used to control situations like this, unless other interlock methods are installed in the system.

**NOTE:** You can only modify the value of data items that are defined as read/write in the Control Expert application.

To use the **Data Editor** to edit data, follow these steps:

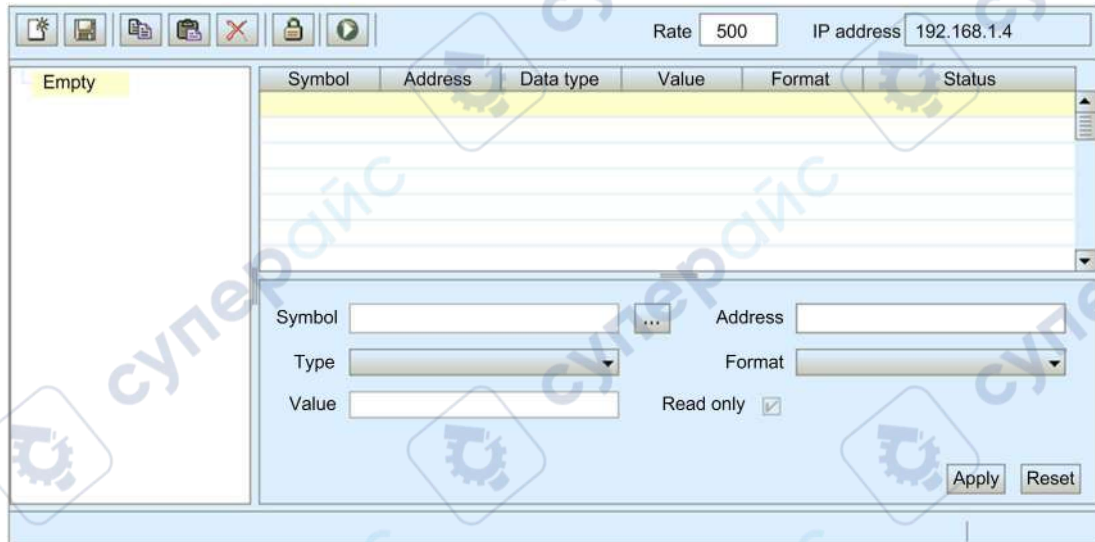
Step	Description
1	In the data template spreadsheet, double-click on the item you want to write data to. The <b>Data Editor</b> configuration area opens, displaying the fields for the selected item.
2	In the <b>Value</b> field, type in the desired data value.
3	Click <b>Apply</b> . The <b>Enter password</b> dialog opens: 
4	In the <b>Password</b> field, type in the Write Data password. <b>NOTE:</b> The default password is <b>USER</b> .
5	Click <b>OK</b> . The new value is sent to the controller.

## Data Editor (Lite)

### Overview

**Data Editor Lite** is a version of the **Data Editor** that is smaller in size and therefore faster to download, especially for use via a dial-up connection.

**Data Editor Lite** presents the same interface as the **Data Editor**, with the exception that its toolbar does not include the **Read PLC Symbols** function:



### Variables

**Data Editor Lite** accepts the following IEC variables:

Address	Type	Display
%MW IEC internal word	INT	DECIMAL
%MD IEC double word	DINT	DECIMAL
%M IEC internal bits	BOOL	BOOLEAN

**NOTE:** You cannot access the **Lookup Variable** dialog and insert symbols into a data template using **Data Editor Lite**. You can insert only direct addresses.

### Re-Using Data Editor Templates

**Data Editor Lite** can reuse the same templates created with the **Data Editor**. However, **Data Editor** templates can use a wider range of variable types than **Data Editor Lite**. When **Data Editor Lite** encounters a variable it cannot manage, it displays `Not Supported` as the data type. In this case, the variable cannot be edited using **Data Editor Lite**.

## Section 11.3

### Diagnostics

#### Overview

This section describes the diagnostic services provided by the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module.

#### What Is in This Section?

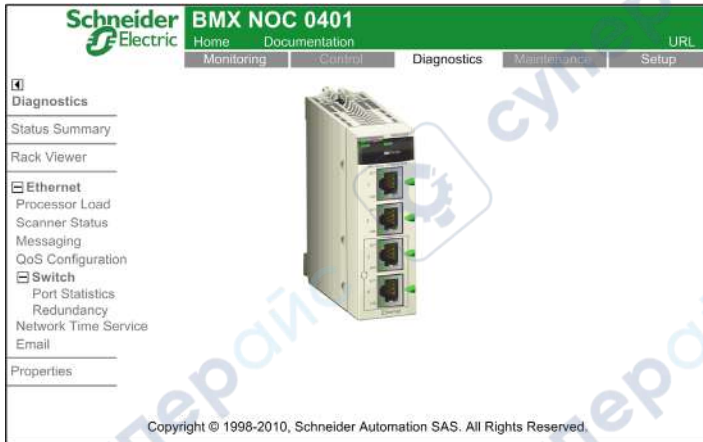
This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Using the Diagnostics Page	392
Status Summary	393
Rack Viewer	396
Processor Load	398
Scanner Status	401
Messaging	403
QoS Configuration	405
Port Statistics	407
Redundancy	410
Email Diagnostics	411
Network Time Service Diagnostics	414
Properties	416

## Using the Diagnostics Page

### Diagnostics Page

Click on the main menu **Diagnostics** command to display the **Diagnostics** page:



To access a monitoring service, click on either of the following links:

- Status Summary (*see page 393*)
- Rack Viewer (*see page 396*)
- Ethernet:
  - Processor Load (*see page 398*)
  - Scanner Status (*see page 401*)
  - Messaging (*see page 403*)
  - QoS Configuration (*see page 405*)
- Switch
  - Port Statistics (*see page 407*)
  - Redundancy (*see page 410*)
- Network Time Service (*see page 414*)
- Email (*see page 411*)
- Properties (*see page 416*)

## Status Summary

### Introduction

Use the **Status Summary** page to view the status of:

- the LEDs (*see page 326*) located on the front of the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module
- the Ethernet services (*see page 78*) supported by the communication module
- the communication module in its role as:
  - scanner
  - Modbus TCP server
  - EtherNet/IP messaging server

### Status Summary Display

The **Status Summary** page looks like this:

Monitoring	Control	Diagnostics	Maintenance	Setup
<b>STATUS SUMMARY</b>				
<b>LEDs</b>				
<b>Label</b>		<b>Status</b>		
RUN		Ready for Operation		
ERR		No Fault Detected		
ETH STS		In Operation		
MS		In Operation		
NS		Connections established		
<b>Services</b>				
<b>Function</b>		<b>Status</b>		
DHCP Server		Enabled		
FDR Server		Enabled		
QoS Tagging		Enabled		
IGMP Snooping		Enabled		
Access Control		Enabled		
Port Mirroring		Enabled		
RSTP		Enabled		
Network Time Service		Enabled		
Email Service		Enabled		
Scanner Status		Not Configured		
Copyright © 2000-2012, Schneider Electric. All Rights Reserved.				

To open this page:

Step	Action
1	Starting at the <b>Home page</b> , click the <b>Diagnostics</b> main menu item. The <b>Diagnostics</b> page opens.
2	On the left side of the <b>Diagnostics</b> page, select <b>Ethernet</b> → <b>Status Summary</b> .
3	If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. <b>NOTE:</b> The default password is <b>USER</b> .

### Status Summary Data

The **LEDs** section of the page can present the following operational states:

LED	Color	Text Descriptions
RUN	Green	Ready for operation
	Gray	Not ready for operation
ERR	Red	Fault detected
	Gray	No fault detected
ETH STS	Green	In operation
	Red	Duplicate IP
		Waiting for BootP server response
		Default IP Address in use
MS (module status)	Green	In operation
	Red	Not configured
		Fault detected
		Recoverable fault detected
NS (network status)	Green	Connections established
	Red	No EtherNet/IP connections
		Connection error detected
		Duplicate IP address

The **Services** section of the page can present the following functional conditions:

Function	Color	Text Descriptions
DHCP Server	—	Enabled
FDR Server		Disabled
QoS Tagging		
IGMP Snooping		
Access Control		
Port Mirroring		
RSTP		
Network Time Service	—	Enabled
Email Service		Disabled
Scanner Status	Green	Working properly
	Red	At least one connection is bad
	Gray	Not configured



## Rack Viewer

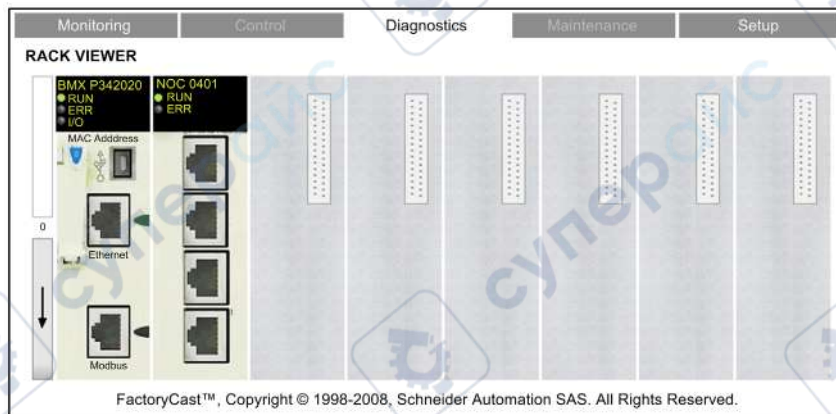
### Introduction

Use the **Rack Viewer** to access web pages that describe the identity, placement, configuration and operation of modules in the M340 rack.

To view information describing a specific module—including the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module—click on the image of that module in the **Rack Viewer**.

### Rack Display

The **Rack Viewer** looks like this, when it is first opened:




To open this page:

Step	Action
1	Starting at the <b>Home page</b> , click the <b>Diagnostics</b> main menu item. The <b>Diagnostics</b> page opens.
2	On the left side of the <b>Diagnostics</b> page, select <b>Rack Viewer</b> .
3	If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. <b>NOTE:</b> The default password is <b>USER</b> .

## Rack Viewer Displaying the BMX NOC 0401

When you click on the BMX NOC 0401 in the rack display, the following web page opens:

Monitoring	Control	Diagnostics	Maintenance	Setup	
<b>RACK VIEWER</b>					
Leds:	Rack:	0	Product Range:	M340	
● RUN	Slot:	1	Trade Type:	Communication	
● ERR	Module State:	Ok	Product Type:	Ethernet	
	Reference Present:	BMX NOC 0401	Reference Configured:	BMX NOC 0401	
	Version:	1.0			
<b>Parameters</b>					
IP Address:	192.168.1.4	Net mask:	255.255.255.0	Gateway:	0.0.0.0
Name:		MAC Address:	0.80.f4.1.fb.bc		
<b>Services</b>		<b>Status</b>		<b>Counter</b>	
Port 502:	<b>True</b>	Generic faults:	<b>False</b>	Refused port 502 connections:	0
IO Scanner:	<b>True</b>	Ethernet interface disabled:	<b>False</b>	Received messages (/sec):	25
Global data:	<b>True</b>	Duplicate IP Address:	<b>False</b>	Filter messages (/sec):	10
Emails:	<b>True</b>	Configuration mismatch:	<b>False</b>	Dropped messages (/sec):	0
Server FDR:	<b>True</b>	Ethernet link disconnected:	<b>False</b>	Max received messages (/sec):	2893
		Obtaining IP address:	<b>False</b>	Max Filter messages (/sec):	10112
		Self-test fault:	<b>False</b>	Max dropped messages (/sec):	46132
		Application faults:	<b>False</b>	Nb of Multicast (/sec):	9
				Nb of Broadcast (/sec):	2893
				<input type="button" value="Reset"/>	
					
FactoryCast™, Copyright © 1998-2008, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved.					

Click on the blue **Back** arrow to return to the rack display.

## Processor Load

### Introduction

Use the **Processor Load** web page to display dynamically generated data for the BMX NOC 0401 communication module's bandwidth usage.

### Processor Load Display

The **Processor Load** page looks like this:

Monitoring		Control		Diagnostics		Maintenance		Setup		
<b>PROCESSOR LOAD</b>										
<b>Processor Load</b>										
<b>Module Load</b>										
Processor Utilization				38			%			
<b>Communication Load</b>										
Function		Statistics			Units					
I/O	Scanner	EtherNet/IP Sent (writes)		31	Packets per second					
		EtherNet/IP Received (read)		33	Packets per second					
		Modbus TCP Requests		17	Packets per second					
		Modbus TCP Responses		16	Packets per second					
	Adapter	EtherNet/IP Sent (writes)		0	Packets per second					
		EtherNet/IP Received (read)		0	Packets per second					
			Module Capacity		12000	Packets per second				
			Module Utilization		0.8	%				
	Messaging	Client	EtherNet/IP activity		0	Messages per second				
			Modbus TCP activity		0	Messages per second				
Server		EtherNet/IP activity		0	Messages per second					
		Modbus TCP activity		0	Messages per second					
Copyright © 2000-2009, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved.										

**NOTE:** The background color for the **Processor Utilization** and **Module Utilization** values varies, depending upon the percentage of utilization. If utilization is:

- 90% to 100%—background color is RED
- 80% to 89.99%—background color is YELLOW
- 0% to 79.99%—background color is GRAY

To open this page:

Step	Action
1	Starting at the <b>Home page</b> , click the <b>Diagnostics</b> main menu item. The <b>Diagnostics</b> page opens.
2	On the left side of the <b>Diagnostics</b> page, select <b>Ethernet → Processor Load</b> .
3	If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. <b>NOTE:</b> The default password is <b>USER</b> .

### Processor Load Parameters

The **Processor Load** page displays the following parameters for the communication module:

Parameter	Description
Module Load:	
Processor Utilization	The percent of Ethernet communication module processor capacity used by the present level of communication activity. The background color of the value changes, depending on the percentage utilization.
I/O Scanner:	
EtherNet/IP Sent (writes)	The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has sent, since the last reset, in packets/second.
EtherNet/IP Received (read)	The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has received, since the last reset, in packets/second.
Modbus TCP Requests	The number of Modbus TCP requests the module has sent, since the last reset, in packets/second.
Modbus TCP Responses	The number of Modbus TCP responses the module has received, since the last reset, in packets/second.
I/O Adapter:	
EtherNet/IP Sent (writes)	The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has sent—in the role of a local slave—since the last reset, in packets/second.
EtherNet/IP Received (read)	The number of EtherNet/IP packets the module has received—in the role of a local slave—since the last reset, in packets/second.
I/O - Module	
Module Capacity	The maximum number of packets that the module can process, in packets per second.
Module Utilization	The percentage of communication module capacity being used by the application. The background color of the value changes, depending on the percentage utilization.
Messaging - Client:	
EtherNet/IP activity	The number of I/O messages sent by the module—using the EtherNet/IP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second.
Modbus TCP activity	The number of I/O messages sent by the module—using the Modbus TCP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second.

Parameter	Description
Messaging - Server:	
EtherNet/IP activity	The number of I/O messages received by the module—using the EtherNet/IP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second.
Modbus TCP activity	The number of I/O messages received by the module—using the Modbus TCP protocol—since last reset, in packets per second.

## Scanner Status

### Introduction

The **Scanner Status** web page displays read-only data describing the current state of the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module in its role as I/O scanner.

### Scanner Status Display

The top of the page displays the following general diagnostic information about the scanner:

- I/O scanning status
  - A value of **Operational** indicates that the values in the **Scanner Status** grid are reporting the state of scanned devices.
  - A value of **Stopped** indicates the local system is not scanning. In this case, any data that appears in the **Scanner Status** grid is meaningless.
- Number of transactions per second
- Number of connections

The **Scanner Status** web page looks like this:

Monitoring Control Diagnostics Maintenance Setup

**SCANNER STATUS**

Scanner status: **Operational**

Number of transactions per sec : **83** | Number of connections : **3**

Scanner Status			
16		EIP	1
32		EIP	17
48		MB	33
64			49

Non-Configured Scanned Not Scanned Fault

Copyright © 1998-2007, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved.

In the **Scanner Status** grid, the colors that appear in each block indicate the following states for specific remote devices:

- GREEN indicates that a device is being scanned
- BLACK indicates that I/O scanning of the specific device has been intentionally disabled
- GRAY indicates an device that is not configured
- RED indicates a suspect device

**NOTE:** A green **Scanner Status** indicator in the grid can remain green for a remote scanned device after the Ethernet cable is detached from that device. This situation can occur if the health timeout value for that device is set to 0.

To avoid this result—and to help promote the accurate reporting of I/O scanning health—configure an operational health timeout value in the range 1..65535 (in 1 ms increments).

The grid also indicates the protocol used to communicate with the remote device:

- MB: indicates a Modbus TCP connection
- EIP: indicates an EtherNet/IP connection

To open this page:

Step	Action
1	Starting at the <b>Home page</b> , click the <b>Diagnostics</b> main menu item. The <b>Diagnostics</b> page opens.
2	On the left side of the <b>Diagnostics</b> page, select <b>Ethernet → Scanner Status</b> .
3	If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. <b>NOTE:</b> The default password is <b>USER</b> .







To open this page:

Step	Action
1	Starting at the <b>Home page</b> , click the <b>Diagnostics</b> main menu item. The <b>Diagnostics</b> page opens.
2	On the left side of the <b>Diagnostics</b> page, select <b>Ethernet → Messaging</b> .
3	If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. <b>NOTE:</b> The default password is <b>USER</b> .

## QoS Configuration

### Introduction

The BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module supports the OSI layer 3 Quality of Service (QoS) standard defined in RFC-2475. When the QoS is enabled, the module adds a *differentiated services code point* (DSCP) tag to each Ethernet packet it transmits, thereby indicating the priority of that packet.

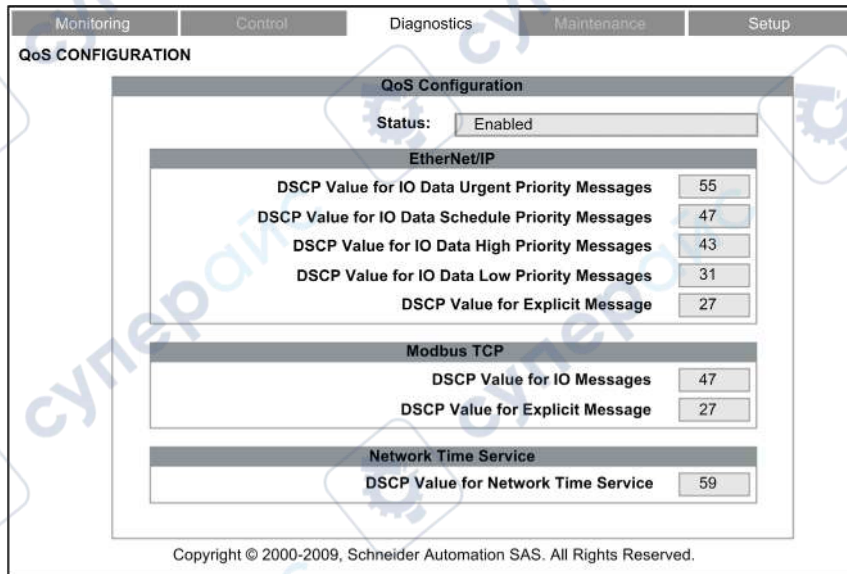
The **QoS Configuration** page displays both the:

- status of the QoS Ethernet packet tagging service—enabled or disabled, and
- the QoS service configuration settings

**NOTE:** The QoS service is enabled in the Services page (see *Quantum using EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet Communication Module, User Manual*), and the configuration settings are input in the QoS page (see *Quantum using EcoStruxure™ Control Expert, 140 NOC 771 01 Ethernet Communication Module, User Manual*), of the Control Expert Ethernet Configuration Tool.

### QoS Configuration Display

The QoS Configuration page looks like this:



Monitoring	Control	Diagnostics	Maintenance	Setup
<b>QoS CONFIGURATION</b>				
<b>QoS Configuration</b>				
Status: <input type="text" value="Enabled"/>				
<b>EtherNet/IP</b>				
DSCP Value for IO Data Urgent Priority Messages				<input type="text" value="55"/>
DSCP Value for IO Data Schedule Priority Messages				<input type="text" value="47"/>
DSCP Value for IO Data High Priority Messages				<input type="text" value="43"/>
DSCP Value for IO Data Low Priority Messages				<input type="text" value="31"/>
DSCP Value for Explicit Message				<input type="text" value="27"/>
<b>Modbus TCP</b>				
DSCP Value for IO Messages				<input type="text" value="47"/>
DSCP Value for Explicit Message				<input type="text" value="27"/>
<b>Network Time Service</b>				
DSCP Value for Network Time Service				<input type="text" value="59"/>
Copyright © 2000-2009, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved.				

This page is read-only.

To open this page:

Step	Action
1	Starting at the <b>Home page</b> , click the <b>Diagnostics</b> main menu item. The <b>Diagnostics</b> page opens.
2	On the left side of the <b>Diagnostics</b> page, select <b>Ethernet</b> → <b>QoS Configuration</b> .
3	If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. <b>NOTE:</b> The default password is <b>USER</b> .

## Port Statistics

### Introduction

Use the **Port Statistics** page to display the following data for the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module:

- static IP addressing configuration data for the module, and
- dynamically generated data describing operations of the module's internal port, and each of the module's external Ethernet ports (ports 1, 2, 3 and 4)

### Port Statistics Display

The **Port Statistics** page looks like this:

Monitoring	Control	Diagnostics	Maintenance	Setup	
<b>PORT STATISTICS</b>					
<b>Ethernet configuration</b>					
Hostname: <input type="text" value="---"/>		Subnet Mask: <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>			
MAC Address: <input type="text" value="bc fb 01 f4 80 00"/>		Gateway: <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>			
IP Address: <input type="text" value="192.168.1.4"/>					
<b>Port Statistics</b>					
	<b>Internal port</b>	<b>port 1</b>	<b>port 2</b>	<b>port 3</b>	<b>port 4</b>
<b>Interface label:</b>	Internal port	Port 1	Port 2	Port 3	Port 4
<b>Speed (Operational):</b>	N/A	100Mbps	100Mbps	10Mbps	10Mbps
<b>Duplex (Operational):</b>	N/A	TP-Full Link	TP-Full Link	TP-Half Link	TP-Half Link
<b>Frames transmit OK:</b>	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Frames received OK:</b>	181596	126354	73220	0	0
<b>Collisions:</b>	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Excessive collisions:</b>	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Late collisions:</b>	0	0	0	0	0
<b>CRC errors:</b>	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Number Bytes Received:</b>	15568790	5047683	704	0	0
<b>Number Inbound Packets Error:</b>	220	19185	73220	0	0
<b>Number Inbound Packets Discard:</b>	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Number Bytes Sent:</b>	203	203	203	203	203
<b>Number Outbound Packets Error:</b>	100	100	100	10	10
<b>Number Outbound Packets Discard:</b>	3	3	3	3	3
<input type="button" value="Reset counters"/>					
Copyright © 1998-2008, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved.					

Click on the **Reset counters** button to reset the counting statistics to zero.

To open this page:

Step	Action
1	Starting at the <b>Home page</b> , click the <b>Diagnostics</b> main menu item. The <b>Diagnostics</b> page opens.
2	On the left side of the <b>Diagnostics</b> page, select <b>Ethernet</b> → <b>Switch</b> → <b>Port Statistics</b> .
3	If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. <b>NOTE:</b> The default password is <b>USER</b> .

### Port Statistics Descriptions

The **Port Statistics** page displays the following parameters for each communication module port:

Parameter	Description
Ethernet Configuration data:	
Hostname	The name assigned to the communication module
MAC Address	The factory assigned Media Access Control (MAC) address, consisting of 6 hexadecimal octet values
IP Address	The Internet Protocol (IP) address ( <i>see page 70</i> ) that has been assigned to the communication module
Subnet Mask	The subnet mask ( <i>see page 70</i> ) that has been assigned to the communication module
Gateway	The IP address of the remote device ( <i>see page 70</i> ), if any, that serves as a gateway to the communication module
Port Statistics:	
Interface Label	Un-Initialized or Initialized
Speed (Operational)	Baud rate: 0, 10, 100 Mbps
Duplex (Operational)	Twisted Pair— Full Link, Twisted Pair—Half Link
Frames transmit OK:	The number of frames that have been successfully transmitted
Frames received OK:	The number of frames that have been successfully received
Collisions:	The number of times a collision between two successfully transmitted packets was detected on the link
Excessive collisions:	The number of times the transmitter has not been successful after 16 attempts to transmit a frame, due to repeated collisions
CRC errors:	The number of times a CRC (FCS) error was detected on an incoming frame
Number Bytes Received:	Number of inbound bytes received on the interface
Number Inbound Packets Error:	The number of inbound packets that contain detected errors (not included in discards)
Number Inbound Packets Discard:	The number of inbound packets received on the interface, but discarded

Parameter	Description
Number Bytes Sent:	The number of outbound bytes transmitted on the interface
Number Outbound Packets Error:	The number of outbound packets that contain detected errors (not included in discards)
Number Outbound Packets Discard:	The number of outbound packets discarded while attempting to send them

## Redundancy

### Introduction

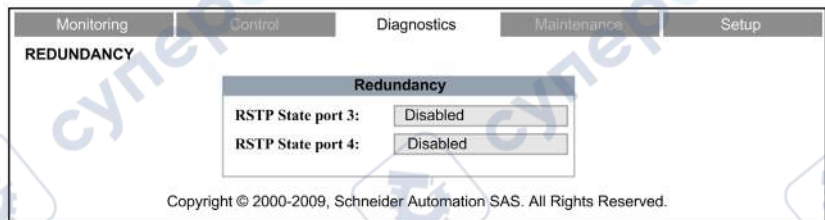
Use the **Redundancy** page to enable and disable the Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) for switch ports 3 and 4.

**NOTE:** Because only switch ports 3 and 4 support RSTP redundancy, use ports 3 and 4 to connect the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module to the wider network, and ports 1 and 2 for connections to local devices.

The RSTP service creates a loop-free logical network path for Ethernet devices that are part of a topology that includes redundant physical paths, and automatically restores network communication—by activating redundant links—in the event the network experiences a service interruption.

### Redundancy Display

The **Redundancy** page looks like this:



To open this page:

Step	Action
1	Starting at the <b>Home page</b> , click the <b>Diagnostics</b> main menu item. The <b>Diagnostics</b> page opens.
2	On the left side of the <b>Diagnostics</b> page, select <b>Ethernet</b> → <b>Switch</b> → <b>Redundancy</b> .
3	If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. <b>NOTE:</b> The default password is <b>USER</b> .

## Email Diagnostics

### Diagnosing SMTP Transmissions

Use the **SMTP Diagnostics** web page to display dynamically generated data describing the BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module Email transmissions.

**NOTE:** The Email service is enabled in the **Services** page, and the configuration settings are input in the **SMTP Configuration** page of the module DTM.

The **SMTP Diagnostics** web page looks like this:

Monitoring	Control	Diagnostics	Maintenance	Setup
<b>EMAIL DIAGNOSTICS</b>				
<b>Email Service</b>				
Status	Operational			
<b>Email Server</b>				
Status	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	IP Address	192 . 168 . 1 . 10	
<b>Information of Last Email Header Used</b>				
Sender Address	Operator1@company.com			
Recipient Address	merle@mainoffice.com			
Subject	Pump #1 pumping mud, Merle, shut her down			
<b>Email Service Statistics</b>				
Number of Emails Sent:	2			
Number of Responses from Email Server:	25			
Number of Errors:	0			
Last Error:	16#0			
Time elapses since last e-mail successfully sent (secs):	23			
Number of times link to the server down:	0			
<input type="button" value="Reset Counters"/>				
Copyright © 1998-2012, Schneider Electric. All Rights Reserved.				

Click the **Reset Counter** button to reset to 0 the **Email Service Statistics**.



To open this page:

Step	Action
1	Starting at the <b>Home page</b> , click the <b>Diagnostics</b> main menu item. The <b>Diagnostics</b> page opens.
2	On the left side of the <b>Diagnostics</b> page, select <b>Ethernet</b> → <b>SMTP Diagnostics</b> .
3	If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. <b>NOTE:</b> The default password is <b>USER</b> .

### Email diagnostic Parameters

Electronic mail notification service parameters include the following:

Parameter	Description
Email Service:	
Status	The status of this service in the Ethernet communication module: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Operational</li> <li>● Service Disabled</li> </ul>
Email Server:	
Status	The connection status between Ethernet communication module and the SMTP server: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● check mark = connected</li> <li>● no check mark = not connected</li> </ul> <b>NOTE:</b> Status is checked at start-up and at least every 30 minutes after start-up.
IP Address	IP address of the SMTP server
Information of Last Email Header Used:	
Sender Address:	Content of the <i>From</i> field in the last used Email header
Recipient Address:	Content of the <i>To</i> field in the last used Email header
Subject:	Content of the <i>Subject</i> field in the last used Email header
Email Service Statistics:	
Number of Emails Sent	Total number of Emails sent and successfully acknowledged by the SMTP server.
Number of Responses from Email Server	Total number of responses received from the SMTP server
Number of Errors	Total number of Emails that either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● could not be sent</li> <li>● were sent but were not successfully acknowledged by the SMTP server</li> </ul>
Last Error	Hexadecimal code describing the reason for the last unsuccessful Email transmission ( <i>see page 433</i> ). The value "0" indicates no unsuccessful transmissions.

Parameter	Description
Time elapses since last Email successfully sent (sec)	Counts the number of seconds since the last Email was successfully sent.
Number of times link to the server down	Number of times the SMTP server could not be reached. (Link checked every 30 minutes.)

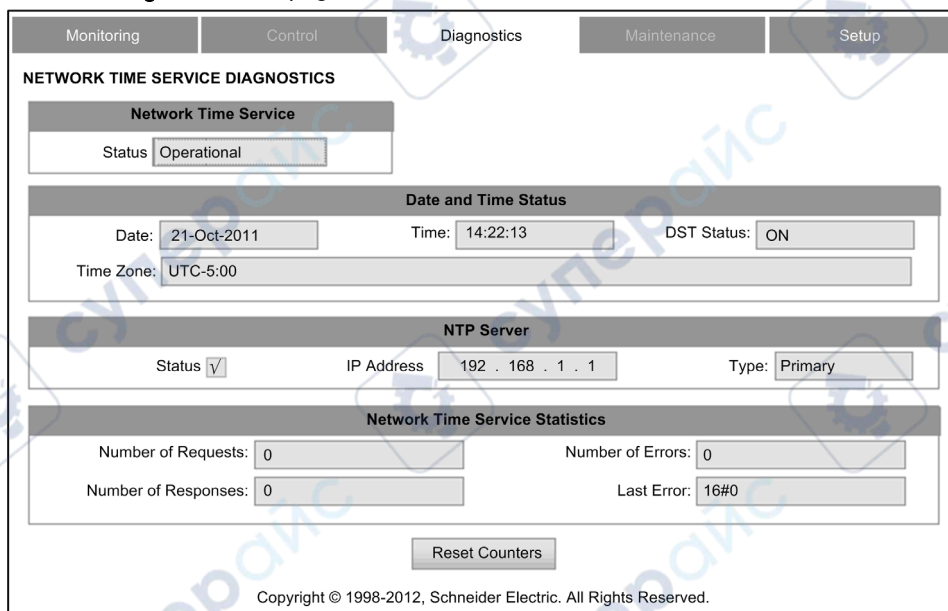
## Network Time Service Diagnostics

### Diagnosing the Network Time Service

Use the **Network Time Service Diagnostic** web page to display dynamically generated data describing the operation of the network time protocol (NTP) service that you configured in the Network Time Service page (*see page 105*) in Control Expert.

**NOTE:** The Email service is enabled in the **Services** page, and the configuration settings are input in the **Network Time Service Configuration** page of the module DTM.

The **NTP Diagnostics** web page looks like this:



Click the **Reset Counter** button to reset to 0 the **Network Time Service Statistics**.

To open this page:

Step	Action
1	Starting at the <b>Home page</b> , click the <b>Diagnostics</b> main menu item. The <b>Diagnostics</b> page opens.
2	On the left side of the <b>Diagnostics</b> page, select <b>Ethernet</b> → <b>NTP Diagnostics</b> .
3	If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. <b>NOTE:</b> The default password is <b>USER</b> .

## Network Time Service Diagnostic Parameters

Time synchronization service parameters are in the table:

Parameter	Description
Network Time Service:	
Status	Operational status of the service in the module: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Operational</li> <li>● Service Disabled</li> </ul>
Date and Time Status:	
Date:	System date
Time:	System time <b>NOTE:</b> Red text indicates the network time server is not available.
DST Status	The actual working status of the automatic daylight savings service: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● ON = automatic adjustment of daylight savings is enabled and the current date and time reflect the daylight savings time adjustment</li> <li>● OFF = automatic adjustment of daylight savings is disabled; or automatic adjustment of daylight savings is enabled, but the current date and time may not reflect the daylight savings time adjustment</li> </ul>
Time Zone	Time zone plus or minus Universal Time, Coordinated (UTC)
NTP Server:	
Status	Connection status of the NTP server: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● check mark = the NTP server is reachable</li> <li>● no check mark = the NTP server is not reachable</li> </ul>
IP Address	The IP address of the NTP server
Type	The NTP server currently active: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Primary</li> <li>● Secondary</li> </ul>
Network Time Service Statistics:	
Number of Requests:	Total number of client requests sent to the NTP server
Number of Responses:	Total number of server responses sent from the NTP server
Number of Errors:	Total number of unanswered NTP requests
Last Error	Last detected error code received from the NTP client: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● 0: good NTP configuration</li> <li>● 1: late NTP server response (can be caused by excessive network traffic or server overload)</li> <li>● 2: NTP not configured</li> <li>● 3: invalid NTP parameter setting</li> <li>● 4: NTP component disabled</li> <li>● 7: unrecoverable NTP transmission</li> <li>● 9: invalid NTP server IP address</li> <li>● 15: invalid syntax in the custom time zone rules file</li> </ul>

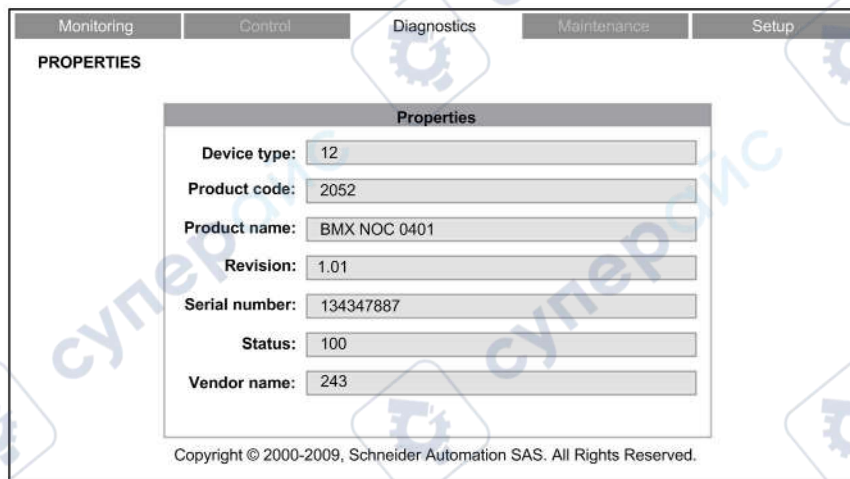
## Properties

### Introduction

The **Properties** web page displays read-only data describing the particular BMX NOC 0401 Ethernet communication module installed in your system.

### Properties Display

The **Properties** page looks like this:



Monitoring Control **Diagnostics** Maintenance Setup

**PROPERTIES**

**Properties**

Device type: 12

Product code: 2052

Product name: BMX NOC 0401

Revision: 1.01

Serial number: 134347887

Status: 100

Vendor name: 243

Copyright © 2000-2009, Schneider Automation SAS. All Rights Reserved.

To open this page:

Step	Action
1	Starting at the <b>Home page</b> , click the <b>Diagnostics</b> main menu item. The <b>Diagnostics</b> page opens.
2	On the left side of the <b>Diagnostics</b> page, select <b>Properties</b> .
3	If necessary, type in the HTTP web access password. <b>NOTE:</b> The default password is <b>USER</b> .

---

# Appendices

---



## What Is in This Appendix?

The appendix contains the following chapters:

Chapter	Chapter Name	Page
A	Detected Error Codes	419
B	CIP General Status Codes	427
C	Modbus Exception Response Codes	431
D	Email Detected Error Response Codes	433

---

# Appendix A

## Detected Error Codes

---

### Overview

This chapter contains a list of codes that describe the status of Ethernet communication module messages.

### What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
EtherNet/IP Implicit or Explicit Messaging Detected Error Codes	420
Explicit Messaging: Communication and Operation Reports	423

## EtherNet/IP Implicit or Explicit Messaging Detected Error Codes

### Introduction

If a DATA\_EXCH function block does not execute an EtherNet/IP explicit message, Control Expert returns a hexadecimal detected error code. The code can describe an EtherNet/IP detected error.

### EtherNet/IP Detected Error Codes

EtherNet/IP hexadecimal detected error codes include:

Detected Error Code	Description
16#800D	Timeout on the explicit message request
16#8012	Bad device
16#8015	Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Nor resources to handle the message, or</li> <li>• Internal detected error: no buffer available, no link available, impossible to send to the TCP task</li> </ul>
16#8018	Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Another explicit message for this device is in progress, or</li> <li>• TCP connection or encapsulation session in progress</li> </ul>
16#8030	Timeout on the Forward_Open request
<b>Note:</b> The following 16#81xx detected errors are Forward_Open response detected errors that originate at the remote target and are received via the CIP connection.	
16#8100	Connection in use or duplicate Forward_Open
16#8103	Transport class and trigger combination not supported
16#8106	Ownership conflict
16#8107	Target connection not found
16#8108	Invalid network connection parameter
16#8109	Invalid connection size
16#8110	Target for connection not configured
16#8111	RPI not supported
16#8113	Out of connections
16#8114	Vendor ID or product code mismatch
16#8115	Product type mismatch
16#8116	Revision mismatch
16#8117	Invalid produced or consumed application path
16#8118	Invalid or inconsistent configuration application path
16#8119	Non-Listen Only connection not opened



Detected Error Code	Description
16#811A	Target object out of connections
16#811B	RPI is smaller than the production inhibit time
16#8123	Connection timed out
16#8124	Unconnected request timed out
16#8125	Parameter detected error in unconnected request and service
16#8126	Message too large for unconnected_send service
16#8127	Unconnected acknowledge without reply
16#8131	No buffer memory available
16#8132	Network bandwidth not available for data
16#8133	No consumed connection ID filter available
16#8134	Not configured to send scheduled priority data
16#8135	Schedule signature mismatch
16#8136	Schedule signature validation not possible
16#8141	Port not available
16#8142	Link address not valid
16#8145	Invalid segment in connection path
16#8146	Detected error in Forward_Close service connection path
16#8147	Scheduling not specified
16#8148	Link address to self invalid
16#8149	Secondary resources unavailable
16#814A	Rack connection already established
16#814B	Module connection already established
16#814C	Miscellaneous
16#814D	Redundant connection mismatch
16#814E	No more user-configurable link consumer resources: the configured number of resources for a producing application has reached the limit
16#814F	No more user-configurable link consumer resources: there are no consumers configured for a producing application to use
16#8160	Vendor specific
16#8170	No target application data available
16#8171	No originator application data available
16#8173	Not configured for off-subnet multicast
16#81A0	Detected error in data assignment
16#81B0	Optional object state detected error

Detected Error Code	Description
16#81C0	Optional device state detected error
<b>Note:</b> All 16#82xx detected errors are register session response detected errors.	
16#8200	Target device does not have sufficient resources
16#8208	Target device does not recognize message encapsulation header
16#820F	Reserved or unknown detected error from target

## Explicit Messaging: Communication and Operation Reports

### Overview

Communication and operation reports are part of the management parameters.

**NOTE:** It is recommended that communication function reports be tested at the end of their execution and before the next activation. On cold start-up, confirm that all communication function management parameters are checked and reset to 0.

It may be helpful to use the%S21 to examine the first cycle after a cold or warm start.

### Communication Report

This report is common to every explicit messaging function. It is significant when the value of the activity bit switches from 1 to 0. The reports with a value between 16#01 and 16#FE concern errors detected by the processor that executed the function.

The different values of this report are indicated in the following table:

Value	Communication report (least significant byte)
16#00	Correct exchange
16#01	Exchange stop on timeout
16#02	Exchange stop on user request (CANCEL)
16#03	Incorrect address format
16#04	Incorrect destination address
16#05	Incorrect management parameter format
16#06	Incorrect specific parameters
16#07	Error detected in sending to the destination
16#08	Reserved
16#09	Insufficient receive buffer size
16#0A	Insufficient send buffer size
16#0B	No system resources: the number of simultaneous communication EFs exceeds the maximum that can be managed by the processor
16#0C	Incorrect exchange number
16#0D	No telegram received
16#0E	Incorrect length
16#0F	Telegram service not configured
16#10	Network module missing
16#11	Request missing
16#12	Application server already active

Value	Communication report (least significant byte)
16#13	UNI-TE V2 transaction number incorrect
16#FF	Message refused

**NOTE:** The function can detect a parameter error before activating the exchange. In this case the activity bit remains at 0, and the report is initialized with values corresponding to the detected error.

### Operation Report

This report byte is specific to each function, and specifies the result of the operation on the remote application:

Value	Operation report (most significant byte)
16#05	Length mismatch (CIP)
16#07	Bad IP address
16#08	Application error
16#09	Network is down
16#0A	Connection reset by peer
16#0C	Communication function not active
16#0D	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Modbus TCP: transaction timed out</li> <li>● EtherNet/IP: request timeout</li> </ul>
16#0F	No route to remote host
16#13	Connection refused
16#15	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Modbus TCP: no resources</li> <li>● EtherNet/IP: no resources to handle the message; or an internal detected error; or no buffer available; or no link available; or cannot send message</li> </ul>
16#16	Remote address not allowed
16#18	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Modbus TCP: concurrent connections or transactions limit reached</li> <li>● EtherNet/IP: TCP connection or encapsulation session in progress</li> </ul>
16#19	Connection timed out
16#22	Modbus TCP: invalid response
16#23	Modbus TCP: invalid device ID response
16#30	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Modbus TCP: remote host is down</li> <li>● EtherNet/IP: connection open timed out</li> </ul>
16#80...16#87: Forward_Open response detected errors:	
16#80	Internal detected error
16#81	Configuration detected error: the length of the explicit message, or the RPI rate, needs to be adjusted
16#82	Device detected error: target device does not support this service

Value	Operation report (most significant byte)
16#83	Device resource detected error: no resource is available to open the connection
16#84	System resource event: unable to reach the device
16#85	Data sheet detected error: incorrect EDS file
16#86	Invalid connection size
16#90...16#9F: Register session response detected errors:	
16#90	Target device does not have sufficient resources
16#98	Target device does not recognize message encapsulation header
16#9F	Unknown detected error from target

---

## Appendix B

### CIP General Status Codes

---

#### CIP General Status Codes

**NOTE:** Taken by permission from *The CIP Networks Library, Volume 1, Common Industrial Protocol (CIP™)*, Edition 3.6, April 2009.

The following table lists the status codes that may be present in the general status code field of a detected error response message. Note that the extended code field is available for use in further describing any general status code. Extended status codes are unique to each general status code within each object. Each object manages the extended status values and value ranges (including vendor specific). All extended status values are reserved unless otherwise indicated within the object definition.

General Status Code (in hex)	Status Name	Description of Status
00	Success	Service was successfully performed by the object specified.
01	Connection unsuccessful	A connection related service was unsuccessful along the connection path.
02	Resource unavailable	Resources needed for the object to perform the requested service were unavailable.
03	Invalid parameter value	See status code 0x20, which is the preferred value to use for this condition.
04	Path segment error	The path segment identifier or the segment syntax was not understood by the processing node. Path processing stops when a path segment error is detected.
05	Path destination unknown	The path is referencing an object class, instance, or structure element that is not known or is not contained in the processing node. Path processing stops when a path destination unknown error is detected.
06	Partial transfer	Only part of the expected data was transferred.
07	Connection lost	The messaging connection was lost.
08	Service not supported	The requested service was not implemented or was not defined for this object class/instance.
09	Invalid attribute value	Invalid attribute data detected.
0A	Attribute list error	An attribute in the Get_Attribute_List or Set_Attribute_List response has a non-zero status.

General Status Code (in hex)	Status Name	Description of Status
0B	Already in requested mode/state	The object is already in the mode/state being requested by the service.
0C	Object state conflict	The object cannot perform the requested service in its current mode/state.
0D	Object already exists	The requested instance of object to be created already exists.
0E	Attribute not settable	A request to modify a non-modifiable attribute was received.
0F	Privilege violation	A permission/privilege check was unsuccessful.
10	Device state conflict	The device's current mode/state prohibits the execution of the requested service.
11	Reply data too large	The data to be transmitted in the response buffer is larger than the allocated response buffer.
12	Fragmentation of a primitive value	The service specified an operation that is going to fragment a primitive data value, i.e., half a REAL data type.
13	Not enough data	The service did not supply enough data to perform the specified operation.
14	Attribute not supported	The attribute specified in the request is not supported.
15	Too much data	The service supplied more data than was expected.
16	Object does not exist	The object specified does not exist in the device.
17	Service fragmentation sequence not in progress	The fragmentation sequence for this service is not currently active for this data.
18	No stored attribute data	The attribute data of this object was not saved prior to the requested service.
19	Store operation unsuccessful	The attribute data of this object was not saved due to an unsuccessful attempt.
1A	Routing unsuccessful, request packet too large	The service request package was too large for transmission on a network in the path to the destination. The routing device was forced to abort the service.
1B	Routing unsuccessful, response packet too large	The service response packet was too large for transmission on a network in the path from the destination. The routing device was forced to abort the service.
1C	Missing attribute list entry data	The service did not supply an attribute in a list of attributes that was needed by the service to perform the requested behavior.
1D	Invalid attribute value list	The service is returning the list of attributes supplied with status information for those attributes that were invalid.
1E	Embedded service error	An embedded service resulted in a detected error.

General Status Code (in hex)	Status Name	Description of Status
1F	Vendor specific error	A vendor specific error has been detected. The additional code field of the error response defines the particular error encountered. Use this general code only when none of the codes presented in this table or within an object class definition accurately reflect the detected error.
20	Invalid parameter	A parameter associated with the request was invalid. This code is used when a parameter does not meet the requirements of this specification and/or the requirements defined in an application object specification.
21	Write-once value or medium already written	An attempt was made to write to a write-once medium (e.g., WORM drive, PROM) that has already been written, or to modify a value that cannot be changed once established.
22	Invalid reply received	An invalid reply is received (e.g., reply service code does not match the request service code, or reply message is shorter than the minimum expected reply size). This status code can serve for other causes of invalid replies.
23	Buffer overflow	The message received is larger than the receiving buffer can handle. The entire message was discarded.
24	Message format error	The format of the received message is not supported by the server.
25	Key failure in path	The key segment that was included as the first segment in the path does not match the destination module. The object specific status indicates which part of the key check was unsuccessful.
26	Path size invalid	The size of the path that was sent with the service request is either not large enough to allow the request to be routed to an object or too much routing data was included.
27	Unexpected attribute in list	An attempt was made to set an attribute that is not able to be set at this time.
28	Invalid member ID	The member ID specified in the request does not exist in the specified class/instance/attribute.
29	Member not settable	A request to modify a non-modifiable member was received.
2A	Group 2 only server — general error	This detected error code may only be reported by DeviceNet group 2 only servers with 4 Kb or less code space and only in place of service not supported, attribute not support, or attribute not settable.
2B	Unknown Modbus error	A CIP to Modbus translator received an unknown Modbus exception code.
2C	Attribute not gettable	A request to read a non-readable attribute was received.
2D - CF	–	Reserved by CIP for future extensions.
D0 - FF	Reserved for object class and service errors	This range of detected error codes is used to indicate object class specific detected errors. Use this range only when none of the codes presented in this table accurately reflect the error that is detected.



---

## Appendix C

### Modbus Exception Response Codes

---

#### MODBUS Exception Response Codes

The MODBUS exception response codes include the following:

Status		Response	Description
Hex)	(Dec)		
0x8101	33025	Illegal Function	The function code received in the query is not an allowable action for the server (or slave). This may be because the function code is only applicable to newer devices, and was not implemented in the unit selected. It could also indicate that the server (or slave) is in the wrong state to process a request of this type. This code is also returned when attempting to write to a read-only attribute.
0x8102	33026	Illegal Data Address	The data address received in the query is not an allowable address for the server (or slave). More specifically, the combination of reference number and transfer length is invalid.
0x8103	33027	Illegal Data Value	A value contained in the query data field is not an allowable value for server (or slave). This indicates an invalid request structure. It specifically does NOT mean that a data item submitted for storage in a register has a value outside the expectation of the application program, because the MODBUS protocol does not test the significance of any particular register value.
0x8104	33028	Slave Device Failure	An unrecoverable event occurred while the server (or slave) was attempting to perform the requested action.
0x8105	33029	Acknowledge	Specialized use in conjunction with programming commands: The server (or slave) has accepted the request and is processing it, but a long duration of time will be required to do so. This response is returned so that a timeout in the client (or master) will not occur. The client (or master) can next send a Poll Program Complete message to determine if processing is completed.
0x8106	33030	Slave Device Busy	Specialized use in conjunction with programming commands: The server (or slave) is engaged in processing a long-duration program command. The client (or master) should retransmit the message later when the server (or slave) is free.
0x8107	33031	Negative Acknowledge	Specialized use in conjunction with programming commands: The request attempts to initiate a program function that is not supported by the server (slave).

Status		Response	Description
Hex)	(Dec)		
0x8108	33032	Memory Parity Error	Specialized use in conjunction with function codes 20 and 21 and reference type 6, indicating that the extended file area did not pass a consistency check.
0x810A	33034	Gateway Path Unavailable	Specialized use in conjunction with gateways, indicates that the gateway was unable to allocate an internal communication path from the input port to the output port for processing the request. Usually means that the gateway is misconfigured or overloaded.
0x810B	33035	Gateway Target Device Failed to Respond	Specialized use in conjunction with gateways, indicates that no response was obtained from the target device. Usually means that the device is not present on the network.

The preceding MODBUS exception response codes are derived from the *MODBUS Application Protocol Specification V1.1b* as distributed by the Modbus Organization, Inc. at <http://www.Modbus-IDA.com>.

---

# Appendix D

## Email Detected Error Response Codes

---

### Electronic Mail Notification Service Detected Error Response Codes

#### SMTP Codes

The following codes are available only on the Control Expert DTM and web page diagnostic screens for the electronic mail notification service:

Code (hexadecimal)	Description
16#5100	Internal error detected
16#5101	SMTP component not operational
16#5102	Mail header not configured
16#5103	Invalid mail header value detected (1, 2, or 3)
16#5104	Cannot connect to SMTP server
16#5105	Error detected during transmitting content of email body to SMTP server
16#5106	Closing SMTP connection with the server returned a detected error message
16#5107	SMTP HELO request unsuccessful
16#5108	SMTP MAIL request unsuccessful — SMTP server may require authentication
16#5109	SMTP RCPT request unsuccessful
16#510A	No recipient accepted by the SMTP server
16#510B	SMTP DATA request unsuccessful
16#510C	Send email request contains an invalid length
16#510D	Authentication unsuccessful
16#510E	A reset component request was received while the connection was open

---

# Glossary

---



## R

### RPI

*(requested packet interval)* The time period between cyclic data transmissions requested by the Scanner. EtherNet/IP devices will publish data at the rate specified by the RPI assigned to them by the Scanner. Modbus TCP devices will receive message requests from the Scanner at each RPI.

## T

### trap

A trap is an event directed by an SNMP agent that indicates either:

- a change has occurred in the status of an agent, or
- an unauthorized SNMP manager device has attempted to get data from, or change data on, an SNMP agent



## 0-9

- 140 NOC 780 00
  - device editor, *57*
  - DTM browser, *45*

## A

- access control, *89*
- add remote device, *138, 173*
- address
  - I/O, *202*
- advanced mode
  - DTM browser, *50*
- Advantys STB island
  - connecting to, *152, 183*
- assembly object, *247, 251*
- auto-negotiation, *216*

## B

- Bandwidth Diagnostics, *336*

## C

- certifications, *19*
- channel properties, *63*
- CIP objects, *243*
- code 3
  - diagnostics, *312*
- configuring
  - properties in device editor, *57*
- connection
  - diagnostics, *347*
  - I/O, *351*
  - overhead, *228*
  - protocol, *228*
  - type, *228*
- connection manager object, *249*
- connection timeout
  - calculating, *227*

- control bits, *205*
- Control Expert
  - create project, *33*
  - download application, *59*
  - upload application, *61*

## D

- data editor
  - creating a data template, *385*
  - direct address, *387*
  - lite, *389*
  - modify data, *388*
  - saving a data template, *386*
- data editor (standard), *380*
- data template
  - displaying a data template, *387*
- DATA\_EXCH, *298, 302, 306, 314*
  - error codes, *420*
  - explicit message, *289*
- derived data types, *198, 200*
- derived variables, *201*
- device bandwidth, *235*
- device discovery, *51*
- device editor, *55*
  - DTM browser, *57*
- device load, *235*
- DHCP, *80*
- DHCP client, *83*

- diagnostics, 329
    - bandwidth, 336, 398
    - connection, 347
    - Email, 339, 411
    - Ethernet port, 332
    - function code 3, 312
    - local slave, 347
    - messaging, 403
    - NTP, 341, 414
    - port statistics, 407
    - processor load, 398
    - properties, 416
    - QoS, 405
    - rack viewer, 396
    - redundancy, 410
    - RSTP, 344
    - scanner status, 401
    - status summary, 393
  - diagnostics web page, 392
  - download, 59
  - DSCP, 67
  - DTM
    - add, 127
  - DTM Browser, 42
  - DTM browser
    - advanced mode, 50
    - configuring properties in device editor, 57
  - DTM browser menu commands, 45
- E**
- EDS file
    - add, 128
    - remove, 133
  - Email
    - configuring, 100
    - diagnostics, 339, 411
  - Ethernet
    - connection speed, 65
  - Ethernet diagnostics, 332
  - ethernet link object, 257
  - EtherNet/IP explicit connection diagnostics object, 271, 273
  - EtherNet/IP interface diagnostics object, 262
  - EtherNet/IP IO Scanner Diagnostics object,
- 265
  - EtherNet/IP settings, 75
  - explicit message, 225, 289
    - EtherNet/IP, 320
    - Get\_Attribute\_Single, 298
    - Modbus TCP, 323
    - Read Modbus Object, 302
    - read register, 314
    - Write Modbus Object, 306
  - explicit messaging
    - communication report, 423
    - error codes, 420
    - Modbus TCP function codes, 311
    - operation report, 423
- F**
- FDR, 80
  - field bus discovery, 51
  - full-duplex, 216
  - function code 3 diagnostics
    - unit id=255, 312
- H**
- hardware catalog
    - updating, 131
  - health bits, 203
  - home web page, 372
- I**
- I/O
    - connection, 351
    - local slave, 351
  - identity object, 245
  - IGMP snooping, 218
  - implicit message, 226
  - inputs
    - address, 202
  - IO connection diagnostics object, 267
  - IP address, 70

## L

LEDs, *326*  
load  
    example, *238*  
    limits, *231*  
local slave, *111*  
    configuring, *113*  
    diagnostics, *347*  
    I/O, *118, 351*  
logging, *353*

## M

menu commands  
    DTM browser, *45*  
message  
    priority, *230*  
message bandwidth, *234*  
message frequency, *232*  
message load, *234*  
message response time, *237*  
message traverse time, *236*  
messages  
    types, *225*  
messaging, *403*  
monitoring web page, *379*  
mounting, *24*

## N

network  
    example, *30*  
network bandwidth, *235*  
network example, *136, 171*  
network load, *235*  
network time service, *105*  
NTP  
    diagnostics, *341, 414*

## O

online action  
    CIP object, *278*  
    display CIP object data, *279*  
    get port configuration, *281*  
    ping, *282*  
    port configuration, *280*  
    reset, *279*  
    set port configuration, *281*  
online parameters, *284*  
outputs  
    address, *202*

## P

password  
    data editor write, *374*  
    web page access, *374*  
    web pages, *373*  
physical description, *16*  
ping, *282*  
port diagnostics, *332*  
port mirroring, *222*  
    web pages, *376*  
port statistics, *407*  
processor load, *398*

## Q

QoS, *67, 92, 217, 230, 405*  
QoS object, *253*

## R

rack viewer, *396*  
redundancy, *410*  
remote device  
    configuring, *140, 175*  
replacement, *367*  
RSTP, *96, 219*  
RSTP Diagnostics, *344*

## S

- scanner status, *401*
- SEND\_EMAIL, *103*
- services
  - enabling, *78*
- SMTP codes, *433*
- SNMP agent, *86, 223*
- specifications, *20*
  - communication, *22*
- standards, *19*
- status summary, *393*
- STB NIC 2212
  - configuring I/O items, *156*
- STB NIP 2212
  - configuring I/O items, *187*
- switch
  - managed, *215*
  - recommended features, *215*

## T

- TCP/IP interface object, *255*
- timeout
  - connection, *227*

## U

- uninstall, *28*
- unit ID
  - 255, function code 3 diagnostics, *312*
- upload, *61*
- username, *374*

## V

- variables
  - derived, *201*
- VLAN, *220*

## W

- web pages
  - data editor (standard), *380*
  - diagnostics, *392*
  - home, *372*
  - messaging, *403*
  - monitoring, *379*
  - password, *373*
  - port mirroring, *376*
  - port statistics, *407*
  - processor load, *398*
  - properties, *416*
  - QoS, *405*
  - rack viewer, *396*
  - redundancy, *410*
  - scanner status, *401*
  - status summary, *393*
- wiring, *25*